STATE OF MICHIGAN
DEPARTMENT OF NATURAL RESOURCES

Number 21 June 1998

Manistee River Assessment

Thomas J. Rozich

www.dnr.state.mi.us

FISHERIES DIVISION
SPECIAL REPORT

MICHIGAN DEPARTMENT OF NATURAL RESOURCES
FISHERIES DIVISION

Fisheries Special Report 21
June 1998

Manistee River Assessment

Thomas J. Rozich

Michigan DNR
Printed under authority of Michigan Department of Natural Resources
Total number of copies printed 375 — Total cost $1559.00— Cost per copy $4.16

Suggested Citation Format

Rozich, Thomas J. 1998. Manistee River Assessment. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division, Special Report Number 21. Ann Arbor, Michigan.

COVER: "Canfields Rollway" on the Pine River - Lake County, T20N, R12W, Section 12, NW1/4 of NW 1/4. Date of photograph unknown, but thought to be in the 1880s. Photo courtesy of Wexford County Historical Society Museum, from Merlin "Red" Anderson collection donated to the museum.

"The Manistee River has been long known as one of the most remarkable streams in the Northwest--in this, that it never floods, seldom freezes, and is never affected by droughts."

A.S. Wordsworth - 1869

TABLE OF CONTENTS

LIST OF TABLES

LIST OF FIGURES

LIST OF APPENDICES

(published in a separate volume)

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The author thanks the many individuals in the divisions of the Michigan Department of Natural Resources who gave their time and knowledge generously. I am especially indebted to Al Sutton and Dennis Conway for their computer wizardry that includes producing many of the figures contained in this document. I also appreciate the thoughtful comments and philosophical discussions of the reviewers: Gary Schnicke, Andy Nuhfer, Jim Johnson, Jan Fenske, and Liz Hay-Chmielewski - MDNR, Fisheries Division, and Bob Stuber - US Forest Service; Dr. Gerald Smith, U of M for his invaluable assistance with historic fish distribution; Paul Seelbach for his review and unending encouragement; Kyle Kruger and Gary Whelan for their assistance in channel morphology; and my secretary, Cam Hess, for her patience in typing this assessment through the changes, revisions, and re-revisions. A final thanks to Liz Hay-Chmielewski for her tactful pressure and patient resolve in getting the final product completed, without which it would still be languishing somewhere, lost in time….

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The Manistee River Assessment is one of a series being prepared by the Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division, for river basins in Michigan. This assessment described fisheries and related resources, identifies issues that are of concern to fishery managers, and outlines management options to address those issues. The assessment provides an organized approach to identifying opportunities and solving problems. It provides a mechanism for public involvement in management decisions, allowing citizens to learn, participate, and help determine decisions. It also provides an organized reference for Fisheries Division personnel, other agencies, and citizens who need information about a particular aspect of the river system.

The document consists of four main sections: introduction, assessment, management options, and public comment and response. The assessment is the nucleus of the document. Physical, biological, and cultural characteristics of the watershed are described under twelve sections: geography, history, biological communities, geology and hydrology, channel morphology, soils and land use patterns, special jurisdictions, recreational use, dams and barriers, water quality, fisheries management, and citizen involvement.

Management options are provided. These options are consistent with the mission statement of the Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division and convey four approaches to correcting problems in a watershed. These include options to protect and preserve existing resources, options requiring additional surveys, opportunities for rehabilitation of degraded resources, and opportunities to improve areas or resources beyond existing conditions. Options are related primarily to aquatic communities; but wildlife, botanical, and social factors are noted where they are important and directly affect aquatic communities. Some options are simple, but most are complex, sometimes involving management of the entire watershed and taking many years to accomplish. Management options listed are not necessarily preferred by Fisheries Division, but are intended to provide a foundation for public discussion and comment, eventually resulting in the selection of acceptable management objectives for the Manistee River and tributaries.

The Manistee River is located in the northwest portion of Michigan’s Lower Peninsula and drains an area about 1,780 square miles. The mainstem is 232 mi long, with a 671 foot drop in elevation from the source to Lake Michigan. Portions of eleven counties are included in the watershed: Antrim, Benzie, Crawford, Grand Traverse, Kalkaska, Lake, Manistee, Missaukee, Osceola, Otsego, and Wexford. There are three major tributaries: Bear Creek, North Branch of the Manistee, and Pine rivers. Other important tributaries include Goose, Portage, Big Cannon, Hopkins, Manton, Buttermilk, Wheeler, Slagle, and Pine creeks. Also, there are hundreds of other tributaries that empty directly into the mainstem or named tributaries.

The watershed was settled beginning in mid-1800s, near the mouth of the mainstem. Interior portions were not exploited until the late 1800s, when lumbering affected river habitat and adjacent uplands. Hydroelectric development followed in the early 1900s, along with placement of small dams on tributaries.

The Manistee River has one of the most stable flow patterns in the country, producing good conditions for fish reproduction and survival. These stable flows are from the watershed geology that provide excellent groundwater flows. The settlement agreement, between Consumers Energy Company, Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Michigan State Historic Preservation Officer United States Department of Interior-Fish and Wildlife Service, United States Department of

Interior-National Parks Service, and United States Department of Agriculture-Forest Service established stable flows for the lower portion of the mainstem that formerly had peaking high and low flows below the hydroelectric facilities.

An accurate description of the original fish communities in the Manistee River watershed is not available. Michigan grayling disappeared from the watershed shortly after 1900 despite efforts to culture it in hatcheries. The demise of the grayling was due to three factors: over fishing; habitat destruction; and introduction of exotics (brook trout). Muskellunge are another rare species originally more abundant in the Manistee River. It may be present today in very limited numbers. Lake sturgeon, a formerly abundant species that used high gradient waters now inundated by Tippy Dam for spawning, is making a comeback with stable flows.

Seventy-six species of fish made up the native fish community. Thirteen non-native species of fish have been introduced into the watershed through accidental and intentional introductions or migrations. One species, the Michigan grayling, has been extirpated. Three other species: pugnose shiner, tadpole madtom, and white bass are historic records and may be extirpated. Additional fish surveys are needed to accurately determine distributions of these and other species in the watershed.

Two species are listed as threatened in Michigan: lake herring and lake sturgeon. Lake herring are thriving in several inland lakes in the watershed. Lake sturgeon are found below Tippy Dam and in the Hodenpyl backwaters.

Comprehensive studies of invertebrates, amphibians, and reptiles in any portion of the watershed are unavailable. Information on special concern, threatened, and endangered species are in the Michigan Natural Features Inventory. Ten species of invertebrates are listed, eight have special concern status and two, Lake Huron locust and Karner blue butterfly, are proposed to be listed as threatened. Three reptile species, one snake and two turtles, are listed as special concern. Two mammals (marten-threatened and woodland vole-special concern) and eight bird species (three are endangered: Kirtland's warbler, loggerhead shrike, and king rail; and four are threatened: bald eagle, common loon, red-shouldered hawk, and osprey) are listed in the Natural Features Inventory.

Urban and agricultural development are minor in the watershed. However, the number of rural homes and seasonal dwellings are on the rise. Upland erosion into watercourses is significant. Water withdrawal for irrigation is not a factor on the mainstem, but is an issue on some tributaries. Hundreds of road and stream crossings exist and are major sediment producers.

Sixty-three dams and impoundments are located in the watershed. Two major backwaters, both operating hydroelectric dams, are located on the mainstem. Most other dams are small recreational structures on tributaries. All dams are detrimental to the overall health of the river because they impound high gradient habitat, eliminate areas of river habitat, raise water temperatures, trap sediment, nutrients, and large woody debris, kill fish, block fish movement, and fragment aquatic habitats. Five dams are wildlife floodings sited on cold water tributaries and are candidates for removal.

Overall water quality in the Manistee River is very good. Deep permeable sands and limited development have served to preserve water quality. The stream bed quality however is degraded in many portions due primarily to human activity. Chemical contaminants causing public health advisories on eating fish in the watershed include mercury, PCBs, chlordane, and PAHs. DDT, DDE, and dioxins are other chlorinated organic chemical contaminants in fish that can affect the health of wildlife species. Organic contaminants in fish have been reduced significantly since the 1970s and are primarily found in species that use Lake Michigan for part of their life history. Mercury is a concern for inland fish species and levels do not appear to be decreasing; atmospheric emissions appear to be the predominant source of mercury.

Fishing and canoeing are the two most popular recreational uses of the Manistee River. Other forms of outdoor recreation include camping, picnicking, hiking, cross-country skiing, bird watching, trapping, and hunting. Certain types of fishing are limited on the mainstem due to blockage by hydroelectric dams.

The Manistee River and tributaries are all mostly trout streams. From the headwaters to M-72, the wild trout fishery is good and improving. The reach from M-72 to Smithville is also good, but natural reproduction is supplemented with annual brown trout stocking. Between Smithville and Hodenpyl Dam, the brown trout fishery is good, with walleye and smallmouth becoming more abundant. The reach between Hodenpyl and Tippy Dams is high gradient, containing a mix of brown trout, walleye, and smallmouth bass. The area below Tippy Dam is a potamodromous fishery for steelhead and salmon. There are walleye and smallmouth present in this area, but primarily below High Bridge Road. The two backwaters offer a good walleye, pike, smallmouth bass, and panfish fishery. All tributaries, except one or two, have good to excellent resident trout fisheries. Bear Creek is similar to the mainstem below Tippy Dam in that it is primarily a potamodromous fishery. The Pine River is unique in that it is an excellent fishery for brook, brown, and non-migratory rainbow trout. The North Branch of the Manistee is a good wild brook trout stream.

Although there are ongoing bank stabilization projects on the mainstem, Bear Creek, and the Pine River, there remains great potential for additional enhancement and rehabilitation. The scope of projects range from remediating road and stream crossings to addition of large woody debris (primarily in the mainstem) to implementing and enforcing best management practices for all activities. All of these activities would increase natural reproduction and reduce reliance in the stocking of trout. Stocking of muskellunge below Tippy Dam is recommended. Fish passage over the two hydroelectric dams would more fully use the rivers potential, while increasing natural reproduction and angler catch.

Many agencies have regulatory responsibilities that affect the river system. These range from small local governments to large federal bureaucracies. The Federal Energy Regulatory Commission has authority over hydroelectric dams. The US Fish and Wildlife Service, US Forest Service, US Department of Agriculture, Natural Resources Conservation Service, and US Environmental Protection Agency have responsibilities for land and natural resources management. The Michigan Departments of Natural Resources and Environmental Quality manage many natural resources and regulatory activities.

Local governmental interests, along with the eleven counties, include 67 townships and 18 cities, villages and towns. Local agencies conduct zoning and other land management activities. County drain commissioners have responsibility for legally designated drains. Several organized local fishing and hunting groups and recreational groups have shown an interest in management of the watershed. Lake Michigan sport-fishing groups and river guides are intensely interested in the river due to migratory fish species that seasonally use the river.

The first draft of this assessment was made available to the public through direct mailings and posting in local libraries from July through December 1996. Comments from three public meetings and written comments were incorporated into the final assessment. A fisheries management plan will be written based on the final assessment and public comment received. Updates of both the assessment and management plan will occur.

INTRODUCTION

This river assessment is one of a series of documents being prepared by the Fisheries Division, Michigan Department of Natural Resources, for rivers in Michigan. We have approached this assessment from an ecosystem perspective, as we believe that fish communities and fisheries must be viewed as parts of a complex aquatic ecosystem. However, this assessment is admittedly biased towards aquatic systems.

As stated in the Fisheries Division Strategic Plan, our aim is to develop a better understanding of the structure and functions of various aquatic ecosystems, to appreciate their history, and to understand changes to the system. With this knowledge we will identify opportunities that provide and protect sustainable fishery benefits while maintaining, and at times rehabilitating, system structures or processes.

Healthy aquatic ecosystems have communities that are resilient to disturbance, are stable through time, and provide many important environmental functions. As system structures and processes are altered in watersheds, overall complexity decreases. This results in a simplified ecosystem that is unable to adapt to additional change. All of Michigan's rivers have lost some complexity due to human alterations in the channel and on the surrounding land; the amount varies. Therefore each assessment focuses on ecosystem maintenance and rehabilitation. Maintenance involves either slowing or preventing the losses of ecosystem structures and processes. Rehabilitation is putting back some of the structures or processes.

River assessments are based on ten guiding principles of the Fisheries Division. These are: 1) recognize the limits on productivity in the ecosystem; 2) preserve and rehabilitate fish habitat; 3) preserve native species; 4) recognize naturalized species; 5) enhance natural reproduction of native and desirable naturalized fishes; 6) prevent the unintentional introduction of exotic species; 7) protect and enhance threatened and endangered species; 8) acknowledge the role of stocked fish; 9) adopt the genetic stock concept, that is protecting the genetic variation of fish stocks; and 10) recognize that fisheries are an important cultural heritage.

River assessments provide an organized approach to identifying opportunities and solving problems. They provide a mechanism for public involvement in management decisions, allowing citizens to learn, participate, and help determine decisions. As well these projects provide an organized reference for Fisheries Division personnel, other agencies, and citizens who need information about a particular aspect of the river system.

The nucleus of each assessment is a description of the river and it's watershed using a standard list of topics. These include:

> **Geography -** a brief description of the location of the river and it's watershed; a general overview of the river from its headwaters to its mouth. This section sets the scene.
>
> **History -** a description of the river as seen by early settlers and a history of human uses and modifications of the river and the watershed.

Geology and Hydrology - patterns of water flow over and through the landscape. This is the key to the character of a river. River flows reflect watershed conditions and influence temperature regimes, habitat characteristics, and perturbation frequency.

Biological Communities - species present historically and today, in and near the river; we focus on fishes, however associated mammals and birds, key invertebrate animals, threatened and endangered species, and pest species are described where possible. This topic is the foundation for the rest of the assessment. Maintenance of biodiversity is an important goal of natural resource management and essential to many of the goals of fishery management. Species occurrence, extirpation, and distribution are also important clues to the character and location of habitat problems.

Channel Morphology - the shape of the river channel: width, depth, sinuosity. River channels are often thought of as fixed, aside from changes made by people. However, river channels are dynamic, constantly changing as they are worked on by the unending, powerful flow of water. Diversity of channel form affects habitat available to fish and other aquatic life.

Dams and Barriers - affect almost all river ecosystem functions and processes, including flow patterns, water temperature, sediment transport, animal drift and migration, and recreational opportunities.

Soils and Land Use Patterns - in combination with climate, soils and land use determine much of the hydrology and thus the channel form of a river. Changes in land use often drive change in river habitats.

Special Jurisdictions - stewardship and regulatory responsibilities under which a river is managed.

Recreational Use - types and patterns of use. A healthy river system provides abundant opportunities for diverse recreational activities along its mainstem and tributaries.

Water Quality - includes temperature, and dissolved or suspended materials. Temperature and a variety of chemical constituents can affect aquatic life and river uses. Degraded water quality may be reflected in simplified biological communities, restrictions on river use, and reduced fishery productivity. Water quality problems may be due to point-source discharges (permitted or illegal) or to non-point source land runoff.

Fishery Management - goals are to provide diverse and sustainable game fish populations. Methods include management of fish habitat and fish populations.

Citizen Involvement - an important indication of public views of the river. Issues that citizens are involved in may indicate opportunities and problems that the Fisheries Division or other agencies should address.

Management Options follow and list alternative actions that will protect, rehabilitate, and enhance the integrity of the watershed. These options are intended to provide a foundation for discussion, setting priorities, and planning the future of the river system. Identified options are consistent with the mission statement of Fisheries Division.

Copies of the draft assessment were distributed for public review beginning July, 1996. Three public meetings were held: September 4, 1996 in Grayling, September 5, 1996 in Cadillac, and September 6, 1996 in Wellston. Written comments were received through January 3, 1997. Comments were either incorporated in this assessment or responded to in this section.

A fisheries management plan will be written after completion of this assessment. This plan will identify options chosen by Fisheries Division based on our analysis and comments received.

Persons who review this assessment and wish to comment should do so in writing to:

Michigan Department of Natural Resources
Fisheries Division
8015 Mackinaw Trail
Cadillac, MI 49601

Comments received will be considered in preparing future updates of the Manistee River Assessment.

RIVER ASSESSMENT

Geography

The Manistee River is located in the northwestern portion of Michigan's Lower Peninsula. It drains 1,780 square miles into Lake Michigan (Figure 1). The watershed, one of the largest in Michigan, includes parts of eleven counties: Antrim, Otsego, Crawford, Kalkaska, Missaukee, Grand Traverse, Wexford, Osceola, Lake, Mason, and Manistee. The mainstem, that is about 232 mi, originates in a cedar swamp in southeast Antrim County (6 mi from the Village of Alba), at an elevation of 1,250 ft. From this point the river meanders south until it reaches about 6 mi west of Grayling. Here (M-72) the river turns and meanders to the southwest until it reaches Manistee Lake near Lake Michigan. The discharge into Lake Michigan is at an elevation of 579 ft, a total drop of 671 ft.

For purposes of discussion, the river system is divided into segments based on habitat types, fish communities, gradient, large independent tributaries, and fisheries management zones (Figure 1). The segments are: 1) headwaters to M-72 Bridge (29 mi); 2) M-72 Bridge to Smithville (55 mi); 3) Smithville to M-115 Bridge (101 mi); 4) Hodenpyl Dam to Red Bridge (8 mi); 5) Tippy Dam to M-55 Bridge (25 mi); 6) North Branch Manistee; 7) Bear Creek; and 8) Pine River. These specific segments are discussed in detail in **Biological Communities** - *Present Fish Communities*, **Channel Morphology -** *Channel Gradient*, and **Fisheries Management**.

The Manistee River has 109 named tributaries (Figure 2). Major tributaries of the mainstem include: North Branch Manistee and Pine rivers, and Bear and Pine creeks. There are also a number of unnamed tributaries, several that flow directly into the mainstem.

Landmarks, from the headwaters to the mouth, include: Alba, Deward, Grayling, Manistee Lake (Kalkaska County), Lake Margrethe, CCC Bridge, Sharon, Smithville, Fife Lake, Hodenpyl Dam, Tippy Dam, and City of Manistee (Figure 3). On the Pine River they include: Rose Lake, City of Cadillac, and Stronach Dam. On Bear Creek they are: Bear Lake , Village of Bear Lake, and Kaleva.

History

The Manistee River and its watershed were formed near the end of the last glaciation period (the Wisconsin Period of the Pleistocene Epoch). The southern portion of Michigan was ice free around 16,000 years ago and modern topography and soils are the result of post glacial erosion and soil formation processes acting on glacial deposits (Albert et al. 1986). Earliest archaeological evidence of human inhabitants dates to the Paleo-Indian period, over 10,000 years ago. These were nomadic people who followed herds of game animals. By 500 BC, there was a change to a more sedentary lifestyle (Archaic period) as people established camps for a season or more and agricultural practices were developed (B. Mead, Michigan Department of State, Archaeological Section, personal communication).

The Manistee River watershed, before European exploration in the first half of the 1600s, was controlled by the Algonquin Indian Nation. Three tribes of that Nation, Huron, Chippewa, and Ottawa, used this area and its resources (Tanner 1986). The Potawatomi from Southern Michigan also used the area, but to a lesser extent. These tribes built no large settlements, but rather traveled throughout; hunting, fishing, and trapping, and left the watershed in winter. The Huron were less nomadic, founding villages and semi-organized communities. The Chippewa and Ottawa, neighbors and allies, evidenced by intertribal marriages, were more war-like. Of these two the Ottawa were the more peaceful and followed agricultural pursuits (Powers 1912).

French explorers came to the region, primarily motivated by the fur trade. Jean Nicolet is thought to be the first European to visit northern Michigan. His 1634 route followed the St. Lawrence River and the St. Clair River into Lake Huron and the Straits of Mackinac. He was followed in 1694 by Antoine de la Mothe Cadillac, who founded Detroit in 1705. As an employee of the Northwest Fur Company, he established Michilimackinac at the Straits (Powers 1912).

In 1760, the English defeated the French and took control of northern Michigan. In June of 1773, Pontiac, the great Algonquin chief, rebelled against the “cold, calculating English” in what is known as the "Fort Michilimackinac massacre" (Powers 1912).

In 1776, the area became United States soil. The Ordinance of 1787 allowed retention of Michigan posts by the English until 1796. On April 3, 1802, an Act of Congress created the State of Ohio, also making Michigan part of the Territory of Indiana. A January 1805 Act of Congress provided for the organization of the Territory of Michigan. On October 13, 1813 General Lewis Cass was appointed Civil Governor of Michigan Territory. He created the first county, Michilimackinac, bounded on the east by the Cheboygan River, the south by the Manistee River, the west by the Manistique River, and by Canada on the north (Peterson 1972).

By 1830, the Government Land Office survey of Michigan began, creating the township, range, and section system we now have. Before this time, the Manistee River watershed was still undeveloped, being visited only by various Indian tribes and fur trappers. In 1837, statehood came for Michigan and in 1840, the creation of counties as known today. In 1843, names of the counties were changed to their present designation from Indian names: Lake County, from Aishcum - a Potawatomi chief; Osceola (a great Seminole chief) County, from Unwatin an Ottawa chief; Kalkaska County, from Wabasse - a Potawatomi chief; and Wexford County, from Kautawaubet - an Indian chief (tribe unknown). The State of Michigan derived its name from “Michigane”--the Huron tribe of the Algonquin Nations word meaning Fresh Water Sea. The Manistee River was also named by the Indians. This name has several documented meanings: "river at whose mouth are islands"; "river with white bushes along the banks"; "crooked river"; and "spirit of the woods" (Peterson 1972).

The first Europeans credited with visiting Manistee City area and the Manistee River were French fur traders. They found the Manistee River valley inhabited primarily by the Chippewa tribe of the Algonquin Nation. In the 1830s, the Campeau family, French fur traders from Grand Rapids, settled in Manistee (Powers 1912).

The watershed was late in developing, because of a large sand bar at the river’s mouth that was reported in 1840, and also due to the high gradient waters located not far upstream (the present day site of Tippy Dam). In 1854-55, a canal was dug through the sand bar allowing rapid settlement of the City of Manistee and later lumbering industry and log drives in the river. The interior portion of the watershed was not logged until after 1870, as the river was choked with logs and log jams. The Manistee River was not a water highway, but contained so much woody debris, it was rare to find a 1 mi stretch of open water. Before construction of the Manistee Bridge (now M-37 Bridge north of Sherman), the only river crossing was by way of a log jam so solid horses and livestock could cross. Logging company crews clearing the river for log drives did not reach Sherman until 1870 (Peterson 1972).

The Manistee River, particularly the upper reaches, was famed for its grayling fishery. Vincent (1962) reported three men caught 600 plus pounds of grayling in two days. This equals about 1,000 fish. Other reports were "good grayling stream" (Norman 1887) and "Upper Manistee, best grayling fishing in the state" (Vincent 1962).

In 1900, the Manistee River was proclaimed the last of Michigan's great rivers unharnessed and capable of producing 40,000 horsepower of electricity (Powers 1912). Stronach Dam, on the Pine River (South Branch Manistee River), was the first hydroelectric dam on the system, being completed in 1912. Stronach Dam originally supplied power to the City of Manistee. The Michigan Railway Company acquired the project around 1915, with the intention of supplying power to a proposed electric railway. Consumers Power Company acquired the project in 1917 after the electric railway plans were abandoned and operated the plant until July 8, 1953. Tippy Dam was completed and began producing power in 1918 and Hodenpyl Dam in 1925. Tippy Dam was then called Junction Dam, being at the confluence of the mainstem and South Branch Manistee, as the Pine River was formerly called (refer to **Dams and Barriers**).

All the historic developments have left their mark. Three hundred eighty (380) archeological sites are listed in the watershed (Table 1). Actual scholarly study of the Manistee River archaeology has been limited.

The most extensive scholarly archaeological investigation took place in 1965. The area covered was from Sharon to Sherman (Figure 1) and disclosed many sites. These included Indian burials, village locations and transient campgrounds, and most were dated from 8,000 BC to 500 AD.

The Manistee River's cultural value is most evident in the way it has influenced people's lifestyles since early times. The American Indians depended on the river for transportation, food, and water -- it was vital to their existence. Early settlers depended on it in much the same way, as it later became the sole means of transporting logs to the sawmills and thereby was very important to early resident’s way of life. Today the river fills different purposes, but is also important to everyday life. It is a recreation resource to many people, and providing a livelihood for local people. Current local culture has been determined by in part the need to meet the demands of river users.

The river has also influenced the way people spend their time. A large portion of local people's time is spent either enjoying the river's recreational opportunities or working to enable others to benefit from the river. Their thoughts and activities are determined by the river's character. Daily conversations center on how the existing river mood will affect personal pursuits or visitors, which in turn effects the area’s economy and lifestyle.

Biological Communities

Original Fish Communities

About 75 species of fish were in the Manistee River (Table 2). However, an accurate description of the fish community at the time of European settlement (mid 1800s) is not available.

Michigan grayling were abundant in the Manistee River before European settlement, especially in the upper reaches. Suckers, shiners, northern pike, and whitefish are the only other fishes mentioned by early observers as associated with grayling in Michigan streams (Vincent 1962). Other species present, but not easily observed, would have been blacknose & longnose dace, sculpin, and chestnut and brook lamprey (G. Smith, UM, personal communication). Potamodromous species including lake sturgeon, lake trout, lake and round whitefish, burbot, walleye, and trout perch inhabited the river seasonally.

There is little doubt that brook trout were native to the Lower Peninsula of Michigan, at least to the extent they were not transplanted by humans (Jerome 1874, Anonymous 1875). The Boardman River was thought to be the most southerly stream native brook trout inhabited (Bower 1881). Brook trout may have been native to the Manistee River (Vincent 1962). A newspaper article in the Manistee Times dated Sept. 11, 1869 by George C. Depres cited that a large “mess” of speckled brook trout were taken from Pine Creek by a Mr. Ruggles and other gentlemen. He added it was the opinion of Manistee people that they would have to go to the neighborhood of Traverse City to catch speckled trout. Brook trout were actively dispersing (naturally) southward, but were also being introduced (Vincent 1962). The Jordan River changed from a grayling to a brook trout stream over 30 to 40 years (Page 1884, Norman 1887, and Whitaker 1887). The change of the Manistee River from grayling to a trout river, was attributed to competition, over harvest, and habitat destruction during the logging era (Vincent 1962).

The first comprehensive fish surveys in the Manistee River were not conducted until 1958 (Crowe 1959). These were done in conjunction with a lamprey study in the upper river areas. Thirty species of fish, including three lamprey species, were collected from 30 sampling stations in the mainstem and tributaries. Most of the sampling stations were in the upper river (Smithville area being the downstream limit) on the mainstem and tributaries. This survey was similar to studies on the upper Au Sable by Hubbs in the 1920s where 30 species were collected and Richards in 1972, where 29 species were collected (Richards 1976). Richards concluded that not much had changed in species composition since the turn of the century. Richards did however, conclude that below the Au Sable hydroelectric impoundments, there were changes in species diversity and distribution, and large changes in species composition. One species has been extirpated from the watershed, the Michigan grayling, that is extinct statewide.

Factors Affecting Fish Communities

European settlement caused dramatic changes in the Manistee River and its watershed, many of which resulted in changes to the river's fish communities. Affects of logging, hydropower dams, agricultural and urban land use, point-source discharges, and lake-level controls on the river system are discussed in detail in others sections. However, a brief discussion of the effects of settlement is appropriate here. Fish require a variety of habitats through out their life cycle, including spawning, feeding and growth, and refuge habitats (Figure 4). Equally important is the ability to move from one habitat to another (Schlosser 1991). If any one critical area is destroyed, or if the ability to migrate from one to another is restricted, the species may become locally extinct.

The turn of the century pine lumbering era had tremendous effects on native fish communities. The systematic removal of large woody debris and scouring of the channel by log drives, resulted in extreme erosion of soils and addition of sediments, causing heavy mortality of eggs and fry (Vincent 1962).

> “Early construction of dams and draining of wetlands for settlement eliminated spawning areas, or access to them, for all of the original potamodromous fish species. These large fish were [initially] concentrated below the dams,…and overharvest quickened their [population reduction or] demise (Trautman 1981). Dams also blocked migrations among critical seasonal habitats (summer, winter, or spawning…) within the river itself. Dams have degraded fish communities through the inundation of [valuable] scarce, high gradient reaches and through their cumulative affects on water temperature and flow patterns (see **Dam and Barriers).** These effects have been shown to reduce the fishes present to those few species able to tolerate these harsh

> conditions; typically large, adult, warmwater fishes (Cushman 1985; Gislason 1985; Nelson 1986; Bain et al. 1988). Most small species and juveniles of larger species are eliminated.

Since early settlement, land drainage for human use ([timber harvest,] agriculture or urban) has degraded the originally stable flow regime [of the Manistee River]. Draining wetlands, channelizing streams, and creating new drainage ditches all served to decrease flow stability by increasing peak flows and diminishing recharge into groundwater tables. Increased peak flows negatively affects both spawning and survival of young fish of many species. Summer water temperatures have become warmer and more variable due to lower base flows, channel modifications, and clearing of shading stream-side vegetation. Both landscape perturbations and increased peak flows accelerated erosion within the basin and increased the sediment load of the river. These sediments contributed to increased turbidity (harmful to certain species) and buried gravel and cobble substrates that serve as critical habitat for many fishes and invertebrates." (Hay-Chmielewski et al. 1995).

Fish communities have been altered through intentional and inadvertent introduction of exotic species (Table 3) (Mills et al. 1993). An overview of fish stockings for 1983-1993 is given in Table 4. In October of 1966, the mainstem of the Manistee River from Cameron Bridge to M-66 was treated with Bayluscide for chestnut lamprey control (Jacob 1966). After the treatment rainbow and brown trout were stocked in large numbers.

A vital component of the riparian zone associated with rivers is large woody debris, such as fallen trees from adjacent old growth forests. The importance of large woody debris cannot be overstated. It provides habitat diversity, cover for fish, habitat for invertebrates and other components of the aquatic food chain, adds nutrients to the aquatic system and protection to streambanks during peak flows. Most of the large woody debris was removed to facilitate downstream transport of logs. Verry (1992), provides an excellent summary of the various functions large woody debris plays in aquatic ecosystems. Present-day levels are much lower, due in part to the second growth nature of our forests.

Present Fish Communities

According to biological surveys (Crowe 1959, Lawler, Matusky, & Skelly 1991), Michigan Department of Natural Resources (MDNR), Fisheries Division surveys, and recent observations by Fisheries Division personnel, the Manistee River is thought to contain 80 fish species (Table 2). Species distributions vary from one small inland lake to watershed-wide (Appendix 1). One species has been extirpated and some are rare or threatened, but most native species are still present and range from rare to abundant in numbers. Three species are considered threatened by the State of Michigan: lake sturgeon, cisco, and pugnose shiner. Thirteen non-native fish species have been introduced into the watershed (Table 3). These include unintended and intentional introductions and migrations. All are still present. A brief description of the existing fish populations by river segment follows:

<u>*Segment 1-Headwaters to M-72 Bridge*</u>
The best trout populations in the mainstem exist in this stretch. Fisheries Division surveys (MDNR, Fisheries Division) indicate good naturally sustaining populations of brook and brown trout, with brook trout predominating. No stocking is done in this stretch. Fish habitat has partly recovered from the turn of century logging disturbances. Trout population estimates continue to show annual increases over the last ten years. This upper area increased to 1,088 trout per acre in 1993 from 902 trout per acre in 1992,

almost a 21% increase. (MDNR, Fisheries Division). This segment is classified as a "Blue Ribbon" trout stream.

Segment 2 - M-72 Bridge to Smithville

This reach has fair to good populations of large brown trout, large numbers of young-of-the-year brook trout and a few rainbow trout (in riffle areas). These populations are sustained by hatchery fish because the habitat is severely degraded with a sand bedload from turn-of-the-century logging. Part of this stretch and Segment 3 are stocked by the MDNR, Fisheries Division, Manistee River Association, Upper Manistee River Association, and private parties with 30,000 brown trout and 7,500 rainbow trout annually. Chestnut lampreys are abundant in this segment.

Segment 3 - Smithville to M-115 Bridge

This reach has a fair to good population of large brown trout, with some brook trout and a coolwater community of walleye, smallmouth bass, shorthead and silver redhorse, and white suckers increasing downstream. This stretch is also planted with large numbers of brown trout, by MDNR, Fisheries Division and Walton Junction Sportsman Club. Walleye are fairly abundant from US-131 bridge down to M-115 bridge. Chestnut lampreys also abound in this reach of river. The many tributaries in this reach do provide natural recruitment of brook and brown trout.

Segment 4 -- Hodenpyl Dam to Red Bridge

A good population of large brown trout exists, as a result of stocking 15,000 yearling brown trout annually. This area also has a fair to good walleye population. Some claim this area offers the best trophy brown trout fishing in the Midwest. This stretch is unique in that it is high gradient and undeveloped, with high banks as the river cuts through a large moraine.

Segment 5 - Tippy Dam to M-55 Bridge

Potamodromous fish dominate this segment, with fall salmon and fall/winter/spring steelhead runs producing very good fisheries. A late winter-spring run of spawning walleye is present, with fish to 15 pounds reported. Lake trout run up to Tippy Dam in the fall. Modest populations of resident brown trout, smallmouth bass, northern pike, walleye, redhorse, and suckers are also present. This segment is stocked annually with 125,000 chinook, 100,000 coho, 50,000 winter steelhead, 40,000 summer steelhead, and 30,000 brown trout.

Segment 6 -- North Branch Manistee River

This stream has good self sustaining brook trout populations, with some brown trout present. Chestnut lampreys abound in the lower third of the segment, where sand bedload is a problem. An occasional "tiger trout", which is a natural cross of a brook and brown trout, is reported by anglers. The area from Mecum Road to the mouth is classified as a "Blue Ribbon" trout stream.

Segment 7 -- Bear Creek

This segment is noted for its fall chinook and fall-winter-spring steelhead fishery. The headwater's area supports a good brook trout population. Below County Road 600 (west of Kaleva) stream trout populations are low due to higher temperatures and sand bedload. No fish stockings are made in this reach. Several tributaries of Bear Creek are trout streams, with naturally reproducing populations of brook and brown trout. These tributaries are also important producers of steelhead smolts.

Segment 8 -- Pine River

Pine River has fair populations of brook, brown, and rainbow trout that are self sustaining. The Pine River is noted for its non-migratory rainbow populations, the largest such population in Michigan. The stretch from Tippy Dam backwaters to the mouth of the East Branch of the Pine River is classified as a

"Blue Ribbon" trout stream. Index station population data (MDNR, Fisheries Division) indicate the Pine River has one-third of the standing crop of trout as compared to other similar rivers (Alexander and Gowing 1980). Sand bedload from severely eroding banks and road-stream crossings (Hansen 1971) is the primary cause of this lower population. No fish stocking is done in the Pine River.

Other Tributaries
Almost all tributaries are designated trout streams (Figure 5). A few tributaries are good fisheries Goose Creek - brook trout; Big Cannon Creek - brook and brown trout; Little Cannon Creek - brook trout; Hopkins Creek - brook and brown trout, Manton Creek - brown trout; Buttermilk Creek - brown trout; Silver Creek - brown trout; Slagle Creek - brown trout; and Pine Creek - brown trout. These are all naturally produced and sustaining fisheries. Pine Creek is an important producer of steelhead (rainbow trout) and chinook smolts.

Hodenpyl and Tippy Dam Backwaters
Hodenpyl Dam backwaters provide a fishery for bluegill, smallmouth bass, pike, and walleye. Channel catfish and walleye are periodically stocked in the reservoir (Table 4). A population of lake sturgeon (size unknown) exists in the backwaters as they are occasionally taken on hook and line or observed "sunning" themselves. This population was trapped here when Tippy Dam (Junction Dam) was completed in 1918 and Hodenpyl Dam completed in 1925.

Tippy Dam pond provides a fishery for smallmouth bass, pike, and walleye. Walleye and channel catfish have been planted in the past (Table 4). The state record walleye (17 lbs. 3 oz.) was caught in the Pine River arm of the backwaters.

Unique Communities-Habitats
Populations of lake sturgeon, a state threatened species, exist in two areas. The first is in Hodenpyl Dam backwater and the second is downstream of Tippy Dam. In July of 1987 an angler caught and released a 63 inch specimen from the Hodenpyl backwaters. Estimated weight and age for this fish are 61 pounds and 42 years (Baker 1980). This indicates the specimen was hatched in 1945. Below Tippy dam a significant number of these large fish were observed by members of the Michigan River Guides Association during a low flow interval on May 14, 1991. Another was captured on May 15, 1991, near High Bridge by Consumers Power Company consultants while conducting an electrofishing survey. That specimen was 1650 mm (65 inches) in length. Estimated weight and age for this fish are 67 pounds and 45 years (Baker, 1980). These ages show the sturgeon below Tippy was born in 1946 and the one in Hodenpyl born in 1945 and indicates at least some natural reproduction both below Tippy Dam (constructed in 1918) and above Hodenpyl Dam (constructed in 1925). The landlocked population in Hodenpyl reservoir is rare, with not much known about the number of fish nor areas in which they spawn, both of which will be explored. The major cause of the decline of lake sturgeon was commercial exploitation in the 1870's and 1880's. Impoundments flooding spawning areas and peaking operation of dams have also played a role in the crash of lake sturgeon populations and their slow recovery. Since the Tippy project was converted to a run-of-river operation from a peaking mode, lake sturgeon have been observed annually on their spawning run by river guides and MDNR Fisheries staff.

Aquatic Invertebrates

There are at least three areas that have unique aquatic insect communities, besides the abundant invertebrate populations in the headwaters (Segment 1). There are areas that have significant hatches of "Michigan caddis", which is actually a mayfly (Order Ephemeroptera, Hexagenia limbata) and not a caddis fly (Order Tricoptera). Excellent hatches of Hexagenia are found around Cameron Bridge

(Segment 1); below Rainbow Jims (Segment 3); and Baxter Bridge (Segment 3). In addition, they are found in fewer numbers from Cameron Bridge to the Hodenpyl backwaters.

No comprehensive invertebrate studies have been done in the Manistee River watershed. Invertebrates often are sensitive indicators of habitat problems that are affecting fish and other aquatic life. Three macroinvertebrate studies have been conducted in the watershed. Michigan Department of Environmental Quality (MDEQ), Surface Water Quality Division (SWQD) investigated in 1985 macroinvertebrates above and below Flowing Well Trout Farm on the North Branch of the Manistee River. They found similar benthic communities above and below this private fish hatchery. SWQD conducted a biological study in 1989 above and below the Harrietta State Fish Hatchery and likewise found similar communities. Dr. Justin Leonard (1937) looked at macroinvertebrates as trout food in the Pine River. He found an abundant macroinvertebrate food source, including high densities of crayfish. A complete inventory of the macroinvertebrate fauna of the Manistee River and watershed is needed.

One mussel species is about listed in the Michigan Natural Features Inventory (Table 5). However, no definitive studies have been conducted in the watershed and a complete inventory of mussel species present is needed.

Amphibians and Reptiles

Thirty-eight species of amphibians and reptiles have been documented in the Manistee River system or its associated wetlands (Table 6). Three species are about listed as of "special concern" in the Michigan Natural Features Inventory (Table 5): Massasauga rattlesnake, spotted turtle, and wood turtle. The wood turtle is of special interest as its nesting sites are sandy stream banks and it also lives in river corridors. In May 1993, the US Forest Service began a long term study on the Huron-Manistee Forest to determine the presence and use of wood turtles on major river systems within the forest, including the Pine River (Schutz 1993). This study, that includes marking and radio telemetry, will attempt to determine sex ratios, age class structure, range, and essential wood turtle breeding areas. Breeding areas are of prime importance as nesting habitat may be reduced by river rehabilitation projects that stabilize and revegetate eroding stream banks. Studies on the Au Sable River (Lower Peninsula) and Indian River (Upper Peninsula) on the nesting requirements of the wood turtle have been completed by Dr. Jim Harding of Michigan State University (MSU). These studies indicate the wood turtle is fairly selective in choosing a nesting site, preferring gentle sloping south and west facing banks only. Bill Parsons, a graduate student from Central Michigan University, has an on-going study on the Pine River, in which nest predators appear to have a major effect on recruitment. Studies in New York, Minnesota, and Wisconsin have found that commercial and casual collection are the major cause of wood turtle decline (Buech et al. 1992; Burger and Garber 1995; Garber and Burger 1995).

Mammals

Beaver, mink, muskrat, raccoon, and otter are mammal species intrinsically associated with the Manistee River and tributaries (T. Havard, MDNR, Wildlife Division, personal communication) (Table 7). All of these species are present in moderate to very abundant populations, primarily in smaller tributaries and headwater areas. Two species of mammals are listed in the Michigan Natural Features Inventory (Table 5): pine marten (threatened) and woodland vole (special concern). Pine marten, which were extirpated, has been reintroduced along the Pine River uplands. Neither of these species is strongly dependent on the river corridor for survival. Elk have been extirpated. White-tailed deer are seasonally dependent upon river and tributary corridors, and headwater areas. Deer use these sites for yarding when severe winters force them to abandon the uplands. This can cause conflicts in management philosophies with Wildlife Division.

Birds

A variety of waterfowl nest in the watershed (Table 7). In addition, migrating ducks and geese use it as part of the Mississippi Valley Flyway. MDNR, Wildlife Division manages the Manistee River marsh for nesting and migrating waterfowl. It is located where the river empties into Manistee Lake.

Eight species of birds are listed in the Michigan Natural Features Inventory (Table 5): bald eagle (threatened), common loon (threatened), king rail (endangered), Kirtland's warbler (endangered), loggerhead shrike (endangered), northern harrier (special concern), osprey (threatened), and red shouldered hawk (threatened). Five of these are intrinsically associated with the watershed, either for habitat or feeding area, bald eagle, loon, king rail, osprey, and red shouldered hawk.

Significant great blue heron rookeries exist within the drainage and are listed in the Michigan Natural Features Inventory as an "Other Feature" (Table 5). One other scarce bird species present is the pileated woodpecker, that thrives in mature forests. Other natural features, insects and plants, and whose status is "of concern" are found in Table 5.

Pest species

Pest species are defined here as those aquatic species that have been introduced, either accidentally or intentionally, or are exceptionally damaging to economic values, that pose a significant threat to native species or their habitat. Most species do not pose any threat unless they are present in high densities. The one fish pest species that is abundant in the Manistee River, its impoundments, tributaries, or natural lakes is the chestnut lamprey. This parasite is abundant in the reach of the mainstem from County Road 612 to Sharon Bridge (Segments 1 & 2) and is very abundant in the reach from Sharon Bridge to M-115 Bridge (Segment 3). A research report by Andy Nuhfer (1993), indicated that chestnut lamprey do cause mortalities to trout, but mortality is not significant. These fish are a management concern, as a Bayluside treatment eradicating chestnut lamprey followed by liberal stocking provided a temporary improvement in the fishery (Jacob 1966). Sea lamprey invade the mainstem and tributaries below Tippy Dam annually, requiring periodic lampricide treatments with 3-triflouromethyl-4-nitrophenol (TFM) to eliminate the larval lamprey (E. Koon, US Fish and Wildlife Service, personal communication).

A pest species of mollusk, the zebra mussel, has invaded Manistee Lake, Manistee County and the shipping channel to Lake Michigan (M. Stifler, SWQD, personal communication). They were also discovered in Tippy Dam Backwaters in the summer of 1997. Zebra mussels spread primarily through veligers, being transported from one body of water to another by boaters in their outboard engines or water in the boats themselves. A 1996 survey of Bear Lake-Manistee County found no zebra mussels, nor have they been identified in any other portion of the watershed. Zebra mussels are present in Manistee Lake in large numbers and annually cause problems clogging industrial and municipal water intakes. Their long term effect on the Tippy Dam hydroelectric operation is unknown. Spiny water flea has invaded Lake Michigan, but no colonization has been documented in Manistee Lake or the river. Rusty crayfish are in the river system, being very abundant below Tippy Dam (MDNR, Fisheries Division). The "Rusty", that has been called "the crayfish from hell", is an exotic species, most probably introduced by bait dealers and anglers. It is an extremely aggressive crayfish, eating everything and anything and even attacks swimmer's toes, and has often replaced native species where introduced.

There are two known pest plant species in the Manistee River system, purple loosestrife and Eurasian milfoil. Purple loosestrife is very prevalent in the Manistee marsh, located near the river's mouth, where it has literally crowded out native plants (T. Havard, MDNR, Wildlife Division, personal communication). Eurasian milfoil is present in several lakes in the watershed.

Several terrestrial pest species are present, gypsy moth, forest tent caterpillar, spruce budworm, and jack pine budworm. None are present in high enough densities to be a problem, except the gypsy moth. This species can cause severe die-offs in forested areas. The gypsy moth itself does not kill the tree, but lowers its resistance to other diseases and parasites, causing mortality, especially in oaks on poorer sites. (R. Hoeksema, MDNR, Forest Management Division, personal communication).

Geology And Hydrology

Geology

Surface topography and soils of the Manistee River were created during the last continental glacial period, the Wisconsonian. The watershed was formed some 10,000 years ago during the glaciers final retreat northward. The watershed is largely a region of outwash plains and recessional moraines.

The moraines were formed while the ice was pushed forward at the same time the leading edge was melting (USDA 1993). There are three distinct morainal sub-sections in the Manistee River watershed: 1) Mio sub-section, from the headwaters to Segment 4; 2) Cadillac sub-section, Segment 8 (Pine River); and 3) Wellston sub-section, Segment 5, including to just below Tippy Dam. These morainal features are the high hills (ice contact hills) next to the watercourse and are the highest in the Lower Peninsula. At the same time, outwash plains were being formed by water (carrying sand) flowing away from the melting glacier. The entire basin contains vast deposits of sand and gravel capable of storing large quantities of water.

The Manistee River originates from seeps in a cedar swamp in Township 29 North, Range 5 West, Section 12- Antrim County, 6 mi southeast of the Village of Alba, at an elevation of 1,250 ft above sea level. The river then flows south and west, emptying into Lake Michigan at an elevation of 579 ft above sea level.

Climate

The basin offers a climate typical of Michigan's "north country" that is strongly influenced by Lake Michigan. The warm days and cool nights offer a pleasant summer haven for residents and tourists alike. Winter provides excellent conditions for skiing, snowmobiling, and other winter sports. Detailed geography of Michigan's climate is presented in "The Climatic Atlas of Michigan" by Eichenlaub et. al. 1990.

Weather data for the Manistee basin indicate a record high of 107°F and low of minus 45°F, both recorded in the Grayling-Fife Lake Area. There is considerable variation in climatic conditions in the basin depending on the distance from Lake Michigan. Mean January temperatures are 17.4°F and July temperatures are 58.7°F. The average monthly minimum temperature for January is 10.4°F, and the average monthly maximum temperature for July is 80.2°F. Temperatures can be expected to fall below zero three days each year near Manistee and 23 days every year near Grayling (Eichenlaub et al 1990). The average length of growing season (frost free days) is 121 days (range 84 to 158).

The summer season yields 34% of the annual precipitation, with another 30% during fall. The low occurs in February with an average monthly yield of 1.44 inches. Annual precipitation averages 32.04 inches, typical of Michigan's Lower Peninsula..

Annual Stream Flows

Draining an area of about 1,780 square miles, the Manistee River has an average discharge of 2,001 cubic feet per second (cfs) at the United States Geological Survey (USGS) Manistee gauge station, which is located near the M-55 bridge. Average discharge rates, from the headwaters downstream, are as follows: Mancelona Bridge -- 18 cfs; County Road 612 -- 116 cfs; CCC Bridge -- 256 cfs; Sharon -- 336 cfs; and Sherman -- 838 cfs. Average annual discharges of Bear Creek are 140 cfs and Pine River 250 cfs.

Seasonal Flow

Flow stability can be critical to support balanced and diverse fish communities (Richards 1990). It is also a known determining factor in ecological and evolutionary processes in streams (Poff and Ward 1989) and has been positively correlated to fish abundance, growth, survival, and reproduction (Coon 1987, Seelbach 1987 and 1991). Flow stability is important in habitat suitability for pink salmon (Raleigh and Nelson 1985), largemouth bass (Stuber et al. 1982c), smallmouth bass (Edwards et al. 1983), walleye (McMahon and Nelson 1984), brook trout (Raleigh 1982), brown trout (Raleigh et al. 1986b), and chinook salmon (Raleigh et al. 1986a).

Flow patterns are usually examined by looking at flow duration curves from various gauge stations.

> "Flow duration curves show the percentage of days during a period of record when water flows exceed a base level. Since different gauging stations on a river represent different drainage areas, overall flow volume may vary considerably among stations. Therefore, to be able to compare different flow duration curves, they have been scaled by the median flow (50% exceedence) and displayed in figure [6]. Exceedence is defined as the probability of any discharge exceeding a given value. Graphs that show high flows tend to obscure the details of low flows, so the flow duration curves above and below the 50% exceedence value are shown separately. The most stable streams in Michigan (Au Sable, Manistee, and Jordan Rivers) have 5% exceedence (high) flows that are less than twice their median flows, and have 95% exceedence (low) flows that are over 80% of their median flows." (Hay-Chmielewski et al. 1995).

The Manistee (mainstem) and Au Sable rivers have the most stable flows of any streams in the country (P. Seelbach, MDNR, Fisheries Division, personal communication). Figure 6 shows high flow duration curves for three sites on the mainstem and two sites on the Pine River, the Pine River being relatively unstable. This demonstrates the extreme stability of the mainstem, that is a reflection of the geology and soils in the watershed. The two sites on the Pine River, especially the site on the East Branch of the Pine River, have problems with high flows, below 25% exceedence, i.e., those which exceed twice the base flow at least 25% of the time. However, these sites show fairly stable flows during low (drought) flows, indicating ground water (Figure 6).

Another index of flow stability that can be used both with gauge data and short time frame and miscellaneous flow data, is to compare mean monthly highest flow to mean monthly lowest flow for each year. High ratios of these two numbers indicate unstable flows dominated by land-surface runoff, and low numbers indicate stable flows dominated by groundwater. These ratios, with 1.0 being a perfectly stable system (where high equals low), are as follows:

Ratio Class (P. Seelbach, MDNR, Fisheries Division, unpublished data).

1.0 - 2.0	Very stable - Michigan's trout streams
2.1 - 5.0	Stable - Coolwater and stable warm water rivers
5.1 - 10.0	Flashy - Less stable warm water rivers
> 10.1	Very flashy

Flow yields per square mile in the watershed, calculated from monthly mean values taken at gauging stations, along with the ratio of high:low flows [Figure 7] were used to compare sites on the Manistee River mainstem and Pine River system to other systems in the state. The yields for low monthly flow (the mean daily flow during the driest month) show that relatively low base flows exist in the East Branch of the Pine River at Tustin, indicating a surface-water driven stream. The high:low ratio indicates the stability of flows throughout the year, a low ratio shows a stable stream. For example the Au Sable River is well known as a very stable system (Richards 1990) and has a ratio of 1.5. The north branch of the Kawkawlin is extremely unstable and has a ratio of 36.5. In comparison, the Manistee is very stable, but it is easy to pick out the trouble spots. The East Branch of the Pine River, with a ratio of 9.7, is unstable. This reflects a warm water stream (it is classified as such) and is due to its arising from Rose Lake, receiving runoff from impermeable soils (very little groundwater) and agricultural land use.

Daily Flow

> "In natural streams, daily flow changes are generally gradual. Some hydroelectric operations and some lake-level control structure operations cause substantial daily flow fluctuations. These daily fluctuations can destabilize banks, create abnormally large moving sediment bedloads, disrupt habitat, strand organisms, and interfere with recreational uses of the river. Aquatic production and diversity are profoundly reduced by such daily fluctuations (Cushman 1985; Gislason 1985; Nelson 1986; Bain et al. 1988). " (Hay-Chmielewski et. al. 1995)

One active lake-level control structure is located on Lake Margrethe. This structure, that has 3 ft of head, is operated seasonally by the Crawford County Road Commission. When lake water levels are above the target lake-level, large amounts of water are rapidly released, causing stream flow below this point to rapidly increase. Conversely, when the lake water level is below the target level, flows to the stream are shut off to raise the lake level quickly; this causes the stream to dry-up.

Hydroelectric dams that operate in a peaking mode cause significant habitat degradation (Cushman 1985; Gislason 1985; Nelson 1986; Bain et al. 1988). These projects generate high flood flows during peak electrical demand (generally 8 am to 5 pm) and drought flows during non-peak periods (generally at night). Historically, both hydroelectric projects on the Manistee River were operated as peaking operations and were licensed by the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (FERC). The peaking operation at Tippy Dam went from a high of 4,500 cfs (three turbines) to a minimum flow of 850 cfs twice daily, and average daily flow was 1,684 cfs. High flows during peaking exceeded the 10 year flood and low flows were below drought levels (Figure 8) (S. Smith, Consumer's Power Company, personal communication). These flows have devastating affects on larval and juvenile fishes, increase erosion downstream, and cause temperature fluctuations. Peaking operations have been shown to increase water temperatures 10°C (18°F) in minutes at the Alcona hydroelectric facility on the Au Sable River (Figure 9; Lawler, Matusky, and Skelly Engineers 1991). The Tippy Dam facility has not been monitored, but being a surface-draw hydroelectric station, it does increase temperatures downstream. Operating licenses were renewed in 1994 as run-of-the-river projects with outflow about equal to inflow. These facilities had been voluntarily operating at run-of-the-river, since 1989, with very positive biological benefits. Some observed benefits are abundant chinook and steelhead reproduction, reduced bank erosion, natural revegetation of stream banks, and spawning runs of lake sturgeon.

Channel Morphology

The channel morphology of the Manistee River and its major tributaries has been drastically altered by humans and their associated activities in settling the watershed. A review of H.R. Page's (1885) "History of Manistee County" gives an insight as to the shape of the river channel in pre-European settlement days.

In 1869, an exploration of the Manistee River was made under the direction of the River Improvement Company, with the accounting of that survey written (excerpts as follows) by A.S. Wordsworth, leader of the survey party (Page 1885).

> "September 18th., in two canoes, so light we could carry them upon our shoulders, we commenced descent of the Manistee, from Section 18, T28N, R4W [near Deward]. The spring sources of this stream are in hardwood timber land, but changing to pine land near the south boundary of T29N; thence for sixty miles on either bank is good pine land, or pine plains, some cork pine, but mostly Norway pine; the white pine free from punk knots, but few black knots, and comparatively free from shakes and hollow butts; prime as to age: first-class, common to good sound pine; the Manistee decidedly floatable for saw logs from Section 18, T28N, R4W: stream fifty feet wide, well defined banks; extreme freshet rise two feet. Soon after crossing the western boundary of Range 6 west [Sharon], we encountered the first flood jam worthy of notice upon the river. This jam is 20 rods [330 ft] up and down the stream: estimated expense of removal, $40 per lineal foot or $800. Near the west boundary of the last-named township, is jam number two: eighteen rods. On Section 6, T24N, R8W [Smithville] is jam No. 3, at crossing of the Ah-go-sah trail: twenty rods in extent. These jams date back in buried centuries. As evidence, we find deep-worn trails around them, where Indians have dragged their canoes; also soil accumulations from fallen leaves and freshet of the stream, with forest growth.
>
> "Cutting to the heart of a cedar twenty inches in diameter, growing over the center [of the jam], I counted 160 years growth. Near the West boundary of Range 9 west [downstream of US-131 Bridge], is jam No. 4, 20 rods. Section 17, Range 10 west, jam No. 5, 25 rods [412.5 ft]; in Range 11 west, near the center line [Harvey Bridge], jam

No. 6, 25 rods; and near the west boundary [Sherman], jam No. 7, 30 rods [495 ft]. A few rods below the west line of Range 11 west, is jam No. 8, 20 rods.

"We meet, in Range 12 west, with jams No. 9 and 10 respectively, of 25 and 30 rods extent. Near the east boundary of Range 13 West [Hodenpyl Dam site], is jam No. 11 and the last upon the stream. It is thirty rods long. To recapitulate: The eleven flood jams of the Manistee have a lineal extent, by the thread of the river, of 263 rods [4,340 ft]. Expense of working a channel through the thirty feet wide; in round numbers, $10,000; wing jams and snags, etc., etc., say $5,000; in all, $15,000. One mile below the last named flood jam, commence lumbermen's roll ways; thence downstream they become noticeable features of the river.

"Two miles down the stream, we encountered a jam of floating sawlogs of one and one-half mile extent, over or around which we were compelled to drag or carry our canoes, and pack our camp 'fixens,' and rock, clay, sand, gravel and soil specimens. At the foot we found a force of nine men at work breaking the jam.

"We here see the last of the 'Grayling,' a fish allied to the speckled trout, and called by the residents, the 'Manistee' fish. They are in great abundance near bend waters; they feed, at this season, upon a small, white miller, and readily take a fly-hook, often darting above the surface to secure their prey. Their average length is ten inches, weighing from six to twelve ounces. Hundreds can be taken with a single hook, in a day. They are the "grayling" of English and Scotch waters.

"The Manistee River has been long known as one of the most remarkable streams in the Northwest in this, that it never floods, seldom freezes, and is never affected by droughts. The secret of these singular features of the river is found in the fact that it is fed with springs which flow into the stream from its banks every few rods, so that it is safe to say there are more than a thousand spring streams that bubble up and empty their pure waters into the river within fifty miles of Manistee. These streams vary in size from a small rill to a good mill stream. Everywhere along the banks of this beautiful river they boil out and bubble up in their crystal beauty, affording water as pure and sweet as any in the world; and this probably accounts for the great abundance of the grayling fish, which is sweeter meated and every way as gamey as the brook trout."

Channel Gradient

"River gradient, together with flow volumes, is one of the main controlling influences on the structure of river channel. Steeper gradients allow faster water flows with accompanying changes in depth, width, channel meandering, and sediment transport (Knighton 1984). Gradient has been used to describe habitat requirements of smallmouth bass (Trautman 1942; Edwards et al. 1983), flathead catfish (Lee and Terrell 1987), green sunfish (Stuber et al. 1982b), northern pike (Inskip 1982), warmouth (McMahon et al. 1984), white sucker (Twomey et al. 1984), bluegill (Stuber et al. 1982a), black crappie (Edwards et al. 1982), blacknose dace (Trial et al. 1983), and creek chub (McMahon 1982).

> Gradient is measured as elevation change in feet per river mile [Figure 10 and Table 8]. The average gradient of the mainstem is [2.89] feet per mile. Naturally, some portions of the river are steeper than average and others are more gradual. These different gradient areas create different types of channel, and hence different kinds of habitat for fish and other aquatic life. Typical channel patterns in relation to gradient (G. Whelan, MDNR, Fisheries Division) are listed below. In these descriptions, hydraulic diversity refers to the variety of water velocities and depths found in the river. The best river habitat offers such variety to support various life functions of various species. Fish and other life are typically most diverse and have the best reproductive potential in those parts of a river with gradient between 10 and 69.9 feet per river mile (G. Whelan, MDNR, Fisheries Division; Trautman 1942). Unfortunately, such gradients are rare in Michigan because of the low relief landscape." (Hay-Chmielewski et al. 1995).

Areas of high gradient are the areas that were dammed or channelized by early settlers' activities.

Gradient Class	Channel Characteristics
0.0 - 2.9 ft/mi	Mostly run habitat with low hydraulic diversity
3.0 - 4.9 ft/mi	Some riffles with modest hydraulic diversity
5.0 - 9.9 ft/mi	Riffle-pool sequences with good hydraulic diversity
10.0 - 69.9 ft/mi	Well established, regular riffle-pool sequences with excellent hydraulic diversity
70.0 - 149.9 ft/mi	Chute and pool habitats with only fair hydraulic diversity
> 150 ft/mi	Falls and rapids with poor hydraulic diversity.

A 1928 report issued by the Michigan Department of Conservation on water resources of the Manistee River stated that practically the entire fall of the mainstem between Sherman and Deward could be used for hydroelectric power. Twelve sites were listed where it would be physically feasible to construct hydroelectric dams with heads ranging from 16 to 63 capable of generating 132 million kilowatt hours annually. The report further stated this could be realized without artificial storage due to the high sustained flows.

House Document No. 159 (US House of Representatives 1931) was a similar report on the Manistee River basin. The report concluded that improvement of the Manistee River upstream from Manistee Harbor, for navigation in combination with power development, control of floods, or irrigation needs was not justified at that time.

Presently, there are nine potential sites in the Manistee River basin (8 on the Manistee River and 1 on the Pine River), with gross heads ranging from 15 to 66 ft capable of generating 186,800 kilowatt hours annually (US House of Representatives 1931). All of these potential sites are on river reaches being considered for Wild and Scenic River designation. Should this designation occur, these sites would be protected from a license for a new hydroelectric power project (D. Pearson, MDNR, Forest Management Division, personal communication).

There are three retired hydroelectric projects on the Manistee River system. The largest project is Stronach Dam on the Pine River; the other two are Manton Millpond Dam and Manton Upper Power Dam on Manton (Cedar) Creek. Stronach Dam is in the process of being removed, as Consumers Power

Company agreed to set aside $750,000.00 for its removal in the new Tippy-Hodenpyl Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (FERC) license. A staged removal of 2 ft per year over five years was agreed in the FERC approved plan. To date, the catwalk and associated superstructure, old turbines, portions of the old power house have been removed. On Friday, December 13, 1996, the coffer dam was removed and water began flowing around the dam structure, beginning the drawdown. This removal will restore 2 mi of high gradient high quality coldwater fish habitat. A long-term fish study (above and below) is being conducted under the guidance of Professor Dan Hayes of Michigan State University. The results of the study will be used to determine if a fish barrier will be constructed to keep out resident coolwater fish of the Tippy Dam backwaters.

Gradient profiles in individual river segments (Figure 1) are discussed below:

Segment 1 and Segment 2 - Headwaters to Smithville

From its source to the confluence of Frenchmans Creek (Deward area), the Manistee River follows a shallow-winding woody-cover filled course. River discharge at Mancelona Bridge (headwaters) is 17.6 cfs and the gradient is 5.9 ft per mi. Shallow water, a channel with abundant vegetation and woody debris make this extremely arduous canoeing and difficult fishing.

From Frenchmans Creek to M-72 Bridge 5 mi west of Grayling, the flow and depth increases and the channel has less woody debris. River discharge at 612 Road becomes 116 cfs and gradient becomes 2.1 ft per mi. The river channel has some log and other woody debris obstacles, but additional large woody debris is desirable for trout and invertebrate habitat.

Between M-72 Bridge and Sharon the channel widens and is practically lacking large woody debris that provides trout cover and insect habitat. River discharge at CCC Bridge is 256 cfs and gradient ranges from 2.2 to 9.8 ft per mi. This section has many short, fast riffles. They are relatively shallow and are free of large rocks.

Segment 3- Smithville to M-115 Bridge

This segment is larger and deeper. It has some log jams, sharp bends, and short, deep riffles. River discharge at Sharon is 336 cfs and gradient ranges from 1.9 to 5.6 ft per mi. Discharge at Sherman, based on a direct drainage area ratio is 838 cfs. This segment is also lacking large woody debris that is trout and invertebrate habitat.

Segment 4 - Hodenpyl Dam to Red Bridge

The area inundated by Hodenpyl Dam has some of the highest gradient water on the Manistee at 11 ft/mi. This riffle area was once a high quality spawning area for potamodromous species. Very high and severely eroded banks, many sharp bends, and the impression of a deep powerful river characterize this segment below Hodenpyl Dam, as the river is cutting through a large moraine. It is totally undeveloped and lacks good access. The fluctuating water level from Hodenpyl Dam has had an overriding influence on this segment. This is also a high gradient reach, with an excellent gravel and cobble substrate, having an average gradient of 7.1 ft per mi.

Segment 5 - Tippy Dam to M-55 Bridge

The area inundated by Tippy Dam was a high gradient riffle area (6 ft/mi) and excellent gravel and cobble substrate spawning habitat. This is evidenced by the high quality gravel found throughout the first mile below the dam. The average river gradient here is 4.65 ft per mi. There is also a high gradient area on the Pine River (over 15 ft/mi) now flooded by Tippy Dam, that was high quality gravel and cobble substrate spawning habitat. The Manistee River below Tippy Dam becomes a large river flowing through lowland vegetative types with large, undulating curves. It has sparse development and infrequent access. The fluctuating water level from Tippy Dam drawdown has influenced this segment. Average discharge at Tippy Dam is 1684 cfs (Consumers Energy data). The first mile or two below Tippy Dam have high gradient gravel riffles, that are heavily used as spawning habitat by potamodromous fishes from Lake Michigan. Below this area, the river flattens out and has little or no gradient (1 ft/mi).

Segment 6 - North Branch Manistee River
The North Branch follows a slow, winding course through open marsh lands. Beaver dams, dense overhanging vegetation, and partly submerged woody debris create very difficult canoeing conditions, particularly in the upper reaches. The North Branch has a discharge rate of 26.4 cfs.

Segment 7 - Bear Creek
Bear Creek follows a narrow, winding course through agricultural and forested land. It has occasional short, fast riffles, impassable log jams, and many hairpin turns. River discharge during spring melt increases to 1,239 cfs and the low mean daily discharge equals 80 cfs. The average discharge at Brethren is 140 cfs.

Segment 8 - Pine River
The 48-mi length of Pine River traverses a variety of water conditions. It has many sharp bends, short choppy riffles, and passable log and woody debris jams. From Walker to Peterson bridges (M-37) there are occasional large rocks and clay ledges in the faster water.

The Pine River has a high mean daily flow of 1,830 cfs and a low of 175 cfs. Flood peak discharge equals 2,240 cfs. The Pine River is unusual among area rivers is that it may rise 1 to 4 ft above its average level during heavy rains or spring melt. The river gradient is about 15 ft per mi, highest of any stream in northwest lower Michigan. (Figure 11 and Table 9). This creates nearly ideal riffle-pool conditions.

Stronach Dam on the lower Pine River was operated from about 1912 to 1953 to provide electric power for local use. The impoundment has silted in, leaving about 2 to 3 ft deep water, and is now useless for power generation. Inflow equals outflow at this time. The area under Stronach Dam has a gradient of 25 ft/mi, some of the best spawning area of the entire stream.

Channel Cross Sections

The description of habitat by gradient presented in the preceding section, assumes normal channel cross sections for such gradients. However, channel cross sections can deviate from these characterizations as discussed by Heede (1980). Figure 12 (Gebhards 1973) illustrates natural and altered stream channels and what happens to fish biomass as a result. Unstable flows will create flood channels that are aggraded in some areas and degraded (scoured) in others (Figure 13). Abnormal sediment loads (either too much or too little) will modify habitat. Bridges, culverts, bank erosion, and other channel modifications will also cause deviations from expected channel form. Thus more detailed observations of channel cross-section in each reach are needed to check for these modifying factors. Figure 13a, that shows two channel cross sections below Tippy Dam, illustrates the influence of a “peaking operation” and lack of sediment. Besides having a scoured channel directly below the hydroelectric facility, pine logs from turn of the century log drives are perched in the banks below. Some of the logs are 10 ft above the present streambed, indicating excessive scouring from the twice a day flood events.

One major problem in managing the Manistee River system is the presence of a tremendous amount of sediment (sand bedload). This sedimentation is known to cause a multitude of problems for the fish inhabiting the river (Alexander and Hansen 1988). The origin of this bedload is perturbations of the uplands surrounding the river during the logging era. The loggers not only removed many log jams and large woody debris from the stream channel, they rolled logs down the banks and drove them to market in the spring. The photos in Appendix 2 show the log drives, rollways, and badly eroding banks. Soil in northwest lower Michigan is exceptionally sandy. Without trees to stabilize the soil, huge amounts of sediment were transported to the river by waterborne and airborne pathways. Once in the stream, this sediment began to affect the aquatic environment. One of the first signs of excess stream bedload is deposition of sand and sediment along the bottom. This action serves to increase the height of the water surface and causes the stream to overflow its banks and sediment begins to flow laterally and cover the edges of the stream. As the sediment builds up, the stream channel then begins to braid, forming several channels in a wide flat area. Most of the stream's irregularity and heterogeneity are lost as the stream bottom becomes smoother and the flow becomes more laminar and swift. The fish within the stream channel, lose valuable habitat for feeding, resting, and spawning.

These effects can be observed on the Manistee River. The upper stretches in the Deward Tract are beginning to recover from the logging era. However, just downstream from Cameron Bridge, the river begins to widen, has a lower gradient (lower stream power) and becomes braided. The river below County Road 612 shows this braided condition for two-thirds of the distance to Highway M-72. This sandy braided condition results from sedimentation after devegetation of the uplands surrounding the river. As the river moves downstream and picks up flow and volume, it reverts to a single channel, inferring that the single channel in the Deward area and in the lower stretches are more indicative of what was present before the damaging influences of humans.

Because of its stable flow, sediments are not moved as quickly downstream in the Manistee River as in streams that experience seasonal flooding. Therefore the Manistee River would be expected to require a substantially longer recovery period than other rivers. Considering this, it is possible that logging era sediments from the Deward area have moved downstream only as far as the Cameron Bridge area. In addition, effects of natural stream "cleansing" would not be noted over time as might be expected in other streams.

Presently, there are three bank stabilization projects in the Manistee River system. The first is in the Upper Manistee River from the headwaters to US-131 (Segments 1, 2 and 3), the second on the Bear Creek watershed (Segment 7), and the third being the Pine River (Segment 8). The Upper Manistee and Pine rivers projects are partnership agreements with MDNR, Fisheries Division, US Forest Service, Huron Pines RC & D Council, Conservation Resource Alliance (formerly Northwest Michigan RC&D Council), Natural Resource Conservation Service, County Road Commissions, Watershed and Property Owners Associations, and Trout Unlimited. The goal of these partnerships is not only to restore eroded banks, but to address erosion at road crossings, construct sediment basins, and implement appropriate land management practices on a watershed basis. These partnerships are also working on several tributaries, that are important from the standpoint of fish reproduction. The Bear Creek project just began, with the first banks being stabilized the summer of 1994. A Michigan Habitat Improvement Fund grant of $35,450.00 for 1997 will allow additional streambank stabilization.

Table 10 lists the erosion sites by reach on the Manistee River mainstem (Segments 1-5), Bear Creek (Segment 7), and Pine River (Segment 8). These data are from the Northwest Michigan Streambank Erosion Inventory prepared by the USDA, Soil Conservation Service (1986). These tables reveal: 1) the reach from Hodenpyl Dam to Tippy Dam Backwaters has 62 severely eroding sites (8.9/ mi). Although the origin of many of these was the lumbering era, they have been perpetuated by the past peaking operation at Hodenpyl Dam. The vast majority of these are clay banks, that do not contribute as detrimental sediment and are cheaper to stabilize than sand banks. 2) Bear Creek has a high number of sites per mile, but most are minor or moderate sites and a large percentage are clay banks. 3) Pine River has a large number of moderate and severe sites that are sand and are considered in need of stabilization.

The characterization of habitat by gradient presented above assumes normal channel cross sections for such gradients. However, channel cross sections can deviate from these characterizations. Unstable flows will create flood channels that are wide and shallow during typical flows. Abnormal sediment loads (either too much or too little) will modify habitat. Bridges, culverts, bank erosion, and other channel modifications will also cause deviations from the expected channel form. Thus, more detailed observations of the channel cross-section in each reach are needed to check for these modifying factors.

Coopes (1974) and unpublished data from the Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division are used to describe the channel in different reaches. These characterizations provide a clear, qualitative description of the channel. Besides the qualitative analysis of channel condition, five quantitative measures of channel characteristics were determined for the Manistee River and are displayed in Tables 11 through 16. These calculations were made from data collected by USGS or the Department of Natural Resources during stream discharge studies. Cross sections that were clear of bridges and most representative of the section were selected where possible. Additional cross-section data are needed for a more detailed analysis for the river above Hodenpyl Dam. These measurements are as follows:

Channel Width - Measurements of channel width can be compared to the average width of rivers with the same discharge volume using data from Leopold and Maddock (1953) and Leopold and Wolman (1957). Expected width was calculated from the relation log (Width) = 0.741436 + 0.498473 log (Mean Daily Discharge), where width is measured in ft and discharge is measured in cubic ft per second. The measured channel widths and mean discharge are compared to the theoretical width at discharge and a determination is made whether measured channel width is in the theoretical bounds for the discharge. Overly wide channels are probably produced by fluctuating flows or excessive sediment loading. Overly narrow channels are probably produced by non-erodible bed materials, bulkheads along the bank or by channel dredging.

Hydraulic Diversity - Variability of velocity and depth can be examined with the Shannon-Weiner information statistic to characterize predictability of hydraulic conditions in randomly chosen portions of a cross-section. The greater the variability of velocity and depth, the larger number of species or life stages (that is, spawning, young-of-year, juvenile, adult) can be supported in a reach. Diversity indices were calculated from counts of cross-section data points in classes of velocity in intervals of 0.5 ft/sec and depth in intervals of 0.5 ft. The diversity index ranges from 0.0 which represents constant depth and velocity across a channel as in a flume, to a maximum between 3.2 and 4.2, depending on number of samples collected, which represents a highly variable hydraulic channel. Diversity between 0 and 1.5 is considered poor hydraulic diversity; between 1.51 and 2.0 is considered fair hydraulic diversity; between 2.01 and 2.5 is considered good hydraulic diversity; and above 2.51 is considered excellent hydraulic diversity. This measurement is sensitive to sample size, so data were selected with greater than 15 samples to minimize this problem.

Percent Maximum Diversity - To allow for easier interpretation of these data, the percent maximum diversity was calculated by dividing calculated diversity value by the maximum possible diversity. This variable accounts for sample size and ranges from 0 to 100%. Channels with poor diversity in velocity and depth have percent diversities between 0 and 25%; fair channels have percent diversities between 26 and 50%; good channels have percent diversities between 51 and 75%; and excellent channels have percent diversities between 76 and 100%.

Number of Different Combinations - The number of different combinations of velocity and depth across the transect provides additional explanatory information to assist in interpreting the hydraulic diversity data. A transect that has between 1 and 4 combinations of velocity and diversity has a poor amount of variability; 5 and 6 combinations have a fair amount of variability; 7 and 8 have a good amount of variability; and above 8 combinations these transects are have excellent variability. This measurement is also influenced by sample size, so data were selected with greater than 15 samples to decrease this problem.

Percent Difference Samples - To allow for easier interpretation of these data, the percent different samples were calculated by dividing the number of different samples by the total number of samples. This variable accounts for sample size and ranges from 0 to 100%. Channels with poor variation in velocity and depth have percent diversities between 0 and 25%; fair variation have percent diversities between 26 and 50%; good variation have percent diversities between 51 and 75%; and excellent variation have percent diversities between 76 and 100%.

A limited number of channel measurements are available for the Manistee River. The only ones available on the mainstem are below the two hydroelectric dams, made during the relicensing studies in 1990 and 1991. The one area of concern is below Hodenpyl Dam, where more than 50% of the analyses indicate a channel too narrow. This is partly explained because it is a high gradient area, but the extreme downcutting and narrowness are the result of almost 60 years of peaking hydroelectric operation. Current channel cross-section work includes University of Michigan’s (UM) study below Tippy Dam and MSU’s study on the Pine River in conjunction with the Stronach Dam removal. The UM study is a remeasurement of Icthyological Associates, Inc. work completed for Consumers Energy before the relicensing of Tippy Dam. This work indicates that run-of-the-river hydroelectric operation is beneficial to the river, as channel morphology is stabilized, as increased exposed gravel and cobble substrate has resulted and decreased sand bedload.

These data point out the need to obtain additional channel width analysis, especially in areas above the hydroelectric dams where sediment loading is apparent. Many more transects are necessary to obtain a complete picture of the Manistee Rivers channel morphology, especially where bank stabilization is occurring.

Soil And Land Use Patterns

The historic vegetative cover of the watershed was predominantly pine forest and hardwood forest, with wetlands intermixed. The current landscape remains predominantly coniferous, deciduous, or wetland forest (54%) and few urban areas (3.3%). Land use (P. Seelbach, MDNR Fisheries Division, unpublished data) is now about as follows:

Urban and suburban	3.3%
Agricultural	39.0%
Range land	1.7%
Coniferous forest	12.2%
Deciduous forest	29.3%
Wetlands (forested & non-forested)	12.8%
Lakes and streams	1.7%

Although 39% is listed as agricultural land, little of this is cultivated cropland. The majority is pasture, fruit orchards, or Christmas tree plantations.

The majority of the soils in the watershed, especially along the mainstem, are deep sands of the Kalkaska-Rubicon-Grayling series, which are very well drained, rapidly permeable soils. There are other soil types in the watershed, but the deep sands affect mainly the hydrology of the river system (Sommers, 1977) (Figure 14). Soils in the lower watershed are of the Rifle-Carbondale-Greenwood series, which are the poorly drained organic types. The soils along the Pine River corridor are mostly the Tawas-Croswell-Lupton series, with significant acres of Rubicon-Montcalm-Graycalm series and Nestor-Kawkalin-Manistee series. Many of these series are clays, loams and mucks which are moderately to poorly drained soils.

Many agricultural land uses have dramatic effects on aquatic environments. Cultivation of soils increases erosion and sediment to streams. These sediments bury gravel and cobble critical to reproduction and survival of many fish species. Woody debris was removed from the Manistee River channel (Page 1885) and riparian vegetation was often clear-cut or burned, limiting instream cover for organisms and again contributing to increased water temperatures. Existing wetlands, often the object of drainage, are important as spawning and living areas for many species and important to the water quality of the system. The whole process destabilizes flow in the river by increasing peak flows downstream and reducing groundwater recharge from wetlands. Flow destabilization also increases the frequency and magnitude of flood flows and increases water temperature (Dunne and Leopold 1978). The major cultivated agricultural areas along the Pine River are: North Branch in Cherry Grove Township - Wexford County; East Branch in Burdell and Sherman Townships - Osceola County, and Bear Creek - Manistee County.

“Agricultural land use produces increased loadings of nutrients, pesticides, and herbicides to the river system. Nutrients affect stream productivity and excessive amounts can alter aquatic communities. Pesticides and herbicides are toxic to many organisms. Water withdrawals for irrigation reduce summer base flows and negatively affects river systems (Fulcher et al. 1986).” (Hay-Chmielewski et al. 1995). There are ongoing water withdrawals on Pine River and Bear Creek. The headwater's area has significant acreage in Christmas tree plantations, pasture land, and corn and potato fields. Many corn and potato fields are irrigated with large spray irrigation systems from ground water wells.

“Land development for urban use also has dramatic affects on the aquatic environment. Temporary sediment loads that erode from unprotected construction sites can be 500 times those of undisturbed lands (Toffaleti and Bobrin 1991). Sediments that reach stream channels clog and bury clean gravel and cobble substrates critical for many invertebrates and fish species. Sediment loads from improperly placed or maintained road crossings can also be a major input to the system.”(Hay-Chmielewski et al.

1995). An inventory of the road and stream crossings exists for the Pine River watershed (Conservation Resource Alliance 1997).

> "Development noticeably increases the percentage of impervious land area, so that less water percolates into the water table and more water reaches the stream channel quickly as surface runoff. Urban and suburban areas typically have 50-100% and 25-45% impervious surface areas (Toffaleti and Bobrin 1991). Impervious surfaces include paved surfaces (roads, parking lots) and roofs of buildings. These have runoff co-efficients 6-14 times greater than for undisturbed land (Toffaleti and Bobrin 1991). Engineered stormwater runoff systems also speed surface runoff. Increased runoff causes greater peak flows, harmful to reproduction and survival of many aquatic organisms, more erosion, decreased groundwater recharge, and thus base flow, increased summer temperatures, and decreased available habitat (Leopold 1968; Booth 1991)….Runoff from impervious surfaces carries pollutants including nutrients, bacteria, metals, litter, oil and grease, herbicides, pesticides, and salts. Osborne and Wiley (1992) have shown that urbanization is the primary impact which increases summer nutrient concentrations in rivers." (Hay-Chmielewski et al. 1991).

Development of rural or seasonal dwellings is increasing in the watershed, as retirees from southern Michigan move north to enjoy their "piece of heaven." This results in construction of water wells reducing groundwater tables and summer stream baseflows, with corresponding increase in water temperature and decrease in available stream habitat. After use, this water often returns to the system as heated surface water, causing increased and more variable water temperatures.

The State of Michigan - MDNR and the US Forest Service have extensive land ownership in the Manistee watershed corridor. Table 17 reflects these ownerships by river segment (US Forest Service, 1983). A total of 65% of corridor lands is in public ownership, with MDNR controlling 42% and the US Forest Service 23%. A significant land use in this riparian zone is the Hanson Military Reserve, which is a training area for National Guard Units nationwide. This area extends from M-72 downstream to CCC Bridge south of the mainstem and Portage Creek. The major effect is to Portage Creek and consists of stream crossings by tanks and other motorized vehicles, water withdrawals, fires created by bombing and artillery, and noise pollution from land and air maneuvers.

The soils of the watershed are as follows (P. Seelbach, MDNR, Fisheries Division, unpublished data):

Clayey	7.9%
Loamy/organic/sand/gravel/sandy	41.4%
Sandy	19.4%
Wet/clayey/loamy/sandy/organic	29.6%
Inland lakes and streams	1.7%

These percentages offer insight to current land use. Heavier soils, clays and loams, are the best types for agriculture. Area of mapped loamy soils (41.4%) and agricultural land uses (39.0%) are closely correlated. A very interesting comparison is wet soils versus wetlands. The wet soils indicate where wetlands once were. About, 12.8% of the drainage basin are wetlands. This is only about half of the 29.6% wet soils. This indicates that almost 57% of the total wetlands have been filled or drained in the

Manistee River watershed. This correlates well to the loss of 5 million acres of wetlands statewide (about 50%), that has been calculated.

Special Jurisdictions

Jurisdictions regarding the river and the riparian zones are controlled by federal and state laws, county and township ordinances, and city and town by-laws. Some federal laws and many state statutes are administrated by MDEQ, Land and Water Management Division (LWMD) (Table 18).

Navigability

The entire mainstem and large tributaries are navigable. The smaller tributaries are presumed navigable as defined in Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Law Enforcement Division Report No. 9 (1993).

Portions of the Manistee River watershed have been adjudicated navigable by the Michigan Supreme Court:

> Manistee River and tributaries (174 Michigan 1)
> Manistee River, Manistee County (53 Michigan 593, 185 Michigan 302)
> Manistee River, South Branch (now Pine River) of Manistee County, downstream from lands owned in 1877 by R. G. Peters (37 Michigan 406).

None of the Manistee River system has been declared non-navigable by the courts.

Federal Energy Regulatory Commission

> "The Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (FERC) is authorized under the Federal Power Act of 1920, as amended, to license and regulate hydroelectric facilities that meet one or more of the following criteria pursuant to Section 23 (b) (1) of the Act: 1) the project is located on a navigable water of the United States; 2) the project occupies lands of the United States; 3) the project uses surplus water or water power from a governmental dam; or 4) the project is located on a body of water over which Congress has Commerce Clause jurisdiction, project construction occurred on or after August 26, 1935, and the project affects the interests of interstate or foreign commerce. About when a project is being licensed or re-licensed, power and non-power impacts of a project are balanced by FERC and the resulting license issued for the project contains specific articles to protect natural resources in the project area. The licenses are administered and enforced by FERC with MDNR having a consultation role in both the licensing and enforcement proceedings. In general, most new FERC licenses are issued for a 35 year period unless a FERC exemption is issued. The FERC exemption is a perpetual license that contains a mandatory Article 2 letter from MDNR and the US Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) detailing protective measures for the natural resources in the project area." (Hay-Chmielewski et al. 1995).

FERC regulates two projects on the Manistee River, Hodenpyl and Tippy dams. In 1993, a historic offer of settlement regarding the re-licensing of eleven hydroelectric dams on the Au Sable, Manistee, and

Muskegon rivers was drafted for presentation to FERC. In July 1994, FERC adopted almost all the settlement agreement and a license was issued for 40 years (Appendix 3).

County Drain Commissioners

County drain commissioners have authority to establish designated drain systems under the Drain Code (PA 40, 1956). This allows for construction or maintenance of drains, creeks, rivers, and water courses and their branches for flood control and water management. A designated drain may be cleaned out (all in-stream structures removed), straightened, widened, deepened, extended, consolidated, relocated, tiled, and connected to improve flow of water. Designated drains constructed before January 1, 1973, are exempt from the provisions of the Inland Lakes and Streams Act and the Wetlands Act.

Known designated drains in the watershed are listed by county and township (Table 19). The known public drains numbers forty; this does not include private drains. The relatively few drains in the Manistee River system indicate little development, limited agricultural areas, and mostly sandy soils. Kalkaska County, through which the mainstem of the Manistee River flows from the northeast corner diagonally to the southwest corner, has no designated drains.

Drain commissioners are also responsible for the maintenance and operation of lake-level control structures. The two known structures are: Lake Margrethe in Crawford County, and Bear Lake in Manistee County.

Natural and Scenic River Designations

Portions of the mainstem, Bear Creek, and Pine River are designated under the Federal Michigan Scenic Rivers Act of 1991 (PL 102-249). This includes 26 mi on the mainstem from Tippy Dam to M-55 bridge (Segment 5) classified as recreational, 6.5 mi of Bear Creek from Coates Highway to its mouth classified as scenic, and 25 mi of the Pine River from Lincoln Bridge to Stronach Dam backwaters, also classified as scenic.

The US Forest Service, which administers lands along these sections, is nearly finished working on a management plan for these three areas (K. Martinson, US Forest Service, personal communication).

In addition, the entire Manistee River system, including tributaries, are being studied for designation under the Michigan Natural Rivers Act (Part 305 N.R.P. Act (1994 PA 451)). This process began January 1994 (D. Pearson, MDNR, Forest Management Division, personal communication). This designation is a form of zoning that is designed to control development in a 400 foot strip on either side of the river.

In January 1995, Advisory Committees were formed covering three segments on the mainstem, the Pine River, and Bear Creek. These groups will work on drafting the zoning rules for each segment. Some are nearing completion, and one group, the Lower Manistee, has voted to dissolve.

Recreational Use

Fishing and canoeing are the two most popular recreational uses on the Manistee River. These two activities generate user conflicts in some areas during certain times of the year.

Canoeing is most popular from Cameron Bridge to Sharon (Segment 1 & 2) on the Manistee River and on the Pine River (Segment 8). The US Forest Service estimates over 20,000 canoe activity days annually in those reaches (unpublished US Forest Service data). US Forest Service records indicate the Pine River is one of the most heavily canoed waterways in the nation, with the number of launches limited by the US Forest Service on their lands by a permit system. Under this system 44,000 launches are reserved for the six canoe liveries and 11,000 reserved for private canoes annually. A percentage of the canoeists, particularly on weekends, consume considerable amounts of alcohol and demonstrate less than desirable behavior. This is in line with the Pine River's reputation as "the party river." Tubing is increasing in popularity, as a permit is not necessary. An additional area of high canoe use is from Smithville to US 131 Bridge (mid portion of Segment 3) on the mainstem. Canoe liveries are located at Cameron Bridge, Highway M-72 Bridge, Smithville, Highway US 131 Bridge, Sherman, Wellston, and Pine River Area.

Trout fishing is extremely popular throughout the river system, including the smallest of tributaries, but, is most intense below Tippy Dam (Segment 5). This river segment is extremely popular year round, especially in spring and fall during steelhead and salmon runs from Lake Michigan. A 1987 angler creel census showed that anglers fished a total of 267,159 hours annually below Tippy Dam (Rakoczy and Lockwood 1988a&b). A 1985 angler creel census on Manistee Lake showed a total of 191,822 angler hours, with over 20% expended on steelhead and salmon fishing. The 1985 creel census estimated 185,218 angler hours, annually, from Tippy Dam to the mouth of Bear Creek and 105,344 angler hours from the mouth of Bear Creek to Manistee Lake, for a total of 290,562 hours (Rakoczy and Lockwood 1988a&b). Fall 1993 brought an end to legal salmon snagging in this segment and along with it an end to the litter, poor sportsmanship, and bank erosion associated with this activity. Although angler effort declined, angler satisfaction increased. These anglers said they would return and bring fellow anglers. The number of licensed fishing guides using drift boats and jet boats has increased, particularly below Tippy Dam. This has resulted in conflicts especially among jet boats, drift boats, and wading anglers.

Quality fishing regulations are in effect from Yellowtree's Landing to C.C.C. Bridge (7.5 mi of Segment 2). The special regulations in this section are: "flies only", minimum size limit of 8 inches for brook trout, 12 inches all other trout, a daily limit of five trout, and open season of last Saturday in April through October 31st.

Other popular recreational activities include camping, picnicking, hunting, trapping, cross-country skiing, hiking, horseback riding, and bird watching. A North Country National Scenic trail is located in Segment 3 & 4 and coincides with the existing Shore to Shore Trail. This trail is managed by the US Forest Service.

The entire Manistee River mainstem can be canoed, but the upper reaches of Segments 1, 7 and 8 are hard canoeing due to brush, logjams, and beaver dams. Major portages exist over both hydroelectric dams. The portage trails need upgrading to be acceptable, which is in the settlement offer.

Upper portions of the mainstem (Segments 1, 2, and portions of 3), major tributaries (Segments 6, 7, and 8), and all lesser tributaries can be waded. Also, there are small areas in downstream reaches that can be waded, particularly in higher gradient riffle areas.

Segments 3, 6 and 5, with some areas of Segment 2 can be traversed by motorboat. Segment 5 is the only portion passable to bigger propeller driven boats. Motorboats can use both Hodenpyl and Tippy dams' backwaters, but boating is hazardous due to hundreds of stumps and deadheads. These are from trees cut after the area was flooded. Both reservoirs lack adequate public access or boat launch sites.

There are many campgrounds and public access points throughout the river system (Table 20, Figure 15). These include federal, state, local, and private facilities.

Dams And Barriers

There are currently 63 known dams in the Manistee River watershed, regulated under authority of Michigan's Dam Safety Act, Part 305 N.R.P. Act (1994 PA 451) (Table 21, Figure 16). Thirty-six have a head of 5 ft or less; 12 have a head between 6-10 ft; 10 have a head between 11-20 ft; and five have a head greater than 20 ft. The storage capacity of most of these dams is very small; 42 dams in the 0-10 acre ft range; five in the 11-49 acre-ft range; three in the 50-99 acre ft range; and 13 dams greater than 100 acre-ft. Five dams rate a significant or high hazard classification: three are a significant hazard, and two are a high hazard (failure would cause loss of human life). The two that are ranked high are the CECo hydroelectric dams (Tippy and Hodenpyl) on the mainstem. Tippy Dam has a head of 56 ft and 39,500 acre-ft of impoundment and Hodenpyl Dam has 68 ft of head and 60,700 acre-ft of impoundment.

One dam, located in T24N, R11W, Sec. 31 (Wexford County) on Wheeler Creek, is of historic significance. The dam is named the "Guthrie Dam", but is believed to be the original site of the "Wheeler Dam". The Wheeler Dam was constructed in 1867 by John Wheeler to operate a sawmill, that cut most of the lumber used in the original settling of Wexford County. Probably it was the first dam in the watershed (Peterson 1972).

> “Dams have a variety of effects on river ecosystems. As described earlier, they influence flow patterns and channel cross-sections. They also block drift and migrations by aquatic organisms, change river temperatures, increase evaporation and reduce stream flow, disrupt sediment and woody debris transport, modify water quality and cause significant fish mortalities.” (Hay-Chmielewski et al. 1995).

The Manistee River shows all of these effects, although detailed investigations and quantification are not available for all effects. Impoundments also create a loss of river habitat and changes in fish and aquatic invertebrate populations.

> “Many fish species migrate long distances within rivers as part of their life history strategy. The effects of dams on potamodromous fish are an obvious negative effect. However, resident species may also need to migrate within the river (Figure [4]). They may require spawning habitat that is very different from their normal feeding habitat.” (Hay-Chmielewski et al. 1995).

Clapp (1988), Regal (1992), and Hudson (1993) found that large brown trout travel long distances on daily feeding forays, seasonally to spawn, to obtain thermal refuge, and seek winter habitat.

> “Many aquatic organisms, especially insects, drift downstream as larvae until desirable habitats are found. After maturation, adult insects fly upstream to reproduce. Upstream and downstream migrations by fish and downstream drift by small aquatic organisms are generally blocked by dam. Downstream movement by organisms that require stream conditions to live or to navigate may be inhibited by lake-type conditions behind dams. Some of the organisms that pass downstream through dams are injured or killed in the process. This is especially true when organisms pass through hydropower turbines.” (Hay-Chmielewski et al. 1995).

Lawler, Matusky, and Skelly Engineers (1991) estimated turbine mortalities of 25,841 fish at Tippy Dam and 29,602 fish annually at Hodenpyl Dam (Table 22). These fish mortalities are significant, amounting to over 55,000 fish lost annually at the two facilities. An annual restitution value for turbine mortality of $357,065.00 was calculated using values prescribed in Part 471 of Act 451 of 1994 (Table 22). This translates to a replacement cost of $32,939.64 using American Fisheries Society 1982 values adjusted by inflation (Anonymous 1982), calculated with the turbine mortality estimates.

The effects of fragmentation of the river by dams are difficult to document without detailed aquatic community composition data before and after dam construction, and without detailed mapping of habitat and migration patterns. Lake sturgeon populations below Tippy Dam and above Hodenpyl Dam are prime examples of fragmentation. Whelan (MDNR, Fisheries Division, unpublished data) estimates the loss of potential potamodromous fish recruitment to be in the millions annually. Currently, an estimated 57,468 angler days are provided below Tippy Dam (Rakoczy and Lockwood 1988a&b), primarily for potamodromous fish. Establishment of a potamodromous fishery for steelhead (historically good before dams) and chinook would provide at least an additional 50,000 angler days annually. This would provide an economic benefit of $1.2 million to the area. These values are considered minimums, as benefits of an expanded walleye and lake sturgeon fishery are not considered.

Temperature elevation is a major effect dams have upon a watershed and probably has contributed to the demise of brook trout in many reaches. Many small dams on tributary streams all have undesirable warming effects, that are passed downstream. Summer warming can create temperatures unfavorable for coldwater species, both adults and young. Tippy and Hodenpyl dams elevate summer temperatures between 8-12°F (MDNR, Fisheries Division, unpublished data); this has dramatic effects on coldwater species. These top draw dams constantly spill the warmest water. This can be fatal during the summer, as river water temperatures do not follow the normal diurnal pattern of cooling at night (MDNR, Fisheries Division, unpublished data). This can force young-of-the-year steelhead to leave the river as pre-smolts, whereas they usually spend two years in the river before smolting (P. Seelbach, 1987, 1991). Tippy Dam backwater stratifies thermally during the warmest summer months, with fifteen ft of 48-50°F water below the thermocline (MDNR, Fisheries Division, unpublished data). Spilling this cold water into the tailwaters may allow juvenile steelhead to remain in the river, smolt naturally, and improve stream brown trout populations.

> “Dams are a trap for sediments, woody debris, and other materials which are normally transported downstream by rivers. Stream velocities slow as a river enters the reservoir behind a dam, allowing sediment particles to settle out as velocity slows and deposited in the upper areas of the reservoir. Woody debris may continue to float but is usually blocked by the dam itself, where it will gradually become water-logged and sink [in the reservoir or removed from the trash racks by the dam operator]. These processes deprive the downstream river of sediments and woody debris (Maser and Sedell 1994). When water is discharged from the dam without its normal load of sediment, the river picks up more sediment in the downstream reach than it normally would. This increased erosion [lowers the river channel below the dam and often contributes to unusual narrowing of the river for some distance downstream and is demonstrated in the channel measurements taken below Tippy and Hodenpyl dams]….The loss of woody debris to the downstream reach reduces the amount that would otherwise be found in that part of the river. Woody debris normally creates instream flow resistance and cover, so reduced woody debris reduces the diversity of hydraulic conditions and the amount of habitat available for fish. As a result, the abundance of species such as salmonids and smallmouth bass is normally reduced below dams.” (Hay-Chmielewski et al. 1995).

All dams regardless of size and the impoundments behind them modify water quality downstream. Downstream ecosystems normally function through processing of nutrients and energy bound up in organic materials that can be filtered or captured out of the stream flow. Reservoir ecosystems tend to convert these nutrients to smaller particles and dissolved constituents. Streams are usually well mixed so that oxygen in the water is in equilibrium with the atmosphere and the oxygen-consuming life processes in the river. Water in reservoirs may be vertically stratified by temperature or suspended solid gradients, so the water below the thermocline often has much lower concentrations of oxygen than water near the surface. Dissolved oxygen and temperature in the discharge from a dam are strongly influenced by the depth from which water is drawn. Most of the dams in the Manistee River watershed are shallow, so that their main effect on water quality is warming and conversion of nutrients from particulate to dissolved form.

The two large hydroelectric dams on the mainstem are known to cause most if not all the described problems. There are, however, solutions or mitigations for these problems.

Five dams in the watershed were constructed by MDNR, Wildlife Division to create floodings for wildlife habitat. Four of these, Goose Creek Impoundment, Headquarters Lake Dam, Cannon Creek Flooding No. 1, and Cannon Creek Flooding No. 2 are sited on designated trout streams. Although they are small (4-6 ft high), they have many of the same effects as large dams, including blocking fish movement, raising water temperatures, altering nutrients, and causing overall degradation of the stream. These four dams should be removed. The fifth dam is located at the Manistee River marsh, where the Manistee River empties into Manistee Lake, and has little if any effect upon the upper watershed.

The Manton Millpond Dam, a retired hydroelectric facility and owned by the City of Manton, needs to be addressed. This dam is about holding back a fraction of its original volume and causes the same effects to Manton (Cedar) Creek, a designated trout stream. The Copemish Dam, located on First Creek (headwaters of Bear Creek) is in a similar condition. The Village of Copemish, the owner, has agreed to permit the removal of the old dam structure by the Bear Creek Watershed Council. This removal is scheduled for the summer of 1998.

Water Quality

Overall water quality in the Manistee River basin is very good, due in large part to the geology of the basin (deep permeable sands), that allows precipitation to rapidly be absorbed. This leads to groundwater flows being the dominant contributor to river flow. Limited development has served to preserve the water quality.

Twelve National Pollution Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permits exist for the basin (Table 23). Two NPDES permits are for 2 hydroelectric plants, Tippy and Hodenpyl dams, on the mainstem. One of the major concerns at these facilities is increased summer temperatures. Daily temperature extremes can occur with peaking operations, such as was documented at the Alcona facility on the Au Sable River. A rise of 20°F in minutes was recorded with the onset of the peaking (G. Whelan, MDNR, Fisheries Division) (Figure 8). This rapid rise, a violation of the NPDES permit, may also occur at Tippy Dam due to thermal stratification of the backwaters.

The Michigan Environmental Response Act, Part 201 of Act 451 of 1994, provides for identification risk assessment and evaluation of sites of environmental contamination. One hundred sites have been identified in the Manistee River Basin (Table 24). Fifty-three percent of the contaminated sites are associated with oil and gas drilling in the Niagarian Reef formation. One site is listed on EPA's national priority list (Superfund site), Packaging Corporation of America's contamination of ground water with heavy metals (chromium, arsenic, & lead) in Section 17, T21N, R16W, Manistee County, on the shores of Manistee Lake. Although no clean-up action has been taken yet, additional studies are being conducted by MDEQ, SWQD in conjunction with Environmental Protection Agency. These will be used in developing and implementing a remedial action plan. Another site, formerly Manistee Plating, located on the channel between Manistee Lake and Lake Michigan, is on EPA's emergency action list. The site is discharging high concentrations of chromium to surface waters and requires immediate action. To present, EPA has committed $400,000 to remove on site contaminants, and MDEQ has pledged up to $500,000 to clean up ground water, eliminating discharge to the river.

With good water quality in the watershed, fish populations have not been the subject of any specific fish consumption advisories, other than the general statewide advisory regarding mercury in all inland lakes. The mercury advisory applies to all inland lakes in Michigan, due to widespread mercury contamination throughout the north central United States and Canada. It states that no one should eat more than one meal a week of the following kinds and sizes of fish: rock bass, perch, or crappie over 9 inches in length; largemouth and smallmouth bass, walleye, northern pike, or musky of any size. Nursing mothers, pregnant women, women who intend to have children, and children under the age of 15 should not eat more than one meal per month of the fish species listed above. Since humans excrete mercury over time, visitors or residents who eat these fish for one to two weeks per year can safely consume several meals during that period. The Michigan Fishing Guide, published annually by MDNR, Fisheries Division contains a section on health advisories. Detailed guidelines are determined by the Michigan Department of Public Health, Division of Health Risk Assessment.

In 1967, Fisheries Division classified streams throughout Michigan based on water quality. This classification was created for fishery management. These classes are:

> Top quality trout mainstream–contain good self-sustaining trout or salmon populations and are readily fishable, typically over 15 ft wide;
>
> Top quality trout feeder stream.–contain good self-sustaining trout or salmon populations, but difficult to fish due to small size, typically less than 15 ft wide;
>
> Second quality trout mainstream–contain good self-sustaining trout or salmon populations, but these populations are appreciably limited by such factors as inadequate natural reproduction, competition, siltation, or pollution; readily fishable, typically 15 ft wide;
>
> Top Quality warm water mainstream–contain good self-sustaining populations of warmwater game fish and are readily fishable, typically over 15 ft wide;
>
> Top quality warm water feeder stream–contain good self-sustaining populations of warmwater game fish, but are difficult to fish because of small size, typically less than 15 ft wide;
>
> Second quality warm water mainstream–contain significant populations of warmwater fish, but game fish populations are appreciably limited by such factors as pollution, competition, or inadequate natural reproduction; readily fishable, typically over 15 ft wide;
>
> Second quality warm water feeder stream–contain significant populations of warmwater fish, but game fish populations are appreciably limited by factors as pollution, competition, inadequate natural reproduction; difficult to fish because of small size, typically less than 15 ft wide.

Almost all the waters of the Manistee watershed are classed as trout streams, with only a handful of areas being warmwater (Figure 5). These warmwater areas are: Walton Junction Outlet, Sickle Creek, Rose Lake Outlet, Dutchman Creek (part), Boswell Creek (part), Fife Lake Outlet (part), the bayous and associated creeks below Tippy Dam, and the backwater of Tippy and Hodenpyl dams. Although these classifications were made in 1968, most are still valid.

Fishery Management

The first step in management of fisheries of the Manistee River is to identify the key values of the system. The key value of the Manistee river is its cold water river habitat. This is what long-term management goals should be based on, a free-flowing, cold water system. Long term goals are model in nature, addressing the fullest potential of a river system. Long term goals are based on biological communities that are naturally produced, self-sustaining and require minor management activities apart from habitat protection and preservation from over harvest.

Short-term management goals address the present altered status of the river system. For this reason, short term goals are not always consistent with long term goals that establish free-flowing, cold water river habitat. An example is the present practice of managing warm water predators in impoundments to create angling opportunities where few exist. This management is not consistent with cold water salmonid management.

The Manistee River and its tributaries have had a long standing reputation of being top-quality trout waters, but this reputation has fallen. Twelve to 15 pound brown trout are no longer prevalent. Historically, the Manistee River was heavily stocked with brook, brown, and rainbow trout throughout the 1940s, 1950s and early 1960s. Most trout anglers of that era fished primarily for those “put and take” hatchery trout. The Upper Manistee (above M-72) had a modest population of extremely large brown trout. It has been theorized that these fish were able to grow large, not because the Manistee River was such a rich environment, but because they cannibalized the multitude of hatchery trout that were stocked by the thousands, often several times each season (G. Schnicke, MDNR, Fisheries Division , personal communication).

The lack of large woody debris (adequate cover) was a major problem identified back in the 1940s. Work was done to replace instream cover through habitat restoration projects on the upper mainstem, North Branch of the Manistee River, Bear Creek, Pine River, and Slagle Creek, to name a few. These projects placed hundreds of wing diverters, log and sod covers, submerged logs, and stumps. These efforts continued through the 1970s, after which were discontinued.

Sand bedload continues as a major problem in the watershed. Lost reproduction, lost habitat, and a degraded environment all lead to low trout populations and poor fishing. One area, upstream of Deward, has recovered from effects of turn of the century logging and now has good natural reproduction of salmonids. Fisheries Division is working to restore the “structure and function” of the mainstem, Pine River, and Bear Creek. This is best accomplished by stabilizing eroding sand banks, inventorying and remediating road and stream crossings, using sediment basins (sand traps), and enhancing trout cover, both natural (large woody debris) and artificial (LUNKERS). Ongoing habitat rehabilitation on these three streams should increase natural recruitment and growth of salmonids. Long-term, habitat rehabilitation is more economical than annual stockings of hatchery fish.

Present fishery conditions were outlined by segment in *Present Fish Communities*. Only a small portion of the mainstem (Segment 1) has self-sustaining trout populations (D. Smith, MDNR, Fisheries

Division, personal communication). All tributaries have naturally produced populations and probably contribute recruitment to the mainstem. Habitat rehabilitation and sediment basin placement should also be considered on tributaries where necessary. There are ongoing habitat rehabilitation projects on the upper and lower Manistee River, Bear Creek, and Pine River which, in conjunction with 15 sediment basins, will reduce the stream bedload. Reduction and removal of these sediments will reduce redhorse and sucker species and chestnut lamprey populations.

Impairments to the fishery include the presence of small impoundments in trout streams, excessive stream bank erosion, excessive stream bed sedimentation, removal of large woody debris, beaver dams, and improper road stream crossings. Management activities such as stream-bank erosion inventories and rehabilitation, dam removal, sediment trap construction and maintenance, and enforcement of green belt zoning regulations are being implemented to address these effects. An inventory of all the road and stream crossings in the Manistee River watershed is being made by the Conservation Resource Alliance.

Channel catfish and walleye are stocked at regular intervals in the two hydroelectric impoundments and produce good to excellent fisheries. Other game fish species found in these impoundments, that are managed for warm to cool water fish communities, are northern pike, smallmouth bass, largemouth bass, yellow perch, black crappie, bluegill, pumpkinseed sunfish, and rock bass. These other species are self sustaining and provide a fishery. The impoundments also contain high populations of less desirable species such as shorthead and silver redhorse, white suckers, and common carp.

Lake Michigan chinook salmon are about experiencing problems with mortalities from bacterial kidney disease (BKD). Control of this problem through egg-take and hatchery procedures is being attempted. Elliot (unpublished data) also indicates that clinical signs of BKD are much reduced in wild chinook salmon. Recent research by Carl (1982), Zaft (1992), and Hesse (1994) on chinook salmon in Lake Michigan indicates significant natural recruitment of coho and chinook salmon from tributary streams. During the fall of 1995, chinook salmon tail sections were gathered and analyzed from the area directly below Tippy Dam downstream to the mouth of Bear Creek. The purpose was to determine an estimate of the percentage wild versus hatchery chinook (stocked chinook marked with oxytetracycline) present below Tippy Dam. The one year study indicates 80% wild, with a number estimate of 500,000 spring fingerling chinook produced annually (unpublished Fisheries Division data). In the fall of 1967, first year adult coho salmon returned to stocked streams and a total of 22,720 green adults were transferred to fifteen streams statewide. This was done to evaluate whether significant natural reproduction could be achieved. Fish were stocked above barriers (Tippy, Hodenpyl, and Stronach dams on the Manistee system) to judge the desirability of having salmon in the headwaters, as well as effects of dams, waterfalls, and impoundments on migrating salmon smolts. In summer of 1968 electrofishing surveys found coho young-of-the-year in all streams where they were transferred, documenting natural reproduction. The annual estimated natural reproduction and values are:

Chinook salmon -- 1,000,000 spring fingerlings	$90,000.00
Coho salmon -- 50,000 yearlings	$36,500.00
Steelhead -- 75,000 yearlings	$54,750.00
Brown Trout -- 50,000 yearlings	$36,500.00
Walleye -- 250,000 spring fingerlings	$5,000.00
Lake sturgeon -- Unknown	?
Lake Trout -- Unknown	?
TOTAL	$222,7550.00 +

These figures are based on an MSU estimate of chinook smolt recruitment on the Pere Marquette River of 100,000 annually (Zaft 1994; MDNR, Fisheries Divisions studies).

The Free Fish Passage Act, Part 483 of PA 451 of 1994, gives the MDNR authority to require fish passage at all dams. Elliott (Michigan State University, personal communication) also indicates that clinical signs of BKD are much reduced in wild chinook salmon. There remain unanswered questions, however, regarding brown trout-chinook salmon interactions. These questions could be answered by proposed research that may be conducted by Tom Coon at Michigan State University. Should the research prove minimal interaction, CECo should be required to construct and operate fish ladders and provide downstream passage proposed in the "Settlement Offer". Research being conducted at Hunt and Gilchrist creeks on rainbow trout-brown trout interaction will attempt to resolve this issue. Should this research show minimal interaction, then adult spawning phase steelhead should be passed. Passage of these adult fish would reduce our dependency on hatchery stocks, and return our rivers to a condition closer to what they were before European settlement. However, there are areas that should be used only for resident stream fish, notably above M-72 on the mainstem and the Pine River. Fish passage should include lake sturgeon, a native species, that uses rivers for reproduction.

The US Fish and Wildlife Service and the US Forest Service have voiced concerns over passage of Lake Michigan fish due to the contaminant load (DDE and PCB) in these fish. They claim the bald eagle population recovery has been retarded due to their eating contaminated Great Lakes fish. A status report on Michigan eagles by Best and Kubiak (1989) states:

> “Eagle populations in Michigan increased from 88 breeding pairs in 1977 to 165 pairs in 1989. Comparatively, Great Lakes populations grew from 10 to 41 breeding pairs during the same period and now comprise roughly 25 percent of the state population. Michigan has already surpassed the federal recovery goal of 140 breeding pairs”.

These numbers indicate a rapid recovery, especially with a fourfold increase by Great Lakes eagles, and exceed the federal recovery goal. Bowerman (1991) states that the literature indicates an eagle nesting success rate of 1.00 indicate a healthy eagle population. The nesting pair of eagles at Tippy Dam (Wellston nest) has reared eleven eaglets over the past six years (1989-94) for a nesting success rate of 1.83 Bowerman (1991). A nesting pair of eagles on the Pere Marquette River (Whelan Lake nest) in Mason County has reared ten eaglets over the past six years (1989-94) for a nesting success rate of 1.67 Bowerman (1991). Stalmaster and Gessamen (1984) rate food quantity as the single most important factor in eaglet production. The available literature on eagle diet composition indicates 20% of their diet is fish eating birds (gulls, terns, mergansers, and herons) (Kozie and Anderson 1991; Bowerman 1991). They also eat about 80% fish. However, the relative contaminant loading (DDE and PCB’s) is about 75 times higher in birds than in fish (Kozie 1986; Kozie and Anderson 1991; Bowerman 1991). Thus, if an eagle consumes 100 pounds of food, it gets 80 units of contaminants from eating 80 pounds of fish (80x1) and gets 1,500 units of contaminants from eating 20 pounds of birds (75x20). This results in eagles getting 5% of their contaminant loading (80/1,580) from eating fish and 95% from eating birds. Two very important points: 1) contaminant levels in Great Lakes fish are down and 2) the quantity of food an eaglet receives is the most important factor. The nesting success rate of eagles on the Pere Marquette and Manistee rivers attests to these facts and passage of Great Lakes fish beyond dams will not adversely affect eagle populations.

The following factors related to Great Lakes fish communities should be considered where fish passage, trap and transfer, or barrier removal decisions are made.

1. Decide which naturalized and native fish species could or should be passed.

2. Estimate the recruitment potential for the species. If the key management objective is to produce a sports fishery then it would be appropriate to pass fish into rivers where there is little recruitment potential. If the management objective is to increase natural reproduction of a potamodromous species then some projection of expected recruitment should be made.

3. Estimate the potential for competitive interactions with fish species already inhabiting the streams. The value of existing resident fisheries needs to be weighed against needs for additional potamodromous production or fishing opportunities.

4. Consider whether recruitment gains from fish passage will result in "over-stocking" of the Great Lakes (i.e., exceed population objectives for Great Lakes fish species). This probably will not result because increased natural recruitment will be balanced by reduced plantings of hatchery fish, particularly salmonids, recognizing geographical distribution of the fishery.

5. Recognize that naturally reproduced stocks (both native and naturalized species) are frequently adapted to local conditions and hence tend to survive and reproduce better than hatchery stocks. Where feasible this genetic diversity should be protected by promotion of natural reproduction.

Once the biological decisions of fish passage have been addressed, the social issue needs to be approached. The primary social issue is riparian ownership, as potamodromous fish are probably to attract more anglers. This, in turn creates trespass, litter, and other illegal activities. The following items need consideration when evaluating the potential for riparian conflicts:

1. The species and number of fish passed:
2. The size of the stream (larger rivers can handle more anglers with less effect):
3. Availability of public access (number of access points, parking space availability, longitudinal spacing of access sites along a stream, and amount of public land or available easements):
4. Transportation systems (both motorized and pedestrian):
5. Enforcement capabilities. Any increased enforcement needed to control trespass, litter, and other illegal activity is a cost associated with fish passage.

Since habitat is the critical factor in fisheries management, a summary of important habitat features and related problems by segment is included.

Segment 1 - Headwaters to M-72 Bridge
Habitat has been largely rehabilitated and stream morphology has returned to a more natural state. Trout population estimates agree with this and numbers continue to rise.

Segment 2 - M-72 Bridge to Smithville
Habitat is severely degraded by heavy sediment load. Bank stabilization is ongoing. Lack of large woody debris is apparent. The fishery is sustained through stocking, although abundant young-of-the-year brook trout are being found.

Segment 3 - Smithville to M-115 Bridge
The river has a heavy sediment load, many eroding banks, and lacks large woody debris. Warmwater to coolwater species predominate, with an abundant chestnut lamprey population.

Segment 4 - Hodenpyl Dam to Red Bridge
The two hydroelectric impoundments have eliminated the two highest gradient areas of the river system, limiting production. The impoundments are managed for warmwater to coolwater species. The river section between the two dams is also high gradient, but has a sediment problem and lacks large woody debris due to past peaking operations.

Segment 6 - North Branch Manistee River
The upper reach is affected by beaver dams, but is fairly productive for brook trout. The lower third has a sand bedload problem and could use more woody debris. Chestnut lamprey abound in the lower reaches.

Segment 7 -Bear Creek
The lower two thirds has a sediment problem and lacks adequate woody debris. Agricultural land use contributes to the sand bedload, elevates summer water temperature, and makes flows flashy. Potamodromous fish predominate.

Segment 8 - Pine River
This segment has excessive sedimentation from severely eroding sand banks. Some reaches have a lack of large woody debris. Stronach Dam, an abandoned hydroelectric facility, covers the highest gradient water. Many poor road and stream crossings exist. The non-migratory rainbow trout population has to be protected and enhanced, as they are a unique non-migratory population.

Tributaries
Many tributaries have a high sediment bedload, however, they support fair to good trout populations and fisheries. They provide much of the recruitment of brook and brown trout for the mainstem. Other impairments to these fisheries are blockages due to improperly designed road crossings (perched culverts), human-made dams, and beaver dams.

Citizen Involvement

Citizen involvement with management of the Manistee River comes from government agencies including: Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Michigan Department of Military Affairs, US Forest Service, US Fish and Wildlife Service, USDA - Natural Resource Conservation Service, Conservation Resource Alliance, Huron Pines Resource Conservation & Development Council, various county road commissions, county drain commissioners, and township and county offices.

Non-governmental organizations that Fisheries Division has contact with, who have an interest in and actively work on aspects of the Manistee River watershed, include: Michigan Council of Trout Unlimited, Pine River Area Chapter of Trout Unlimited, George Mason Chapter of Trout Unlimited, Michigan Steelheaders, Michigan River Guides Association, Upper Manistee River Association, Manistee River Association, Pine River Association, Bear Creek Watershed Council, Manistee County Sportfishing Association, Michigan Chapter of Fly Fishing Federation, Mackinaw Trail Fly Fishers, Pine River Canoe Livery Association, Black Creek Hunt Club, Ne-Bo-Shone Association, Wer-Hee-Gen Association, and Michigan Hydropower Coalition.

MANAGEMENT ISSUES AND OPTIONS

Agency River Management Scoping Meeting

At the beginning of this assessment, a two day meeting to discuss management issues with various management agencies was held. Those involved included Michigan Department of Environmental Quality--Land and Water Management and Surface Water Quality divisions, Michigan Department of Natural Resources--Fisheries, Forest Management, and Wildlife divisions, US Forest Service, US Fish and Wildlife Service, and the US Geologic Survey. Many issues were identified that were problems and opportunities:

Dams, hydroelectric and others	Land management
flows, run-of-river versus peaking water temperature fish passage, up and downstream erosion/sedimentation turbine entrainment and mortality fragmentation (habitat and genetic)	old growth/biodiversity in flood plain best management practices hiking/horse trails recreational use (user conflicts)/integrated recreational planning riparian development deer yard management wetland habitat loss
Water quality	**Nonpoint source pollution**
point source discharges contaminated groundwater wetland loss municipal sewer/storm outfalls temperature	road crossings, pipelines, ORV trails bridges and culverts sediments and nutrients from agricultural lands
Fish and habitat	**Management issues**
insufficient recruitment/costly stocking programs sea lamprey regulations large woody debris stream bedload	sea lamprey and chestnut lamprey rough fish (carp, redhorse, etc.) rusty crayfish and zebra mussel beaver purple loosestrife and Eurasian milfoil gypsy moth, forest tent caterpillar, and budworm (spruce & jack pine) threatened and endangered species eagles and potamodromous fish fur bearers and fish

The two major issues identified by the dozen people in attendance were: erosion control & sedimentation under dams (9 votes) and nonpoint source pollution and hydroelectric dams (8 votes). These concerns were mentioned by practically all in attendance. The balance of the items identified had 1, 2, or 3 votes.

Issues and Options

Although the Manistee River is a high quality resource, there are a number of fishery related problems that need addressing to rehabilitate the system. The management options in this document are an attempt to address the most important issues and to set priorities for future actions and investigations.

The identified options are consistent with the mission statement of the Fisheries Division, MDNR. This mission is to protect and enhance the public trust in populations and habitat of fishes and other forms of aquatic life, and promote optimum use of these resources for benefit of the people of Michigan. In particular, the division seeks to: protect and maintain healthy aquatic environments and fish communities and rehabilitate those now degraded; provide diverse public fishing opportunities to maximize the value to anglers; and foster and contribute to public and scientific understanding of fish, fishing, and fishery management.

Options convey four approaches to correcting problems in the watershed. First, we present options to protect and preserve existing resources. Second are options requiring additional surveys. Third are opportunities for the rehabilitation of degraded resources. Opportunities to improve an area or resources, above and beyond the original condition are listed last.

Further, the following options follow the recommendations of Dewberry (1992), who outlines measures necessary to protect the health of the nation’s public river ecosystems. Dewberry stresses the protection and rehabilitation of headwater streams, riparian areas, and flood plains. Streams and flood plains need to be reconnected where possible, with restrictions on the construction of seawalls and bulkheads, and the restoration of large woody debris. We must view the river system as a whole, for it is the entire system that must be managed, not fragmented pieces.

Biological Communities

The Manistee River system originally supported a large population of Michigan grayling, that through habitat destruction, over harvest, and introduction of exotic species (competition) was extirpated. Introduction of other salmonids has occurred and filled this niche. Other fish stocks, especially native potamodromous species, have suffered severe declines: walleye, Great Lakes muskellunge, lake sturgeon, lake trout, lake herring, round whitefish, and lake whitefish. Changes occurred due primarily to loss of high gradient habitat when hydroelectric dams were constructed. Loss of stream habitat was due to erosion and sedimentation of the streambed from logging, poor land use, road crossings, and “peaking” at hydroelectric facilities. Declines in populations were also affected by changes in Lake Michigan and Manistee Lake.

Present fish community information is not adequate to show distribution or scientifically manage the fishery, particularly in Segments 3 and 4. Some plant and animal species are threatened or endangered from changes to or loss of habitat.

Option: Rehabilitate historic spawning runs of potamodromous species above Tippy and Hodenpyl Dams by removing barriers or providing fish passage, both upstream and downstream.

Option: Survey current fish community, aquatic invertebrate, reptile, amphibian, and mussel distributions.

Option: Survey the pre-settlement flora and fauna in the watershed through historical records.

Option: Preserve remaining high gradient areas.

Option: Rehabilitate graveled habitats through bank stabilization, sediment basin construction, and remediate road and stream crossings.

Option: Preserve and protect wetlands within the floodplain of the river system, with no mitigation that would increase the fragmentation of the floodplain.

Option: Protect river corridors through green belt provisions and low density development through zoning or purchase of key riparian parcels or development rights.

Option: Rehabilitate fragmented segments of the river system by removal of dams and barriers.

Option: Protect endemic and naturalized species by controlling the several plant and animal pest species present that negatively affect the aquatic system. species include: sea lamprey, chestnut lamprey, rusty crayfish, zebra mussels, purple loosestrife, Eurasian milfoil, gypsy moth, mute swans, and beaver.

Geology and Hydrology

The Manistee River has very stable flows, ranking among the best in the country. Some segments have less stable flows, both high and low. East Branch of the Pine River, Pine River mainstem, and Bear Creek exhibit the least stable flows due primarily to finer till soils, geology, agricultural land use, and designated drains.

Option: Protect wetlands, floodplains and sandy uplands that act as water retention areas for ground water recharge from adverse activities.

Option: Survey historic records to determine pre-settlement flows.

Option: Rehabilitate stream corridors in agricultural areas by working with county agricultural agents to implement best management practices.

Option: Improve management of water in designated drains by working with county drain commissioners on existing management.

Option: Improve management of water in designated drains by working to change the current drain code.

Option: Rehabilitate the stream flows from Lake Margrethe by removing the lake-level control structure or changing to a fixed-crest structure.

Channel Morphology

The channel of the Manistee River has been altered. Many high gradient areas have been impounded. Turn of the century logging, land use practices, road and stream crossings, and peaking operations at dams have resulted in an aggraded and degraded streambed in both the mainstem and tributaries.

Option: Restore high gradient areas by removing hydroelectric (Tippy and Hodenpyl) and other dams, especially those no longer being used or serving little purpose (Manton Millpond, Copemish, and Goose Creek dams).

Option: Restore recruitment of large woody debris through greenbelt zoning.

Option: Survey road and stream crossings to determine ongoing sources of sediment.

Option: Survey historic records to determine pre-settlement channel form.

Option: Protect existing instream large woody debris.

Option: Rehabilitate stream channels by stabilizing all major and moderately eroding streambanks.

Land Use Patterns

Recreational, agricultural, and urban developments are low to moderate in the watershed. However, soils are predominantly sandy and very susceptible to erosion. Erosion from uplands, drainage systems, and irrigation is low to moderate.

Option: Protect riparian uplands through land-use planning and zoning that emphasize protection of critical areas.

Option: Improve stormwater management throughout the watershed..

Option: Protect lands and therefore streams by encouraging private land owners to enroll properties in programs that provide tax credits or direct payments for preserving lands in their natural state, such as the Conservation Resource Program or The Farmland and Open Space Program.

Option: Protect the river by using USDA Natural Resource Conservation practices to reduce erosion.

Option: Protect critical areas by identifying and purchasing key parcels or their development rights.

Special Jurisdictions

The State of Michigan, US Forest Service, and Consumers Energy Company own the majority of the riparian lands. The Federal Energy Regulatory Commission has authority over hydroelectric dams and project lands. The entire Manistee River system is a candidate for designation as a State Natural River, and portions of the mainstem, Bear Creek, and Pine River are designated as a Federal Scenic River.

Option: Improve land and water management activities by establishing a basin wide watershed council that will provide good stewardship and leadership.

Option: Improve ecosystem management of the watershed by recommending all governmental agencies incorporate river protection measures in their land and water management plans.

Recreational Use

Outdoor recreational activities are ubiquitous in the watershed, especially on public lands. Fishing, particularly for potamodromous species, is limited by hydroelectric dams. Impoundments also limit boating recreation and offer limited public access. There are areas that are affected by overuse and misuse by canoeists.

Option: Rehabilitate the Manistee River mainstem by removing Tippy and Hodenpyl dams.

Option: Rehabilitate the Manistee River mainstem by establishing fish passage at Tippy and Hodenpyl dams, both upstream and downstream.

Option: Improve public access to Tippy and Hodenpyl backwaters by enforcing the Settlement Agreement with Consumers Energy Company to provide adequate public access to these impoundments.

Option: Improve public access by buying and developing public access sites where needed.

Option: Improve existing access sites and make them in compliance with the American Disabilities Act.

Option: Improve the recreational experience by limiting the number of canoe launches on the Pine River during peak times.

Option: Improve the recreational experience by banning possession of alcohol in water craft on the Pine River.

Dams and Barriers

Five of the 63 dams on the Manistee River system are hydroelectric facilities, with three of these being retired (Manton Millpond, Manton Upper Power, Stronach dams). Tippy and Hodenpyl dams are active. Five others are wildlife floodings, with four located on cold water tributaries. The balance are on tributaries and used for fish rearing, swimming holes, or waterfowl. All are harmful to the river ecosystem as they fragment resident fish habitat, reduce aquatic invertebrate habitat, impound high gradient habitat, trap woody debris, nutrients, and sediments, warm the water, create flow variations, kill fish, and block potamodromous fish migrations. Tippy Dam does have a positive effect by blocking migration of adult-spawning-phase sea lamprey.

Option: Rehabilitate the river by removing retired hydroelectric dams (Manton Millpond and Manton Upper Power dams) and dams serving little purpose especially Horseshoe Lake and Ash dams.

Option: Rehabilitate the mainstem by removing four wildlife floodings, Big Cannon Creek (two), Goose Creek and Fife Lake outlet.

Option: Protect the future of the river by requiring owners of dams to escrow funds for future removal.

Option: Rehabilitate the fish community by installing fish passage for designated species, both upstream and downstream.

Option: Rehabilitate the fish community by initiating a trap and transfer of desirable potamodromous species at Tippy and Hodenpyl dams, and create downstream fish passage.

Option: Improve salmonid habitat and reproduction by installing a device to draw cold water off the bottom of Tippy Dam backwaters during June, July, and August.

Option: Improve aquatic invertebrate populations by trapping and transferring aquatic invertebrates from above to below hydroelectric dams.

Option: Rehabilitate the fish community by installing devices to screen turbine intakes at operating hydroelectric facilities.

Option: Improve the recreational experience by requiring fish passage at all dams.

Option: Survey culvert crossing to determine if they are barrier to fish passage and correct those that are fragmenting the system..

Water Quality

The overall water quality in the Manistee River basin is very good due to the geology (deep permeable sands) and limited development. Much of the river system has an excessive sand bedload and there are temperature problems below Tippy Dam. Groundwater contamination occurs sporadically. Mercury contamination in inland lakes is widespread.

Option: Rehabilitate the river by controlling non-point source sediments.

Option: Rehabilitating stream temperatures by drawing cold water from below the thermocline in Tippy Dam backwaters particularly during June, July, and August.

Option: Rehabilitate groundwater by cleaning up identified groundwater contamination sites.

Option: Improve enforcement of air quality standards, particularly concerning mercury emissions.

Option: Rehabilitate and improve water quality by establishing riparian greenbelts to reduce sediments and provide cooling overhead cover.

Fishery Management

The fishery is generally good. One of the seasonally excellent areas is below Tippy Dam. Sediment is affecting fish populations in much of the watershed. Many human made and beaver dams are affecting water quality and fish production. The two hydroelectric dams impound high gradient river areas and block potamodromous species; fishing is fair to good in these impoundments.

Option: Rehabilitate the aquatic habitat by stabilizing all severe and moderately eroding sand banks.

Option: Survey all road and stream crossings and work with county road commissions to correct problems.

Option: Rehabilitate the aquatic habitat by constructing and maintaining sediment basins.

Option: Survey and evaluate steelhead and chinook salmon reproduction below Tippy Dam.

Option: Survey existing lake sturgeon population in Hodenpyl Dam backwaters.

Option: Rehabilitate fish communities by providing fish passage at the two hydroelectric dams on the mainstem, both upstream and downstream.

Option: Rehabilitate the fish community by installing devices to screen turbine intakes at operating hydroelectric facilities.

Option: Improve brook trout populations in the North Branch of the Manistee River by removing sediment in the stream.

Option: Survey angler use throughout the watershed.

Option: Survey habitat in Tippy and Hodenpyl dam backwaters.

Option: Rehabilitate fish communities and habitat by removing retired hydroelectric dams (Manton Millpond and Upper Power).

Option: Rehabilitate fish communities and habitat by removing four wildlife floodings on trout streams (Cannon Creek (2), Goose Creek, and Fife Lake Outlet).

Option: Improve impoundment fisheries for warmwater and coolwater species until dams are removed.

Option: Survey tributaries for problem beaver areas and implement removal.

Option: Improve natural salmonid recruitment below Tippy Dam by spilling cold water from below thermocline during June, July, and August.

Option: Improve the fish community balance by chemically treating portions of the mainstem for chestnut lamprey.

Option: Survey lower mainstem (below Tippy Dam) for muskellunge and reintroduce if not found.

Option: Survey intensively, fish species distributions (rotenone and electrofishing surveys), particularly the mainstem below Sharon.

Option: Rehabilitate aquatic habitats by working with owners of private dams to remove them.

Option: Survey fish habitat, modify, and increase where necessary.

Option: Survey the unique fish community existing in the Pine River and determine the effects of Great Lakes fish on this community.

Option: Survey the fish community existing in the mainstem above M-72 and determine the effects of Great Lakes fish on this community.

Citizen Involvement

Many recreational interest groups exist that are concerned with fisheries management. The watershed encompasses many local units of government (counties, townships, villages, cities), that affect land use through zoning.

Option: Protect citizen involvement by creating a basin wide watershed council to oversee watershed planning and management.

Option: Improve and educate river users and property owners about sound watershed management.

Option: Protect the resource by continuing to work with local units of government on common stewardship issues.

PUBLIC COMMENT AND RESPONSE

Comments were received on the draft of this assessment from July 1996 through November 1996. Three public meetings were held requesting comments on the draft document. The meetings and locations were: September 4, 1996, at the Grayling High School Auditorium in Grayling; September 5, 1996, at the Carl T. Johnson Hunting and Fishing Center in Cadillac; and September 6, 1996, at the Wellston Elementary School in Wellston.

Copies of the draft assessment were placed in nine libraries in Cadillac, Fife Lake, Grayling, Kalkaska, Lake City, Manistee, Manton, Mesick, and Wellston. These draft assessments were kept in the reference section of the library so they would always be available. Copies for distribution were available at the Cadillac District and Lansing Fisheries Division offices. Copies were mailed to any person or group requesting one. Also, the Natural Rivers Unit of Forest Management Division, bought and distributed 150 copies to four study groups on the Manistee River watershed looking at future state natural river designation.

A statewide news release was issued by the Department of Natural Resources Press Office on August 22, 1996, regarding the date, time, and location of the public meetings. The notice stated copies were available at the Cadillac District Office and named local libraries. Some local newspapers also ran the public notice.

The series of three public meetings were very poorly attended, with a total of fourteen attendees. Several parties attended all three meetings. Likewise, the written comments were limited, with 34 letters received. A breakdown of the written comments reveals thirty dealt with fish passage and potamodromous species in the Pine River and Upper Manistee. The split was even, fifteen commenting only on the Pine River and the rest the Upper Manistee and Pine River. Fish passage appears to be the overwhelming issue of concern to most citizens. Only two letters addressed basin wide issues.

Introduction

Comment: Most respondents were complimentary of the watershed assessment and the process.

Response: All the supporting comments were greatly appreciated and acknowledged.

Comment: “The Department’s Fisheries Division has produced an Assessment that provides substantial information about the existing fisheries conditions on the Manistee River, particularly as they relate to cold water fisheries management. However, this Assessment falls well short of the goals for an overall river management assessment, even as a preliminary document.

“In summary, Consumers views this draft Assessment as containing valuable information regarding the historical development and current condition of the Manistee River. It does not, however, provide adequate analysis of the impacts and issues associated with the management options presented. We believe such analysis is absolutely essential to meet the objectives that the Department itself outlined for the Assessment. We do not believe that this Assessment should stand as a basis for completing a final Comprehensive River Management Plan. The Department agreed to develop a Comprehensive River Management Plan for the Manistee as well as the Au Sable and Muskegon Rivers as part of the Offer of Settlement that was filed with FERC in the relicensing of 11 of Consumers’ hydroelectric projects, including the two Manistee River projects. Reference can be made to the Offer of Settlement at paragraph 9.1 and the Offer of Settlement Explanatory and Support Statement at paragraph 9.1 (copies of which are provided as Attachment C to this letter).

"We recommend that the Department revise the draft Assessment to address the issues we have outlined in this letter and the attached detailed comments and issue a revised Assessment to a much wider public audience. After obtaining public comment on the revised Assessment, the Department would be better able to develop a management plan on which the Michigan Natural Resources Commission could receive public input and take appropriate action."

Response: All the issues outlined by Consumers Power Company are addressed in the Public Comment section. The bulk of comments received from Consumers Power Company were not requesting additional information, but statements of disagreement regarding effects of hydroelectric dams that are outlined in the assessment. Public comments were received on the Assessment and changes were made as needed. The assessment and planning process will continue and additional comment can be submitted to the Department at anytime. A comprehensive management plan will be developed based on this assessment and public comment.

Comment: "The appearance that the Fisheries Division did not obtain appropriate input from the US Fish & Wildlife Service, US Forest Service or even MDNR Divisions other than Fisheries. For example, we are aware that these agencies/divisions participated in scooping meetings in 1991 to assist the Department's Fisheries Division in developing the issues that it raised are not discussed in the Assessment. Based upon a recent meeting, we now understand the Fisheries Division will obtain this important input from other agencies and MDNR divisions."

Response: The consultation meetings were discussed in Agency River Management Scoping Meeting section. As discussed, issues mentioned at these meetings were included in the assessment. This section has been moved from the Management Option section to the Introduction section. Agencies participating in the consultation meetings also provided written comment. None of the agencies involved in the consultation process indicated any of the issues discussed in the consultation meetings were left out of the assessment.

Watershed Assessment

Comment: All of the available historic data were not included in the assessment.

Response: To include "all" of the data available would have made this assessment too voluminous. Relevant data to the topics addressed were used and new relevant data will be added to future revisions.

Geography

No comments were received on this section.

History

Comment: This history of Stronach Dam as reported is inaccurate.

Response: The history of Stronach Dam has been corrected and expanded.

Biological Communities

Comment: "The development of balanced management objectives for both resident fish, including warm water and cool water impoundment species and anadromous species is not included. Currently the Assessment is heavily biased in favor of cold water fish."

Response: The management objectives are based on the key values of the system. Clearly the key value of the Manistee River is its cold water river habitat. Long term management goals are based on a free-flowing, cold water system.

Comment: Wood turtles nest on sandy stream banks, which are systematically being stabilized and revegetated by rehabilitation committees on the Pine River, Bear Creek, and Upper Manistee. Are these programs negatively impacting wood turtle populations?

Response: The wood turtle, a state species of special concern does use sandy banks for nesting and we recognize that need. They are considered in the ongoing bank rehabilitation projects. Recent research indicates the two main causes of decline and limited recruitment are predation of adults and nests by raccoons, and collection by recreational canoeists.

Comment: Allowing steelhead and salmon from Lake Michigan into the Upper Manistee may spread the numerous exotics found there into the fragile upper river.

Response: No documentation of the spread of these exotics in "open" system like the Pere Marquette River by Great Lakes fish exists. Rather they are spread by humans.

Geology and Hydrology

No comments were received on this section.

Channel Morphology

No comments were received on this section.

Soil and Land Use Patterns

No comments were received on this section.

Special Jurisdictions

No comments were received on this section.

Recreational Use

Comment: In addition to the current user conflicts, increasing angler pressure by passing Great Lakes salmonids will elevate the problem.

Response: The mission of Fisheries Division is to protect and enhance the public trust in populations and habitat of fishes and other forms of aquatic life, and promote optimum use of these resources for the benefit of the people of Michigan. This is largely a social issue that will be addressed in evaluating fish passage.

Comment: The Pine Rivers canoe use and behavior must be addressed.

Response: The Department is working with the US Forest Service and landowners to resolve these user conflicts. More enforcement will help reduce conflicts. Resolution of these issues are listed as management options.

Comment: The Upper Manistee is receiving increased use by commercial canoe liveries.

Response: A watershed council working with canoe liveries and property owners would help resolve conflicts. Educational programs would also be useful.

Dams and Barriers

Comment: Several comments were made opposing removal of Tippy and Hodenpyl Dams and other small dams in the watershed. A couple supported removal of specific dams on the watershed.

Response: The two hydroelectric dams, Tippy and Hodenpyl, have been relicensed for 40 years. The Offer of Settlement (Appendix 3) provides for mitigation of some of the environmental effects of these two dams during the license term. Dam removal at other locations will be dealt with on an individual basis. One dam, Stronach Dam, is in the process of being removed.

Comment: Can Tippy and Hodenpyl dams be converted to bottom draw facilities?

Response: No, but they can be retrofitted to draw cold water from the bottom of the reservoirs. Installing this technology on Hodenpyl Dam would do little for temperatures, as the backwaters do not stratify thermally. Tippy Dam, conversely, does stratify, with a layer of cold water being present on the bottom. Studies are being conducted to determine if the addition of cold water below Tippy will affect salmonid recruitment.

Water Quality

No comments were received on this section.

Fishery Management

Comment: The majority of the comments made opposed fish passage at the two hydroelectric dams.

Response: Potential benefits of fish passage include rehabilitation of native and naturalized potamodromous fish runs, improved sport fishing, and improved natural reproduction. Concerns are possible user conflicts and affects of expanding the range of Lake Michigan fish on interacting wildlife species. Guidelines for evaluating fish passage are being developed by the Department. The protocol for implementing passage at the two facilities is outlined in the Offer of Settlement (Appendix 3).

Comment: A thorough assessment of the impacts and benefits of implementing fish passage is needed, including the species and approximate numbers to be passed, interactions between species, and potential user-group conflicts.

Response: Guidelines for evaluating fish passage are being developed by the Department.

Comment: Contaminants are a concern with fish passage.

Response: This issue will be considered in evaluating fish passage.

Comment: Installation of fish ladders at hydroelectric dams will allow sea lamprey upstream, necessitating expensive treatments every four years.

Response: Expanding the sea lamprey runs is not a scenario the Department would consider. Fish ladders can be constructed to preclude lamprey. For dam removal, there are alternative control measures to expensive TFM treatments.

Comment: A portion of the Pine River should be designated as a quality fishing area.

Response: The Department is at the maximum number of miles of quality water that can be designated under law. We are recodifying the Aquatic species Conservation Act that would allow expansion of this designation.

Comment: Allowing Lake Michigan salmonids into the upper Manistee and Pine River will spread BKD into resident stream trout populations.

Response: There is no evidence of any effect of BKD on resident populations. There are many open systems that have thriving stream trout populations.

Comment: Passage of Lake Michigan salmonids will have negative impacts on the resident brook, brown, and rainbow trout populations in the upper Manistee and Pine Rivers.

Response: The Department believes there are minimal interactions between chinook, both spawning phase and juveniles, on resident stream trout. We believe there may be interactions between spawning phase steelhead and resident stream brown trout, based on a New Zealand study that indicated interactions between spawning rainbow trout and brown trout. An ongoing study at Hunt Creek will answer this question.

Comment: The removal of Stronach Dam on the Pine River will allow an invasion of cool water and rough fish to adversely impact the resident trout populations.

Response: The Department feels strongly this will not occur, as the Pine River is not suitable habitat, being too cold and high gradient. An ongoing MSU study, before and after dam removal will look at effects and make recommendations.

Comment: "The section on Bald Eagle, Mink, River otter and Potamodromous fish underestimates the impact of introducing Great Lakes contaminants via upstream fish passage to upstream ecosystems. The Department's own research (Merna, J.W. 1986, Contamination of stream fishes with chlorinated hydrocarbons from eggs of Great Lakes salmon Trans. Am. Fish Soc. 115:64-74) documents the contamination of nonmigratory salmonids through ingestion of salmon eggs in anadromous accessible segments of the Muskegon and Manistee rivers. The contamination of the upstream ecosystems is not even considered in this assessment. One wonders just what happens to the contaminants in dying salmon and their eggs, or in the eggs of species that return to the Great Lakes. The USFWS recognizes the threat to both ecosystems and piscivorous species (e.g. Kubiak, T J and D A Best, 1991, 'Wildlife Risks Associated with Passage of contaminated Fish at Federal Energy Regulatory Commission Licensed Dams in Michigan' unpublished report. US Fish and Wildlife Service, East Lansing Field Office. The USFWS has indicated that it will not exercise its authority to require upstream fish passage until such time as the fish contaminant levels no longer post a threat to upstream wildlife and ecosystems. The Department should refer to the contaminant section in Exhibit E of CPCo's licensing application, the Biological Assessment for Bald Eagles that accompanies the FERC licenses, and in the peer-reviewed literature, Giesy et al (1994a, 1994b, 1995) for an appropriate perspective.

"This section ignores the long-standing anadromous fish contaminant problem associated with low bald eagle productivity on the Manistee River. This perspective can be obtained from the Department's own Wildlife Division records.

"Eagles use the fish resource on the Manistee River throughout the year and add to their contaminant burden as they do so. Whether or not the passage of chinooks or browns overlaps the nesting season is somewhat irrelevant. They still are a significant contaminant source available to both adults and fledglings. The depuration rate for contaminants such as PCB is slow; contaminants ingested in the non-nesting season are stored in fat and are mobilized during egg laying. Consumers' data demonstrate a high level of winter use on the Muskegon by immature eagles that would be affected by this process."

Response: The Assessment addresses the issue of contaminants as one of the many considerations in fish passage. The Department has reviewed the literature on eagles presented in Consumers Energy Company's pre-license studies and has many concerns with the conclusions of these reports. There is important information not considered in the pre-license studies. Available information indicates fish passage is a viable management option.

Data interpretation regarding effects of contaminants on eagles and other animal populations is a controversial area. In Consumers Energy Company's pre-license reports, one type of analysis is used. The Department does not agree with this data interpretation. There is no indication fish or populations of other aquatic organisms are impaired by contaminants in river reaches open to Great Lakes fish migrations, when compared to inland river reaches. Contaminants and Great Lakes fish are only one of many issues that must be considered in fish passage.

Comment: A barrier should be placed in the Pine River after Stronach Dam is removed to prevent cool water and rough fish from moving upstream.

Response: An ongoing study being conducted by MSU researchers will determine the necessity of such a structure.

Comment: The removal and addition of large wood, debris (LWD) has to be addressed.

Response: The cutting LWD by canoe liveries on the Pine River is being regulated through a cooperative effort of the Pine River Canoe Association and the US Forest Service. The addition of LWD in the Upper Manistee is listed as a management option.

Comment: Sand bedload is a major problem in our trout streams.

Response: There are ongoing stream rehabilitation projects in the Pine River, Bear Creek, and Upper and Lower (below Tippy) Manistee River. Those committees are also working on remediating poor road and stream crossings. The Michigan Department of Natural Resources and US Forest Service have sited many sediment basins (sand traps) throughout the watershed. These projects will continue and expand in the future.

Fisheries

Comment: We support a regulation change to increase the minimum size limit to 16 inches and reduce the daily limit to three fish from Tippy Dam to Lake Michigan.

Response: Great! This regulation change is one proposed in the new cold-water fishing rules being put together by a joint public-Fisheries Division committee and is endorsed by the Department. The proposed regulation would be that in certain stream sections where potamodromous fish runs occur, the season would be open year round for all salmonids, with a bag limit of 3 fish in any combination, and a minimum size of 16 inches.

Comment: Why are channel catfish stocked in Tippy and Hodenpyl Dams?

Response: To create a recreational fishery and provide a predator to control panfish populations. They typically do well in reservoirs.

Citizen Involvement

Comment: A Watershed Council should be formed to insure citizen involvement and address the issues.

Response: This is listed as a management option.

Comment: As future drafts are prepared it would be helpful and appropriate to provide further assurances that there will be opportunity for public input in the selection of alternatives.

Response: The Assessment and management plan will be updated. The public is encouraged to comment at anytime and comments will be included in future revisions. The goal the Assessment is to provide information and obtain public involvement in the planning process.

Management Options

No comments were received on this section.

GLOSSARY

backwaters - the body of water created by damming a river

base flows - the groundwater discharge to the system

basin - a drainage area, both land and water, from which water flows toward a central collector such as a stream, river, or lake at a lower elevation; synonymous with watershed

biodiversity - the different number and type of biological organisms in a system

channel morphology - a study of the structure and form of stream and river channels including width, depth, and bottom type

deciduous - vegetation that sheds its foliage annually

degradation - the process by which streambeds are lowered in elevation by the removal of material.

ecosystem - a biological community considered together with the non-living factors of its environment as a unit

endangered species- a species that is in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its range

exceedence curves - the probability of any discharge exceeding a given value.

exotic species - successfully reproducing organisms transported by humans into regions where they did not previously exist

extirpation - to make extinct, remove completely

fauna - the animals of a specific region or time

fixed-crest - a dam that is fixed at an elevation and has no ability to change from that elevation

hydrology - the scientific study of the properties, distribution, and effects of water on the earth's surface, in the soil and underlying rocks, and in the atmosphere

impoundment - water of a river system that has been held up by a dam, creating an artificial lake

LUNKERS - artificial habitat structures developed in Wisconsin used in conjunction with streambank stabilization

macroinvertebrates - animals without a backbone that are visible by the human eye

moraines - a mass of rocks, gravel, sand, clay, etc. carried and deposited directly by a glacier

nonpoint source pollution - pollution to a water course that is not attributable to a single, well-defined source

panfish - a generic term used to describe any of the sunfishes, such as bluegill, pumpkinseeds, rock bass, crappies, green sunfish, warmouth, etc.

peaking mode - operational mode for a hydroelectric project that maximizes economic return by operating at maximum possible capacity during peak demand periods (generally 8 am to 8 pm) and reducing operations and discharge during non-peak periods

perched culvert - improperly placed culvert that fragments habitat by creating a significant drop between the culvert outlet and the stream surface

permeable - soils with coarse particles that allow passage of water

perturbations - disturbances

potamodromous - fish that go from fresh water lakes up fresh water rivers to spawn; migrations within fresh waters

riparian - adjacent to, or living on, the bank of a river

rotenone - a natural substance found in the roots of plants of the pea family; it is highly toxic to most gill breathing animals; it is not toxic to most air breathing animals

run habitat - fast non-turbulent water

run-of-the-river - outflow of water about equals inflow of water; this flow regime mimics the natural flow regime of a river

Shannon-Weiner information statistic - a probability statistic that measures the number of groups of information within all of the information

TFM - 3-trifluoromethyl-4-nitrophenol, a chemical used to control sea lamprey in streams connected to the Great Lakes

thermocline - a layer of water between the warmer surface zone and the colder deep-water zone in a thermally stratified body of water, in which the temperature decreases rapidly with depth

threatened species-a species “which is likely to become an endangered species within the foreseeable future throughout all or a significant portion of its range”

till - unstratified, unsorted glacial drift of clay, sand boulders, and gravel

turbidity - in water has large amounts of suspended sediments in the water column

veliger - the free-swimming larval stage of zebra mussels

watershed - a drainage area or basin, both land and water, that flow toward a central collector such as a stream, river, or lake at a lower elevation

young-of-the-year - generally refers to the young of fish species that were born this calendar year

REFERENCES

Albert, D. A., S. R. Denton, and B. V. Barnes. 1986. Regional landscape ecosystems of Michigan. School of Natural Resources, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Alexander, G. R., and H. Gowing. 1980. Population dynamics of trout in some streams of the Northern Lower Peninsula. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Research Report 1877. Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Alexander, G. R., and E .A. Hansen. 1988. Decline and recovery of a brook trout stream following an experimental addition of sand sediment. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Research Report 1943. Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Anonymous. 1875. Michigan State Board of Fish Commissioners. First Biennial Report, 1873-74, Lansing, Michigan.

Anonymous. 1982. American Fisheries Society. Monetary values of freshwater fish and fish-kill counting guidelines, Special Publication Number 13. Bethesda, Maryland.

Anonymous. 1990. Water Quality and pollution control in Michigan. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Surface Water Quality Division, Lansing, Michigan.

Anonymous. 1991. Qualitative biological and habitat survey protocols for wadable streams and rivers. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Surface Water Quality Division, Great Lakes Environmental Assessment Section, Lansing, Michigan.

Anonymous. 1993. A guide to public rights on Michigan waters. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Law Enforcement Division Report Number 9.

Bain, M. B., J. T. Finn, and H. E. Booke. 1988. Streamflow regulation and fish community structure. Ecology 69(2):382-392.

Baker, J. P. 1980. The distribution, ecology, and management of the lake sturgeon (*Acipenser fulvescens*) in Michigan. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Research Report 1883. Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Beam, J. D., and J. J. Braunscheidel. 1996. Rouge River watershed assessment - draft. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Becker, G. C. 1983. Fishes of Wisconsin. The University of Wisconsin Press. Madison, Wisconsin.

Best, D. A., and T. J. Kubiak. 1989. Organochlorine and PCB residues in addled bald eagle eggs from Great Lakes shoreline and inland nest, in Michigan and Ohio. Paper presented at 32nd Conference on Great Lakes Research, International Association for Great Lakes Research.

Booth, D. B. 1991. Urbanization and the natural drainage system-impacts, solutions, and prognoses. The Northwest Environmental Journal 7:93-118.

Bower, S. 1882. Grayling, trout, and bass. Forest and Stream 19(5): 91.

Bowerman, W. W. 1991. Factors influencing breeding success of bald eagles in upper Michigan. Master's Thesis. Northern Michigan University, Marquette, Michigan.

Buech, R. R., L. G. Hanson, and M. D. Nelson. 1992. Identification, protection, and management of wood turtle nesting areas. US Department of Agriculture, US Forest Service, North Central Forest Experiment Station, St. Paul, Minnesota.

Burger, J., and S. D. Garber. 1995. Risk assessment, life history strategies, and turtles: Could declines be prevented or predicted? Journal of Toxicology and Environmental Health 46:101-118.

Carl, L. M. 1982. Natural reproduction of coho salmon and chinook salmon in some Michigan streams. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 4: 325-380.

Clapp, D. F. 1988. Movement, habitat use, and daily activity patterns of trophy brown trout in the South Branch of the Au Sable River, Michigan. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Research Report 1988, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Cleland, C. E. 1982. The inland shore fishery of the northern Great Lakes, its development and importance in pre-history. American Antiquity 47:761-784.

Conservation Resource Alliance. 1997. Manistee River road and stream crossing inventory for Manistee and Wexford counties (Phase 1 and 2). Conservation Resource Alliance. Traverse City, Michigan.

Coon, T. G. 1987. Responses of benthic riffle fishes to variation in stream discharge and temperature. Pages 77-85 *in* W.J. Matthews and D.C. Heins, editors, Community and evolutionary ecology of North American stream fishes. University of Oklahoma Press, Norman, Oklahoma.

Coopes, G. F. 1974. Au Sable River watershed project biological report (1971-73). Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Crowe, W. R. 1959. Lampreys in the upper Manistee River, Michigan. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Research Report 1558. Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Cushman, R. M. 1985. Review of ecological effects of rapidly varying flows downstream from hydroelectric facilities. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 5:330-339.

Dewberry, T. C. 1992. Protecting the biodiversity of riverine and riparian ecosystems: the national river public land policy development project. Transactions of the 57th North American Wildlife and Natural Resources Conference. pp. 424-432.

Dunne, T. and L. B. Leopold. 1978. Water in environmental planning. W. H. Freeman and Company, New York, New York.

Edwards, E. A., G. Gebhart and O. E. Maughan. 1983. Habitat suitability index models: smallmouth bass. United States Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 82 (10.36).

Eichenlaub, V. L., J. R. Harman, F. V. Nurnberger. 1990. The climatic atlas of Michigan. University of Notre Dame Press, Notre Dame, Indiana.

Fulcher, G. W., S. A. Miller, and R. Van Till. 1986. Effects of consumptive water uses on drought flows in the River Raisin. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Engineering-Water Management Division, Lansing, Michigan.

Garber, S. D., and J. Burger. 1995. A 20-YR study documenting the relationship between turtle decline and human recreation. Ecological Applications 5(4):1151-1162.

Gebhards, S. 1973. Effects of channelization on fish. Trout Magazine 14 (1): 23-24.

Gislason., J. C. 1985. Aquatic insect abundance in a regulated stream under fluctuating and stable diel flow patterns. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 5:39-46.

Hansen, E. A. 1971. Sediment in a Michigan trout stream, its source, movement, and some effects on fish habitat. US Department of Agriculture. Forest Service Research paper NC-59. North Central Forest Experiment Station. St. Paul, Minnesota.

Hay-Chmielewski, E. M., P. W. Seelbach, G. E. Whelan, D .B. Jester Jr. 1995. Huron River assessment. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division, Special Report Number 16, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Heede, B. H. 1980. Stream dynamics: an overview for land managers. United States Forest Service, General Technical Report RM-72, Fort Collins, Colorado.

Hesse, J. A. 1994. Contributions of hatchery and natural chinook salmon to the eastern Lake Michigan fishery, 1982-93. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division Research Report Number 2013, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Hubbs, C. L., and K. F. Lagler. 1947. Fishes of the Great Lakes region. Bulletin Number 26. Cranbrook Institute of Science, Bloomfield Hills, Michigan.

Hudson, J. P. 1993. Seasonal and daily movements of large brown trout in the mainstream Au Sable River, Michigan. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Research Report 1988, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Inskip, P. D. 1982. Habitat suitability index models: northern pike. US Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 82 (10.17).

Jacob, B. L. 1966. An unpublished preliminary report on the Bayluscide treatment of the Manistee River, Crawford-Kalkaska counties. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division, Cadillac, Michigan.

Jerome, G. H. 1874. Letter to editor. Forest and Stream 3(24): 372.

Knighton, D. 1984. Fluvial forms and process. Edward Arnold Ltd, London, Great Britain.

Kozie, K. D. 1986. Breeding and feeding ecology of bald eagles in the Apostle Island National Lakeshore. Master’s Thesis, University of Wisconsin, Stevens Point, Wisconsin.

Kozie, K. D., and R. K. Anderson. 1991. Productivity, diet, and environmental contaminants in bald eagles nesting near the Wisconsin shoreline of Lake Superior. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 20:41-48.

Lawler, Matusky & Skelly Engineers. 1991. Application for license for major project-existing dam, Manistee River, Tippy project, FERC project #2580 and Hodenpyl project, FERC project #2599, Binders 1-38. Prepared for Consumers Power Company, Jackson, Michigan.

Lee, L. A. and J. W. Terrell. 1987. Habitat suitability index models: flathead catfish. US Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 82 (10.152).

Leonard, J. W. 1937. Trout food supply in the Pine River, Lake County. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Research Report 426. Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Leopold, L. B. 1968. Hydrology for urban land planning-a guidebook on the hydrologic effects of urban land use. United States Geological Survey Professional paper 554.

Leopold, L. B. and T. Maddock Jr. 1953. The hydraulic geometry of stream channels and some physiographic implications. United States Geological Survey Professional Paper 252.

Leopold, L. B. and M. G. Wolman. 1957. River channel patterns: braided, meandering and straight. United States Geological Survey Professional Paper 282B.

Maser, C. and J. Sedell. 1994. From the forest to the sea: the ecology of wood in streams, rivers, estuaries and oceans. St. Lucie Press, Delray Beach, Florida.

McMahon, T. E. 1982. Habitat suitability index models: creek chub. US Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 82 (10.4).

McMahon, T. E. and P. C. Nelson. 1984. Habitat suitability index models: smallmouth bass. US Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 82 (10.56).

McMahon, T. E., G. Gebhart, O. E. Maughan, and P.C. Nelson. 1984. Habitat suitability index models and instream flow suitability curves: warmouth. US Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 82 (10.67).

Merna, J. W. 1986. Contamination of stream fishes with chlorinated hydrocarbons from eggs of Great Lakes salmon. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 115:69-74.

Michigan Department of Natural Resources. 1993. A guide to public rights on Michigan waters. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Law Enforcement Division Report No. 9. Lansing, Michigan.

Mills, E. L., J. H. Leach, J .T. Carlton, C .L. Secor. 1993. Exotic species in the Great Lakes: a history of biotic crises and anthropogenic introductions. Journal of Great Lakes Research 19:1-54.

Nelson, F. A. 1986. Effect of flow fluctuations on brown trout in the Beaverhead River, Montana. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 6:551-559.

Norman, 1887. The rise and fall of the grayling. American Angler 11(6):87.

Nuhfer, A. 1993. Chestnut lamprey predation on caged, and free-living brown trout in the upper Manistee River, Michigan. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Research Report 1986. Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Osborne, L. L., and M. J. Wiley. 1992. Influence of tributary spatial position on the structure of warmwater fish communities. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 49:671-681.

Page, H. R. & Co. 1884. The Traverse Region. H.R. Page & Co., Chicago, Illinois.

Page, H. R. & Co. 1885. The history of Manistee county. H.R. Page & Co., Chicago, Illinois.

Peterson, W. R. 1972. A view from courthouse hill. Dorrance Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.

Pflieger, W. L. 1975. The fishes of Missouri. Missouri Department of Conservation. Jefferson City, Missouri.

Poff, N. L., and J. V. Ward. 1989. Implications of streamflow variability and predictability for lotic community structure: a regional analysis of streamflow patterns. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 46: 1805-1818.

Powers, P. F. 1912. A history of northern Michigan, Volume I. The Lewis Publishing Co., Chicago, Illinois.

Rakoczy, G .P. and R. N. Lockwood. 1988a. Sportfishing catch and effort from the Michigan waters of Lake Michigan and their important tributary streams, January 1, 1985 - March 31, 1988. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Technical Reports 88-11a, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Rakoczy, G .P. and R. N. Lockwood. 1988b. Sportfishing catch and effort from the Michigan waters of Lake Michigan and their important tributary streams, January 1, 1985 - March 31, 1988. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Technical Reports 88-11b, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Raleigh, R. F. 1982. Habitat suitability index models: brook trout. US Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 82 (10.24).

Raleigh, R. F., and P. C. Nelson. 1985. Habitat suitability index models and instream flow suitability curves: pink salmon. US Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 82 (10.109).

Raleigh, R. F., W. J. Miller and P. C. Nelson. 1986a. Habitat suitability index models and instream flow suitability curves: chinook salmon. US Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 82 (10.122).

Raleigh, R. F., L. D. Zuckerman, and P. C. Nelson. 1986b. Habitat suitability index models and instream flow suitability curves: brown trout. US Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 82 (10.124).

Regal, G. R. 1992. Range of movement and daily activity of wild brown trout in the South Branch Au Sable River, Michigan. Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Research Report 1988, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Richards, J. S. 1976. Changes in fish species composition in the Au Sable River, Michigan from the 1920's to 1972. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 105(1): 32-40.

Richards, R .P. 1990. Measures of flow variability and a new flow-based classification of Great Lakes tributaries. Journal of Great Lakes Research 16(1): 53-70.

Robins, C. R., R. M. Bailey, C. E. Bond, J. R. Brooker, E. A. Lachner, R. N. Lea, and W. B. Scott. 1991. Common and scientific names of fishes from the United States and Canada, 5th edition. American Fisheries Society Special Publication 20. Bethesda, Maryland.

Schlosser, I. J. 1991. Stream fish ecology: a landscape perspective. BioScience 41(10): 704-712.

Schutz, T. 1993. Wood turtle monitoring report (draft). US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service Report. Cadillac, Michigan.

Scott, W. B., and E. J. Crossman. 1973. Freshwater Fishes of Canada. Bulletin 184. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Ottawa.

Seelbach, P. W. 1987. Effect of winter severity on steelhead smolt yield in Michigan: an example of the importance of environmental factors in determining smolt yield. American Fisheries Society Symposium 1: 441-450.

Seelbach, P. W. 1991. Survival and contribution of hatchery steelhead stocked in large warmwater rivers in southern Michigan. Pages 72-84 *in* Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division, Dingell-Johnson Annual Reports, projects F-35-R-15 and F-35-R-6. Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Sommers, L. M., editor. 1977. Atlas of Michigan. Michigan State University Press, Lansing, Michigan.

Stalmaster, M., and J. Gressamer. 1984. Ecological energetics and forage behavior of overwintering bald eagles. Ecological Monographs. Volume 54 (4):407-428.

Stuber, R. J., G. Gebhart, and O. E. Maughan. 1982a. Habitat suitability index models: bluegill. US Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 82(10.8).

Stuber, R. J., G. Gebhart, and O. E. Maughan. 1982b. Habitat suitability index models: green sunfish. US Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 82(10.15).

Stuber, R. J., G. Gebhart, and O. E. Maughan. 1982c. Habitat suitability index models: largemouth bass. US Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 82(10.16).

Tanner, H. H., editor. 1986. Atlas of Great Lakes Indian history. University of Oklahoma Press, Norman, Oklahoma.

Toffaleti, C., and J. A. Bobrin. 1991. Nonpoint pollution in the Ann Arbor-Ypsilanti Area: a preliminary control strategy for the Huron River watershed. Washtenaw County Drain Commissioner, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Trautman, M. B. 1942. Fish distribution and abundance correlated with stream gradient as a consideration in stocking programs. pp. 221-223 *in* Transactions of the Seventh North American Wildlife Conference, Washington, DC.

Trautman, M. B. 1981. The Fishes of Ohio. Ohio State University Press, Columbus, Ohio.

Trial, J. G., J. G. Stanley, M. Batcheller, G. Gebhart, O. E. Maughan, P. C. Nelson, R. F. Raleigh, and J. W. Terrell. 1983. Habitat suitability index models: blacknose dace. US Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 82(10.41).

Twomey, K. A., K. L. Williamson, P. C. Nelson, and C. Armour. 1984. Habitat suitability index models and instream flow suitability curves: white sucker. US Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 82 (10.64).

US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service. 1983. Manistee River Wild & Scenic River Final Study Report and Environmental Impact Statement. US Department of Agriculture. Washington, DC.

US Department of Agriculture, Soil Conservation Service. 1986. Northwest Michigan streambank erosion inventory. US Department of Agriculture. Washington, DC.

US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service. 1993. Field guide. Ecological classification and inventory system of the Huron-Manistee National forests. US Department of Agriculture. Washington, DC.

US Geological Survey. 1979. Water Resources Data-Michigan Water Year 1978. US Geological Survey Water Data Report MI-78-1.

US Geological Survey. 1991. Water Resources Data-Michigan Water Year 1990. US Geological Survey Water Data Report MI-90-1.

US Geological Survey. 1992. Water Resources Data-Michigan Water Year 1991. US Geological Survey Water Data Report MI-91-1.

US House of Representatives. 1931. House Document No. 159, 72nd Congress. Ist Session, Washington, DC.

Verry, E. S. 1992. Riparian systems and management. Pages x-y *in* Proceedings of forest practices and water quality workshop. Lakes States Forestry Alliance. St. Paul, Minnesota.

Vincent, R. E. 1962. Biogeographical and ecological factors contributing to the decline of Arctic grayling *Thymallus arcticus*, Pallus, in Michigan and Montana. Doctoral Dissertation. University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

Whitaker, H. 1887. The Michigan grayling. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 15:59-65.

Zaft, D. J. 1992. Migration of wild chinook and coho salmon smolts from the Pere Marquette River, Michigan. Master’s Thesis. Michigan State University, East Lansing, Michigan.

Table 1.–Archaeological sites (380) in the Manistee River watershed, listed by county and townships downstream from headwaters to the mouth. Data from: B. Mead, Michigan Department of State, Archaeological Section.

County and townships	Number of sites
Crawford	
Frederick	1
Beaver Creek	1
Kalkaska	
Excelsior	1
Garfield	23
Springfield	4
Missaukee	
Norwich	3
Pioneer	1
Bloomfield	9
Wexford	
Liberty	8
Greenwood	2
Hanover	3
Cedar Creek	5
Colfax	26
Antioch	16
Springville	7
Haring	4
Selma	11
Boon	30
Slagle	19
Clam Lake	5
Cherry Grove	9
Henderson	26
South Branch	27
Manistee	
Pleasanton	4
Marilla	6
Bear Lake	2
Dickson	12
Brown	21
Manistee	25
Norman	20
Stronach	23
Filer	7
Grand Traverse	
Fife Lake	8
Paradise	1

Table 1.–Continued.

County and Township	Number of sites
Osceola	
Rose Lake	1
Lake	
Dover	8
North Newkirk	1

Table 2.–List of fishes in the Manistee River watershed. Compiled by G.R. Smith, University of Michigan and Tom Rozich, Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division. Common family names are in bold print. Species origin: N=native; C=colonized, O=extirpated, I=Introduced. Manistee status: P=recent observation, U=historic record, current status unknown.

Common name	Scientific name	Species origin	Manistee status
Lampreys			
Chestnut lamprey	*Ichthyomyzon castaneus*	N	P
Northern brook lamprey	*Ichthyomyzon fossor*	N	P
American brook lamprey	*Lampetra appendix*	N	P
Sea lamprey	*Petromyzon marinus*	C	P
Sturgeons			
Lake sturgeon (threatened)	*Acipenser fulvescens*	N	P
Gars			
Longnose gar	*Lepisosteus osseus*	N	P
Bowfins			
Bowfin	*Amia calva*	N	P
Herrings			
Alewife	*Alosa pseudoharengus*	C	P
Gizzard shad	*Dorosoma cepedianum*	N	P
Minnows			
Central stoneroller	*Campostoma anomalum*	I	P
Lake chub (rare)	*Couesius plumbeus*	N	P
Spotfin shiner	*Cyprinella spiloptera*	N	P
Common carp	*Cyprinus carpio*	I	P
Brassy minnow	*Hybognathus hankinsoni*	N	P
Common shiner	*Luxilus cornutus*	N	P
Pearl dace	*Margariscus margarita*	N	P
Hornyhead chub	*Nocomis biguttatus*	N	P
River chub	*Nocomis micropogon*	N	P
Golden shiner	*Notemigonus crysoleucas*	N	P
Pugnose shiner (rare)	*Notropis anogenus*	N	U
Emerald shiner	*Notropis atherinoides*	N	P
Blackchin shiner	*Notropis heterodon*	N	P
Blacknose shiner	*Notropis heterolepis*	N	P
Spottail shiner	*Notropis hudsonius*	N	P
Rosyface shiner	*Notropis rubellus*	N	P
Sand shiner	*Notropis stramineus*	N	P
Mimic shiner	*Notropis volucellus*	N	P
Northern redbelly dace	*Phoxinus eos*	N	P
Finescale dace	*Phoxinus neogaeus*	N	P
Bluntnose minnow	*Pimephales notatus*	N	P
Fathead minnow	*Pimephales promelas*	N	P
Blacknose dace	*Rhinichthys atratulus*	N	P
Longnose dace	*Rhinichthys cataractae*	N	P
Creek chub	*Semotilus atromaculatus*	N	P

Table 2.–Continued.

Common name	Scientific name	Species origin	Manistee status
Suckers			
Quillback	*Carpiodes cyprinus*	N	P
Longnose sucker	*Catostomus catostomus*	N	P
White sucker	*Catostomus commersoni*	N	P
Northern hog sucker	*Hypentelium nigricans*	N	P
Silver redhorse	*Moxostoma anisurum*	N	P
Golden redhorse	*Moxostoma erythrurum*	N	P
Shorthead redhorse	*Moxostoma macrolepidotum*	N	P
Greater redhorse	*Moxostoma valenciennesi*	N	P
Bullhead catfishes			
Black bullhead	*Ameiurus melas*	N	P
Yellow bullhead	*Ameiurus natalis*	N	P
Brown bullhead	*Ameiurus nebulosus*	N	P
Channel catfish	*Ictalurus punctatus*	N	P
Tadpole madtom (rare)	*Noturus gyrinus*	N	U
Pikes			
Northern pike	*Esox lucius*	N	P
Muskellunge	*Esox masquinongy*	I	P
Tiger muskellunge	*Esox masquinongy x Esox lucius*	I	P
Mudminnows			
Central mudminnow	*Umbra limi*	N	P
Smelts			
Rainbow smelt	*Osmerus mordax*	I	P
Trouts			
Lake herring (threatened)	*Coregonus artedi*	N	P
Lake whitefish	*Coregonus clupeaformis*	N	P
Pink salmon	*Oncorhynchus gorbuscha*	C	P
Coho salmon	*Oncorhynchus kisutch*	I	P
Rainbow trout (steelhead)	*Oncorhynchus mykiss*	I	P
Chinook salmon	*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*	I	P
Round whitefish	*Prosopium cylindraceum*	N	P
Brown trout	*Salmo trutta*	I	P
Brook trout	*Salvelinus fontinalis*	N/C	P
Lake trout	*Salvelinus namaycush*	N	P
Splake	*Salvelinus fontinalis x S. namaycush*	I	P
Arctic grayling (extirpated)	*Thymallus tricolor*	O	
Trout-perches			
Trout perch	*Percopsis omiscomaycus*	N	P
Cods			
Burbot	*Lota lota*	N	P
Killifishes			
Banded killifish	*Fundulus diaphanus*	N	P

Table 2.–Continued.

Common name	Scientific name	Species origin	Manistee status
Silversides			
Brook silverside	*Labidesthes sicculus*	N	P
Sticklebacks			
Brook stickleback	*Culaea inconstans*	N	P
Ninespine stickleback	*Pungitius pungitius*	N	P
Sculpins			
Mottled sculpin	*Cottus bairdi*	N	P
Slimy sculpin	*Cottus cognatus*	N	P
Temperate basses			
White bass	*Morone chrysops*	N	U
Sunfishes			
Rock bass	*Ambloplites rupestris*	N	P
Green sunfish	*Lepomis cyanellus*	N	P
Pumpkinseed sunfish	*Lepomis gibbosus*	N	P
Bluegill	*Lepomis macrochirus*	N	P
Longear sunfish	*Lepomis megalotis*	N	P
Smallmouth bass	*Micropterus dolomieu*	N	P
Largemouth bass	*Micropterus salmoides*	N	P
Black crappie	*Pomoxis nigromaculatus*	N	P
Perches			
Rainbow darter	*Etheostoma caeruleum*	N	P
Iowa darter	*Etheostoma exile*	N	P
Johnny darter	*Etheostoma nigrum*	N	P
Yellow perch	*Perca flavescens*	N	P
Logperch	*Percina caprodes*	N	P
Blackside darter	*Percina maculata*	N	P
Walleye	*Stizostedion vitreum*	N	P
Drums			
Freshwater drum	*Aplodinotus grunniens*	N	P

Table 3.–Non-indigenous fish species in the Manistee River. Data from: Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division.

Common name	Scientific name
Sea lamprey	*Petromyzon marinus*
Alewife	*Alosa pseudoharengus*
Central stoneroller	*Campostoma anomalum*
Common carp	*Cyprinus carpio*
Muskellunge	*Esox masquinongy*
Tiger muskellunge	*Esox masquinongy x Esox lucius*
Rainbow smelt	*Osmerus mordax*
Pink salmon	*Oncorhynchus gorbuscha*
Coho salmon	*Oncorhynchus kisutch*
Rainbow trout	*Oncorhynchus mykiss*
Chinook salmon	*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*
Brown trout	*Salmo trutta*
Splake	*Salvelinus fontinalis x Salvelinus namaycush*

Table 4.–Fish stocking in the Manistee River, 1984-93. Sites are listed from headwaters to the mouth. Data from: Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division. Fish life stage: Fr=fry; SF=spring fingerlings; FF=fall fingerlings; Y=yearlings; A=adults.

County and common name	Stocking location	Years	Number (fish life stage)	Comments
Crawford				
Brown trout	Manistee River	84-93	58,543 (Y)	good fishery
Grayling	Manistee River	87,88	27,634 (Y)	experimental plant
Rainbow trout	Manistee River	84-86, 90	5,724 (Y)	supplemental plant
Northern pike	Lake Margrethe	84-90, 93	38,831 (SF)	on-going
Tiger muskellunge	Lake Margrethe	85-91	40,037 (FF)	on-going
Muskellunge	Lake Margrethe	90	151 (FF)	rearing pond experiment
Walleye	Lake Margrethe	84-88, 90	294,072 (SF)	on-going
Walleye	Lake Margrethe	92, 93	3.61 million (Fr)	fry plants
Walleye	Lake Margrethe	93	397 (A)	on-going
Hybrid sunfish	Howes Lake	86, 89	9,600 (Y)	create a fishery
Largemouth bass	Howes Lake	88	41 (A)	create a fishery
Kalkaska				
Brown trout	Manistee River	84-93	4,908 (A)	on-going
Brown trout	Manistee River	84-93	216,081 (Y)	on-going
Brown trout	Manistee River	84-93	72,107 (FF)	on-going
Brown trout	Bear Lake	84-93	144,353 (Y)	excellent fishery
Brown trout	Big Twin Lake	84-93	50,090 (Y)	good fishery
Brown trout	Starvation Lake	84-93	11,220 (Y)	good fishery
Grayling	Manistee River	87	13,139 (Y)	experimental plant
Brook trout	Manistee River	91-93	500 (A)	on-going
Brook trout	Manistee River	85-93	38,850 (Y)	on-going
Rainbow trout	Manistee River	84-86, 88-90, 92	18,466 (A)	on-going
Rainbow trout	Manistee River	84-86, 88-90, 92	1,500 (Y)	on-going
Rainbow trout	Starvation Lake	86-89, 91-93	7,440 (Y)	on-going
Rainbow trout	Rainbow Lake	84-86	1,390 (Y)	dropped
Rainbow trout	Big Blue Lake	87-91	9,659 (Y)	on-going
Rainbow trout	Bass Lake	88-93	7,559 (Y)	on-going
Lake trout	Big Blue Lake	90, 92-93	6,800 (Y)	on-going
Lake trout	Big Twin Lake	84	400 (A)	one-time plant
Splake	Big Blue Lake	85, 87, 89-93	17,488 (F)	on-going
Walleye	Manistee Lake	85, 87, 90, 93	100,708 (SF)	on-going
Walleye	Cub Lake	90, 93	9,052 (SF)	on-going
Walleye	East Lake	90	9,644 (SF)	on-going
Walleye	Pickeral Lake	90, 92	8,504 (SF)	on going
Missaukee				
Brown trout	Manistee River	88, 90-93	36,112 (FF)	good fishery
Wexford				
Brown trout	Manistee River	84-93	76,037 (Y)	good fishery
Brown trout	Manistee RIver	86-93	60,216 (FF)	co-op program
Brown trout	Soper Creek	89	2,000 (FF)	one time plant
Rainbow trout	Lake Billings	84-86	4,950 (Y)	dropped
Rainbow trout	Garlets Pond	84-85	2,450 (Y)	dropped
Rainbow trout	Burkett Creek	85	120 (Y)	dropped
Walleye	Hodenpyl Dam	89, 92	97,547 (SF)	good fishery
Channel catfish	Hodenpyl Dam	88, 91	47,154 (FF)	good fishery

Table 4.–Continued.

County and common name	Stocking location	Years	Number (fish life stage)	Comments
Manistee				
Brown trout	Manistee River	84-93	470,610 (Y)	good fishing
Brown trout	Pine Lake	84-93	43,122 (Y)	on-going
Steelhead, winter & summer	Manistee River	84-93	520,232 (Y)	excellent fishery
Chinook salmon	Manistee River	84-93	1,066,331 (SF)	good fishery
Coho salmon	Manistee River	93	110,030 (Y)	on-going
Walleye	Tippy Dam	84-85, 92	65,951 (SF)	good fishery
Walleye	Tippy Dam	84-85	297,500 (Fr)	good fishery
Walleye	Bear Lake	84-86, 89-91, 93	99,989 (SF)	good fishery
Channel catfish	Tippy Dam	88, 91	36,530 (FF)	on-going
Grand Traverse				
Walleye	Fife Lake	84-86, 88, 92	91,309 (FF)	good fishery
Osceola				
Walleye	Rose Lake	85, 88, 91	61,454 (SF)	good fishery

Table 5.–Natural features of the Manistee River watershed, listed from headwaters to the mouth. Data from: Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Wildlife Division, Natural Features Inventory, July 1990. Type: A=vertebrate animal; C=plant community; G=geological feature; I=invertebrate animal; O=other feature (rookery, champion tree); P=plant. Status: E=endangered; T=threatened; SC=special concern (rare, may become E or T in the future); P=proposed.

County and common name	Scientific name or feature	Type	Federal status	State status
Otsego				
Prairie or pale agoseris	*Agoseris glauca*	P		T
Arethusa or dragon's mouth	*Arethusa bulbosa*	P		SC
Red-shouldered hawk	*Buteo lineatus*	A		T
Wapiti or elk	*Cervus elaphus*	A		
Hill's thistle	*Cirsium hillii*	P		SC
Spotted turtle	*Clemmys guttata*	A		SC
Wood turtle	*Clemmys insculpta*	A		SC
Ram's head lady-slipper	*Cypripedium arietinum*	P		SC
Rough fescue	*Festuca scabrella*	P		T
Common loon	*Gavia immer*	A		T
Bald eagle	*Haliaeetus leucocephalus*	A	E/T	T
Geographical feature	Karst	G		
Marten	*Martes americana*	A		T
Spike-lipped crater	*Mesodon sayanus*	I		SC
Geographical feature	Moraine	G		
Pugnose shiner	*Notropis anogenus*	A		SC
Blazing Star borer	*Papaipema beeriana*	I		SC
Hill's pondweed	*Potamogeton hillii*	P		T
Grizzled skipper	*Pyrgus wyandot*	I		SC
Crawford County				
Prairie or pale Agoseris	*Agoseris glauca*	P		T
Secretive locust	*Appalachia arcana*	I		SC
Dusted skipper	*Atrytonopsis hianna*	I		SC
Calypso or fairy-slipper	*Calypso bulbosa*	P		T
Hill's thistle	*Cirsuim hillii*	P		SC
Wood turtle	*Clemmys insculpta*	A		SC
False-violet	*Dalibarda repens*	P		T
Kirtland's warbler	*Dendroica kirtlandii*	A	E	E
	Dry-mesic northern forest	C		
Dry woodland, upper Midwest type	Dry northern forest	C		
Rough fescue	*Festuca scabrella*	P		T
Common loon	*Gavia immer*	A		T
Great blue heron rookery	Great blue heron rookery	O		
Bald eagle	*Haliaeetus leucocephalus*	A	E/T	T
Henry's Elfin	*Incisalia henrici*	I		SC
Woodland vole	*Microtus pinetorum*	A		SC
Alleghany or sloe plum	*Prunus alleghaniensis var davisii*	P		SC
Grizzled skipper	*Pyrgus wyandot*	I		SC
Massasauga	*Sistrurus catenatus*	A		SC
Houghton's goldenrod	*Solidago houghtonii*	P	T	T

Table 5.–Continued.

County and common name	Scientific name or feature	Type	Federal status	State status
Kalkaska				
Arethusa or dragon's mouth	*Arethusa bulbosa*	P		SC
Hill's thistle	*Cirsium hillii*	P		SC
Spotted turtle	*Clemmys guttata*	A		SC
Wood turtle	*Clemmys insculpta*	A		SC
Kirtland's warbler	*Dendroica kirtlandii*	A	E	E
Common loon	*Gavia immer*	A		T
Great blue heron rookery	Great blue heron rookery	O		
Bald eagle	*Haliaeetus leucocephalus*	A	E/T	T
Osprey	*Pandion haliaetus*	A		T
Eastern Flat-whorl	*Planogyra asteriscus*	I		SC
Hill's pondweed	*Potamogeton hillii*	P		T
Massasauga	*Sistrurus catenatus*	A		SC
Missaukee				
Secretive locust	*Appalachia arcana*	I		SC
Wood turtle	*Clemmys insculpta*	A		SC
Common loon	*Gavia immer*	A		T
Great blue heron rookery	Great blue heron rookery	O		
Bald eagle	*Haliaeetus leucocephalus*	A	E/T	T
Loggerhead shrike	*Lanius ludovicianus migrans*	A		E
Marten	*Martes americana*	A		T
Eastern Flat-whorl	*Planogyra asteriscus*	I		SC
Hill's pondweed	*Potamogeton hillii*	P		T
Wexford				
Arethusa or dragon's mouth	*Arethusa bulbosa*	P		SC
	Bog	C		
Wood turtle	*Clemmys insculpta*	A		SC
Common loon	*Gavia immer*	A		T
Great blue heron rookery	Great blue heron rookery	O		
	Hardwood-conifer swamp	C		
Geographical feature	Kame	G		
	Landscape complex	C		
Marten	*Martes americana*	A		T
Virginia bluebells	*Mertensia virginica*	P		T
	Mesic northern forest	C		
Scrub bog, Upper Midwest type	Muskeg	C		
Wet meadow, Upper Midwest type	Northern wet meadow	C		
Ginseng	*Panax quinquefolius*	P		T
	Rich conifer swamp	C		
Manistee				
Lake sturgeon	*Acipenser fulvescens*	A		T
Geographical feature	Bluff	G		
	Bog	C		
Red-Shouldered hawk	*Buteo lineatus*	A		T
American beech (*Fagus grandifolia*)	Champion tree	O		
Northern harrier	*Circus cyaneus*	A		SC
Pitcher's thistle	*Cirsium pitcheri*	P	T	T
Wood turtle	*Clemmys insculpta*	A		SC
	Dry-mesic northern forest	C		

Table 5.–Continued.

County and common name	Scientific name or feature	Type	Federal status	State status
Manistee continued				
Great blue heron rookery	Great blue heron rookery	O		
	Emergent marsh	C		
	Great Lakes marsh	C		
Bald eagle	*Haliaeetus leucocephalus*	A	E/T	T
Dwarf-bulrush	*Hemicarpha micrantha*	P		SC
Infertile pond/marsh, Gt. Lk. type	Intermittent wetland	C		
Shrub swamp, Central Midwest type	Inundated shrub swamp	C		
Least pinweed	*Lechea minor*	P		SC
Marten	*Martes americana*	A		T
	Mesic northern forest	C		
Wet meadow, upper Midwest type	Northern west meadow	C		
Pugnose shiner	*Notropis anogenus*	A		SC
Barrens, Central Midwest type	Oak barrens	C		
Beach/shoredunes, Great Lakes type	Open dunes	C		
Clustered broom-rape	*Orobanche fasciculata*	P		T
Ginseng	*Panax quinquefolius*	P		T
Brown walker	*Pomatiopsis cincinnatiensis*	I		SC
	Poor conifer swamp	C		
Alleghany or Sloe plum	*Prunus alleghaniensis var davisii*	P		SC
King rail	*Rallus elegans*	A		E
	Rich conifer swamp	C		
Massasauga	*Sistrurus catenatus*	A		SC
	Southern floodplain forest	C		
	Southern swamp	C		
	Submergent marsh	C		
Lake Huron locust	*Trimerotropis huroniana*	I		PT
Grand Traverse				
Arethusa or dragon's mouth	*Arethusa bulbosa*	P		SC
	Bog	C		
Red-Shouldered hawk	*Buteo lineatus*	A		T
American chestnut (*Castanea dentata*)	Champion tree	O		
Basswood (*Tilia americana*)	Champion tree	O		
Black willow (*Salix nigra*)	Champion tree	O		
Eastern red-cedar (*Juniperus virginiana*)	Champion tree	O		
Ironwood, Hop-Hornbeam (*Ostrya virginiana)*	Champion tree	O		
Rock Elm, Cork Elm (*Ulmus thomasii*)	Champion tree	O		
Hill's thistle	*Cirsium hillii*	P		SC
Pitcher's thistle	*Cirsium pitcheri*	P	T	T
Wood turtle	*Clemmys insculpta*	A		SC
	Dry-mesic northern forest	C		
Dry woodland, upper Midwest type	Dry northern forest	C		
	Emergent marsh	C		
Common loon	*Gavia immer*	A		T
	Great Lake marsh	C		
Bald eagle	*Haliaeetus leucocephalus*	A	E/T	T
	Hardwood-conifer swamp	C		
Loggerhead shrike	*Lanius ludovicianus migrans*	A		E

Table 5.–Continued.

County and common name	Scientific name or feature	Type	Federal status	State status
Grand Traverse continued				
Marten	*Martes americana*	A		T
	Mesic northern forest	C		
Alkaline shrub/herb, upper Midwest type	Northern fen	C		
Osprey	*Pandion haliaetus*	A		T
King rail	*Rallus elegans*	A		E
	Rich conifer swamp	C		
Lake Huron tansy	*Tanacetum huronense*	P		T
	Wooded dune & swale complex	C		
Osceola				
Wood turtle	*Clemmys insculpta*	A		SC
Common loon	*Gavia immer*	A		T
Great blue heron rookery	Great blue heron rookery	O		
Geographical feature	Kettle	G		
Marten	*Martes americana*	A		T
Osprey	*Pandion haliaetus*	A		T
Lake				
Dense long-beaked sedge	*Carex sychnocephala*	P		T
Larch, Tamarack (*Larix laricina*)	Champion tree	O		
Hill's thistle	*Cirsium hillii*	P		SC
Spotted turtle	*Clemmys guttata*	A		SC
Wood turtle	*Clemmys insculpta*	A		SC
	Dry-mesic northern forest	C		
Dry sand prairie, Midwest type	Dry sand prairie	C		
Watercress snail	*Fontigens nickliniana*	I		SC
Common loon	*Gavia immer*	A		T
Great blue heron rookery	Great blue heron rookery	O		
Bald eagle	*Haliaeetus leucocephalus*	A	E/T	T
Dwarf-bulrush	*Hemicarpha micrantha*	P		SC
Karner blue	*Lycaeides samuelis*	I		PT
Marten	*Martes americana*	A		T
Moist sand prairie, Midwest type	Mesic sand prairie	C		
Barrens, upper Midwest type	Pine barrens	C		
Bog bluegrass	*Poa paludigena*	P		T
	Poor conifer swamp	C		
Alleghany or Sloe plum	*Prunus alleghaniensis var davisii*	P		SC
	Rich conifer swamp	C		
Massasauga	*Sistrurus catenatus*	A		SC
	Southern floodplain forest	C		
	Southern swamp	C		
	Bog	C		

Table 6.–Amphibians and reptiles in the Manistee River watershed, that require aquatic environment. Data from: Greg Schneider, University of Michigan.

Common name	Scientific name
Salamanders	
Spotted salamander	*Ambystoma maculatum*
Blue-spotted hybrid	*Ambystoma laterale*
Tiger salamander	*Ambystoma tigrinum*
Four-toed salamander	*Hemidactylium scutatum*
Mudpuppy	*Necturus maculosus*
Red-spotted newt	*Notophthalmus viridescens*
Red-backed newt	*Plethodon cinereus*
Lizards	
Five-lined skink	*Eumeces fasciatus*
Frogs	
American toad	*Bufo americanus*
Fowler's toad	*Bufo woodhousii*
Spring peeper	*Hyla crucifer*
Gray tree frog	*Hyla chrysoscelis*
Chorus frog	*Pseudacris triseriata*
Bullfrog	*Rana catesbeiana*
Green frog	*Rana clamitans*
Pickeral frog	*Rana palustris*
Leopard frog	*Rana pipiens*
Wood frog	*Rana sylvatica*
Turtles	
Softshell	*Apalone spinifera*
Snapping turtle	*Chelydra serpentina*
Painted turtle	*Chrysemys picta*
Spotted turtle	*Clemmys guttata*
Wood turtle	*Clemmys insculpta*
Blanding's turtle	*Emydoidea blandingii*
Map turtle	*Graptemys geographica*
Eastern box turtle	*Terrapene carolina*
Snakes	
Northern black racer	*Coluber constrictor*
Ringneck snake	*Diadophis punctatus*
Hognose snake	*Heterodon platyrhinos*
Milk snake	*Lampropeltis triangulum*
Water snake	*Nerodia sipedon*
Smooth green snake	*Opheodrys vernalis*
Queen snake	*Regina septemuittata*
Massasauga	*Sistrurus catenatus*
Brown snake	*Storeria dekayi*
Red-bellied snake	*Storeria occipitomaculata*
Ribbon snake	*Thamnophis sauritus*
Garter snake	*Thamnophis sirtalis*

Table 7. Common and scientific names of species referred to in text.

Common name	Scientific name
Fish	
Sea lamprey	*Petromyzon marinus*
Northern brook lamprey	*Ichthyomyzon fossor*
Chestnut lamprey	*Ichthyomyzon castaneus*
Lake sturgeon	*Acipenser fulvescens*
Alewife	*Alosa pseudoharengus*
Common carp	*Cyprinus carpio*
Pugnose shiner	*Notropis anogenus*
Blacknose dace	*Rhinichthys atratulus*
Longnose dace	*Rhinichthys cataractae*
Creek chub	*Semotilus atromaculatus*
White sucker	*Catostomus catostomus*
Silver redhorse	*Moxostoma anisurum*
Shorthead redhorse	*Moxostoma macrolepidotum*
Channel catfish	*Ictalurus punctatus*
Flathead catfish	*Pylodictis olivaris*
Northern pike	*Esox lucius*
Muskellunge	*Esox masquinongy*
Lake herring	*Coregonus artedi*
Lake whitefish	*Coregonus clupeaformis*
Coho salmon	*Oncorhynchus kisutch*
Rainbow trout (steelhead)	*Oncorhynchus mykiss*
Chinook salmon	*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*
Round whitefish	*Prosopium cylindraceum*
Brown trout	*Salmo trutta*
Brook trout	*Salvelinus fontinalis*
Tiger trout	*Salvelinus fontinalis x Salmo trutta*
Lake trout	*Salvelinus namaycush*
Arctic grayling	*Thymallus arcticus*
Trout-perch	*Percopsis omiscomaycus*
Burbot	*Lota lota*
Mottled sculpin	*Cottus bairdi*
Slimy sculpin	*Cottus cognatus*
Rock bass	*Ambloplites rupestris*
Green sunfish	*Lepomis cyanellus*
Warmouth	*Lepomis gulosus*
Pumpkinseed	*Lepomis gibbosus*
Bluegill	*Lepomis macrochirus*
Smallmouth bass	*Micropterus dolomieu*
Largemouth bass	*Micropterus salmoides*
Black crappie	*Pomoxis nigromaculatus*
Yellow perch	*Perca flavescens*
Walleye	*Stizostedion vitreum*

Table 7.–Continued.

Common name	Scientific name
Aquatic invertebrates	
European spiny water flea	*Bythotrephes cederstroemi*
Rusty crayfish	*Orconectes rusticus*
Giant mayfly	*Hexagenia limbatta*
Stoneflies	*Plecoptera spp.*
Caddisflies	*Trichoptera spp.*
Mussels	
Zebra mussels	*Dreissena polymorpha*
Amphibians and reptiles	
Spotted turtle	*Clemmys guttata*
Wood turtle	*Clemmys insculpta*
Massasauga rattlesnake	*Sistrurus catenatus*
Mammals	
Woodland vole	*Microtus pinetorum*
White-tail deer	*Odocoileus virginianus*
Beaver	*Castor canadensis*
Elk	*Cervus canadensis*
Muskrat	*Ondatra zibethica*
Raccoon	*Procyon lotor*
River otter	*Lutra canadensis*
Mink	*Mustela vuison*
Pine martin	*Martes americana*
Avians	
Great blue heron	*Ardea herodias*
Red shouldered hawk	*Buteo lineatus*
Common loon	*Gavia immer*
Bald eagle	*Haliaectus leucocephalus*
King rail	*Rallus elegans*
Kirtland's warbler	*Dendrocia kirtlandii*
Loggerhead shrike	*Lanius ludovicianus migrans*
Northern harrier hawk	*Circus cyancus*
Osprey	*Pandion halinetus*
Pileated woodpecker	*Dryocopus pileatus*
Mute swan	*Cygnus olor*
Insects	
Gypsy moth	*Portheivia dispir*
Forest tent caterpillar	*Malacosoma disstria*
Spruce budworm	*Choristoneura fumiferana*
Jack pine budworm	*Choristoneura pinus pinus*
Plants	
Purple loosestrife	*Lythrum salicaria*
Eurasian milfoil	*Myriophyllum sp.*

Table 8.–Manistee River gradient expressed as a change in elevation (ft/mi) from headwaters to mouth. Data from: Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division.. Class codes: R=river; H=impoundment created by operating hydroelectric facility. PAS=public access site.

River mile	Class code	Distance (mile)	Gradient (ft/mile)	Comments
202.67				Origin Antrim County
201.99	R	0.68	14.58	
200.05	R	1.94	5.08	
198.51	R	1.53	6.42	
197.22	R	4.29	7.63	
195.54	R	1.69	5.84	
194.72	R	0.82	12.02	
192.87	R	1.85	5.31	
190.98	R	1.88	5.22	
188.84	R	2.14	4.59	
184.51	R	4.33	2.31	County Road 612
178.51	R	6.00	1.67	M-72 Highway
175.75	R	2.76	3.62	
173.34	R	2.41	4.14	
170.92	R	2.42	4.13	
167.02	R	3.85	2.60	
162.52	R	4.55	2.20	
161.52	R	1.00	9.81	
158.93	R	2.59	3.80	
156.21	R	2.72	3.61	
154.53	R	1.67	5.88	
152.78	R	1.76	5.60	Sharon
147.77	R	5.00	1.97	
142.56	R	5.22	1.89	Smithville
139.84	R	2.71	3.63	
132.65	R	5.78	1.70	
128.43	R	1.41	6.96	
129.91	R	2.74	3.59	
126.74	R	3.17	3.11	PAS
125.04	R	1.71	5.77	
119.98	R	5.06	1.95	
117.55	R	2.43	4.05	
112.20	R	5.35	1.84	
108.37	R	3.83	2.57	Manton
104.38	R	3.98	2.47	
101.95	R	2.43	4.05	Baxter Bridge PAS
97.60	R	4.36	2.26	
94.83	R	2.77	3.55	
88.75	R	6.08	1.62	
85.95	R	2.80	3.52	
83.38	R	2.57	3.83	Harvey Bridge PAS
77.66	R	5.72	1.72	M-37 Highway

Table 8.–Continued.

River mile	Class code	Distance (mile)	Gradient (ft/mile)	Comments
76.88	R	0.78		
65.49	H	11.39	2.37	Hodenpyl Impoundment
63.45	H	2.04	4.90	Hodenpyl Impoundment
59.96	H	3.49	2.94	Hodenpyl Impoundment
58.08	H	1.88	10.80	Hodenpyl Impoundment
57.65	R	0.43	8.77	
56.40	R	1.25	7.88	
55.30	R	1.10	8.95	
53.26	R	2.04	4.98	
51.28	R	1.98	4.98	
47.66	R	3.62	2.72	
29.26	H	18.40	2.82	Tippy Dam Impoundment
25.03	R	4.23	4.65	From Tippy Dam tailwater to contour 186
16.81	R	8.22	1.20	PAS
10.40	R	6.41	1.54	Rainbow Bend PAS
6.61	R	3.80	1.30	
0.00	R	6.61	0.74	Hwy M-55 bridge

Table 9.–Pine River gradient expressed as a change in elevation (ft/mi) from headwaters to confluence with mainstem. Data from: Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division. Class codes: R=river; H= impoundment created by operating hydroelectric facility; I=impoundment created by a dam. PAS=public access site.

River mile	Class code	Distance (mile)	Gradient (ft/mile)	Comments
52.22	R	1.35	7.30	Confluence of East & North Branches
51.12	R	1.10	8.97	PAS
50.00	R	1.12	8.81	
48.66	R	1.34	7.33	PAS and Sprague Creek
47.31	R	1.35	7.31	Norman Road
45.53	R	1.98	4.97	Beaver Creek
43.96	R	1.37	7.19	Edgetts Bridge
42.13	R	1.84	5.36	PAS
40.83	R	1.30	7.57	PAS
40.35	R	0.47	20.74	
39.50	R	0.85	11.57	Coe Creek, Meadowbrook Bridge PAS
38.17	R	1.33	7.42	
36.64	R	1.53	6.42	Skookum Road and PAS
35.58	R	1.06	9.27	Footbridge Crossing
34.60	R	0.98	10.08	Sellers Creek
33.78	R	0.82	12.02	
32.39	R	1.39	7.06	Side Pond in Section 19
30.96	R	1.43	6.88	State Road and Walker Bridge
28.83	R	2.13	10.78	Silver Creek & Campground
27.03	R	1.9	9.15	Lincoln Bridge PAS & Elm Creek
22.96	R	4.08	4.02	Poplar Creek & PAS
20.82	R	2.13	6.15	Hoxey Creek
20.46	R	0.36	27.32	Section 34
18.90	R	1.56	6.31	Number. 50 road crossing & PAS
17.91	R	0.99	9.93	
16.91	R	1.00	9.86	Number. 48 1/2 road crossing
15.64	R	1.27	7.73	
14.90	R	0.74	13.33	
14.16	R	0.74	13.24	
13.02	R	1.14	8.66	M37 and MDNR PAS
12.44	R	0.58	16.85	
11.40	R	1.04	9.46	
11.03	R	0.37	26.82	
10.45	R	0.58	16.94	
9.84	R	0.61	16.19	
8.80	R	1.05	9.42	Section 23 Line
7.37	R	1.43	6.89	
6.22	R	1.15	3.52	Stronach Dam influence zone to impoundment
4.13	I	0.52	17.17	Stronach Impoundment
3.83	I	0.30	10.38	Stronach Impoundment
3.67	R	0.16	17.74	Stronach Dam Tailwater

Table 9.–Continued.

River mile	Class code	Distance (mile)	Gradient (ft/mile)	Comments
3.09	H	0.58	13.93	Tippy Impoundment - Section 17 Line
2.76	H	0.33	15.59	Tippy Impoundment
2.61	H	0.15	25.42	Tippy Impoundment
2.26	H	0.35	6.41	Tippy Impoundment - Section 8 Line
1.26	H	1.00	5.99	Tippy Impoundment
0.60	H	0.67	14.93	Tippy Impoundment
0.0	H	0.60	7.03	Tippy Impoundment - Manistee River confluence

Table 10.–Erosion sites by reach for the Manistee River (mainstem), Bear Creek and Pine River. Data from: Northwest Michigan Streambank Erosion Inventory, US Department of Agriculture, Soil Conservation Service, 1986. Br.=Bridge.

Reach	Length (mile)	Minor	Moderate	Severe	Total sites	Sites per mile
MANISTEE RIVER						
M-72 to Sharon	33	5	1	0	6	0.2
Sharon to Smithville	12	11	1	0	12	1.0
Smithville to Missaukee Br.	22	11	15	4	30	1.4
Missaukee Br. to Baxter Br.	38	8	23	15	46	1.2
Baxter Br. to Harvey Br.	27	6	20	45	71	2.6
Harvey Br. to Hodenpyl Dam Backwaters	26	2	7	1	10	0.4
Hodenpyl Dam to Tippy Dam Backwaters	7	0	2	62	64	9.1
Tippy Dam to Manistee Lk.	26	4	13	15	32	1.2
Manistee Lk. to Lk Michigan	2	3	9	0	12	0.8
Totals	193	50	91	142	283	1.5
BEAR CREEK						
9 Mile Rd. to Milks Rd.	2	7	15	0	22	11
Milks Rd to Coates	6	8	29	13	50	8.3
Coates to Griffith Rd.	2	5	3	2	10	5
Totals	10	20	47	15	82	8.2
PINE RIVER						
LeRoy, Osceola Co. to Skookum Br. in Dover Twnshp, Lake Co.	16	17	19	4	40	2.5
Ne-Bo-Shone Assoc. to Lincoln Br.	9	27	21	6	54	6.0
Lincoln Br.to Lake-Wexford Co. Line	5	5	5	2	12	2.4
Lake-Wexford Co line to Wexford-Manistee Co. Line	13	13	29	43	85	6.5
Wexford-Manistee line to Tippy Dam backwaters	6	15	27	23	65	10.8
Totals	49	77	101	78	256	5.2

Table 11.–Channel width analysis for the reach from Tippy Dam to below High Bridge Road. E transects were 1,300 ft downstream of Tippy Dam. F transects were 8,000 ft downstream of Tippy Dam. G transects were 13,000 ft downstream of Tippy Dam. H transects were 20,000 ft downstream of Tippy Dam. I transects were 1,000 ft downstream of High Bridge Road. Width is measured width. Lower limit is the lower bound of theoretical width at discharge. Mean width is the theoretical mean width at discharge. Upper limit is the upper bound of theoretical width at discharge. Difference is the difference between measured width and theoretical width. Status states if measured data is within theoretical bounds. Data from: Lawler, Matusky & Skelly 1991.

Location	Width (ft)	Lower limit(ft)	Mean width(ft)	Upper limit(ft)	Difference (ft)	Status
E1	220.5	168.4	247.8	364.8	-25.0	OK
E2	197.2	168.4	247.8	364.8	-49.4	OK
F1	215.7	155.3	227.5	333.4	-8.3	OK
F2	174.7	154.0	225.5	330.3	-48.9	OK
F3	175.9	156.7	229.7	336.7	-51.1	OK
F4	196.5	158.0	231.8	339.9	-33.2	OK
F5	207.4	161.6	237.4	348.6	-27.0	OK
F6	202.0	163.7	240.6	353.7	-34.8	OK
G3	214.2	161.9	237.8	349.3	-35.6	OK
G4	157.8	164.2	241.3	354.7	-83.6	Too narrow
G5	170.0	155.7	228.2	334.5	-55.9	OK
G6	172.7	157.4	230.8	338.4	-57.4	OK
H2	169.0	166.0	244.2	359.2	-72.4	OK
H3	179.1	152.0	222.4	325.4	-42.3	OK
H4	143.8	163.0	239.6	352.0	-92.6	Too narrow
H5	160.4	168.0	247.2	363.8	-83.4	Too narrow
H6	186.7	164.3	241.5	355.0	-54.0	OK
I1	246.7	164.5	241.9	355.6	16.9	OK
I2	194.0	160.7	236.0	346.4	35.6	OK
I3	290.7	164.4	241.7	366.3	43.2	OK
I4	313.4	176.7	260.8	385.0	82.6	OK

Table 12.–Channel width analysis for reach below Hodenpyl Dam to Slagle Creek. P transects were 18,000 ft downstream of Hodenpyl Dam. Q transects were 23,000 ft downstream of Hodenpyl Dam. R transects were located at the mouth of Slagle Creek (29,000 ft downstream of dam). Width is measured width. Lower limit is the lower bound of theoretical width at discharge. Mean width is theoretical mean width at discharge. Upper limit is the upper bound of theoretical width at discharge. Difference is the difference between measured and theoretical width. Status states if measured data is within theoretical bounds. Data from: Lawler, Matusky & Skelly 1991.

Location	Width (ft)	Lower limit (ft)	Mean width (ft)	Upper limit (ft)	Difference	Status
P1	122.4	128.1	185.6	269.0	-58.6	Too narrow - 1.1 ft
P2	107.9	127.5	184.7	267.5	-77.3	Too narrow - 20.1 ft
P3	130.6	135.0	196.2	285.1	-59.7	OK
P4	166.6	131.7	191.2	277.5	-21.6	OK
P5	136.6	125.6	181.7	263.1	-43.6	OK
P6	99.3	128.1	185.6	269.0	-80.7	Too narrow - 23.2 ft
Q1	146.5	145.8	212.9	310.8	-60.9	OK
Q2	149.1	149.2	218.1	318.8	-65.3	OK
Q3	124.6`	141.9	206.8	301.5	-80.9	Too narrow - 16.0 ft
Q4	128.3	141.0	205.5	299.4	-59.3	OK
Q5	157.9	139.7	203.5	296.4	-43.7	OK
Q6	192.8	142.5	207.7	302.8	-105.1	Too narrow - 39.9 ft
Q7	199.2	151.0	220.8	323.0	-18.4	OK
Q8	116.6	139.7	203.5	296.4	-81.7	Too narrow - 12.9 ft
R1	108.7	140.4	204.5	297.9	-76.0	Too narrow - 11.9 ft
R2	123.9	141.1	205.6	299.6	-72.9	Too narrow - 8.4 ft
R3	120.0	143.5	209.3	305.3	-89.6	Too narrow - 23.8 ft
R4	120.0	144.9	211.5	308.7	-91.8	Too narrow - 25.2 ft
R5	101.4	144.3	210.5	307.1	-104.0	Too narrow - 37.8 ft
R6	123.3	143.1	208.7	304.4	-82.7	Too narrow - 17.1 ft
R7	132.9	143.0	208.6	304.1	-70.6	Too narrow - 5.0 ft

Table 13.–Channel width analysis for minor Manistee River tributaries. Transect is data collection site. Discharge column is discharge for which the data is presented. Width column is the measured width. Lower limit column is the lower bound of the theoretical width at discharge. Mean width column is the theoretical mean width at discharge. Upper limit is the upper bound of the theoretical width at discharge. Difference column is the difference between measured width and theoretical width. Status column refers to whether measured data is within theoretical bounds. Calculated width data for the Manistee River - based on IFIM data. All measurements are in feet. Data were collected by US Geological Survey.

Transect	Calculated Width	Theoretical Mean	Width Difference	Bounds Upper	Lower	CFS	Status	Difference by (feet)
Goose Creek	18.0	21.8	3.8	28.1	16.9	15.70	OK	
Portage Creek	25.0	27.5	-2.5	35.9	21.0	25.10	OK	
Big Cannon Creek	24.0	30.0	-6.0	39.4	22.8	29.90	OK	
N. Br. Manistee-Sharon	12.0	26.5	-14.5	34.5	20.3	23.30	too narrow	8.3
N. Br. Manistee-Diversion	22.5	18.9	3.6	24.3	14.8	11.90	OK	
Slagel Creek - Below hatchery	13.0	21.6	-8.6	27.9	16.8	15.60	too narrow	3.8
Slagel Creek - 120’ above dam	18.5	14.8	3.7	18.7	11.7	7.28	OK	
Slagel Creek - below race	22.8	12.0	10.8	15.0	9.6	4.76	too wide	7.8
Slagel Creek - south of bridge	10.5	10.9	-0.4	13.5	8.8	3.91	OK	
Slagel Creek - above bridge	10.3	11.0	-0.8	13.7	8.9	4.01	OK	

Table 14.–Channel diversity analysis for reach from Tippy Dam to High Bridge Road. E transects were 1,300 ft downstream of Tippy Dam. F transects were 8,000 ft downstream of Tippy Dam. G transects were 13,000 ft downstream of Tippy Dam. H transects were 20,000 ft downstream of Tippy Dam. I transects were 1,000 ft downstream of High Bridge. Width is actual measured width. Discharge is cfs for which diversity is calculated. Number of samples refers to number of data points used in diversity calculation. Channel diversity is the cross-sectional diversity index value using Shannon-Wierner diversity index. Percent maximum diversity is channel diversity divided by maximum possible diversity. Number of different cells is number of different combinations of velocity and depth in cross-section. Percent different cells is the number of different combinations divided by number of samples. Data from: Lawler, Matusky & Skelly 1991.

Location	Width (ft)	Discharge (cfs)	Number of samples	Channel diversity	Percent maximum diversity	Number different cells	Percent different cells
E1	220.5	2068	36	2.70	75.4	17	47.2
E2	197.2	2068	44	3.14	82.9	26	59.1
F1	215.7	1742	53	3.08	77.5	26	49.1
F2	174.2	1712	36	3.07	85.7	23	63.9
F3	175.9	1776	36	2.93	81.8	21	58.3
F4	196.5	1808	40	2.98	80.7	25	62.5
F5	207.4	1897	21	2.75	90.3	17	81.0
F6	202.0	1950	48	3.25	84.0	29	60.4
G3	214.2	1904	43	3.20	85.0	28	65.1
G4	157.8	1960	32	3.24	93.6	28	87.5
G5	120.0	1753	35	3.23	90.9	27	77.1
G6	122.7	1293	44	3.16	83.4	28	63.6
H2	169.0	2008	34	3.02	85.5	23	67.6
H3	129.1	1664	45	3.26	85.6	24	53.3
H4	143.8	1932	29	3.03	90.0	22	75.0
H5	160.4	2058	33	3.13	89.4	26	78.8
H6	186.7	1964	38	3.48	95.8	34	89.5
I1	246.7	1970	66	3.43	82.9	41	62.1
I2	194.0	1874	47	2.98	77.5	24	51.1
I3	290.7	1966	61	3.14	76.4	30	49.2
I4	313.4	2292	67	336.00	79.8	36	53.7

Table 15.–Channel diversity analysis for reach from Hodenpyl Dam to Slagle Creek. P transects were 18,000 ft downstream of Hodenpyl Dam. Q transects were 23,000 ft downstream of Hodenpyl Dam. R transects were 29,000 ft downstream of Hodenpyl Dam just above Slagle Creek. Width is actual measured width. Discharge is cfs for which diversity is calculated. The Nimber of samples refers to number of data points used in diversity calculation. Channel diversity is the cross-sectional diversity index value using the Shannon-Wierner diversity index. Number of different cells is number of different combinations of velocity and depth in the cross-section. Percent different cells is number of different combinations divided by number of samples. Data from: Lawler, Matusky & Skelly 1991.

Location	Width (ft)	Discharge (cfs)	Number of samples	Channel diversity	Percent maximum diversity	Number different cells	Percent different cells
P1	122.4	1158	35	2.79	78.4	21	60.0
P2	107.9	1146	22	2.75	89.0	17	77.3
P3	130.6	1294	24	2.89	90.8	21	87.5
P4	166.6	1229	34	2.92	82.7	22	64.7
P5	136.6	1110	26	2.82	86.7	19	73.1
P6	99.3	1158	23	2.81	89.7	18	78.3
P7	131.0	1139	26	2.93	90.1	22	84.6
P8	140.0	1176	32	3.05	87.9	25	78.1
Q1	146.5	1525	21	2.84	93.3	18	85.7
Q2	149.1	1600	22	2.42	78.1	14	63.6
Q3	124.6	1439	25	2.53	78.6	16	64.0
Q4	128.3	1420	26	2.69	82.6	17	65.4
Q5	157.9	1393	30	2.52	73.9	16	53.3
Q6	192.8	1451	37	3.08	85.4	25	67.6
Q7	199.2	1641	46	3.46	90.4	35	76.1
Q8	116.6	1393	20	2.64	88.0	16	80.0
R1	108.7	1406	27	3.11	94.2	23	85.2
R2	123.9	1422	27	2.86	86.7	21	77.8
R3	120.0	1474	24	2.94	92.5	20	83.3
R4	120.0	1505	34	3.22	88.2	24	70.6
R5	101.4	1490	22	2.68	86.7	17	77.3
R6	123.3	1465	27	2.98	90.5	21	77.8
R7	132.9	1463	27	2.66	80.6	18	66.7

Table 16.–Channel diversity analysis for minor Manistee River tributaries. Location is data collection site. Discharge is cfs for which data are presented. Number of samples refers to number of data points used in diversity calculation. Channel diversity is the cross-sectional diversity index value using Shannon-Wiener diversity index. Percent maximum diversity is channel diversity divided by maximum possible diversity. Number of different cells is number of different combinations of velocity and depth in the cross-section. Percent different cells is number of different combinations divided by number of samples. Data from: US Geological Survey.

Location	Discharge (cfs)	Number of samples	Channel diversity	Percent maximum diversity	Number different cells	Percent different cells
Goose Creek	15.7	23	1.00	31.9	4	17.4
Portage Creek	25.1	23	1.64	52.4	6	26.1
Big Cannon Creek	29.9	22	2.05	66.5	9	40.9
N. Br. Manistee River	23.3	23	1.73	55.2	7	30.4
N. Br. Manistee River	11.9	21	1.24	40.8	4	19.0
Slagle Creek @ hatchery	15.5	25	0.74	23.0	4	16.0
Slagle Creek @ Slagle Club	7.3	25	1.29	40.0	4	16.0
Slagle Creek @ Slagle Club	4.8	28	1.37	41.1	5	17.9
Slagle Creek above Co. Line Rd.	3.9	21	0.66	21.8	2	9.5
Slagle Creek below Co. Line Rd.	4.0	20	0.69	23.1	2	10.0

Table 17.–Land ownership within the Manistee River watershed by river segment. Date from: US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service (1983) and Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Lands Division.

Segment	Private	State	Federal	Consumers Energy	Total
1	840	2,490	--	--	2,520
2	4,770	1,610	--	310	7,500
3	3,120	12,060	--	520	15,700
4	--	--	1,720	--	1,720
5	1,220	2,330	5,370	--	8,920
6	800	2,160	--	--	2,960
7	2,540	20	1,080	--	3,640
8	3,600	1,400	4,040	--	9,040
Totals	16,890	22,070	12,210	830	52,380

Table 18.–Statutes administered by Michigan Department of Environmental Quality, Land and Water Management Division, that affect the aquatic resource. Adapted from Bean and Braunscheidel (1996).

State of Michigan Acts	Previous statute
Public Health Code (1978 PA 386, as amended)	Amendments to Aquatic Nuisance Control Act (PA 86, 1977)
Part 13 N.R.P. Act(1994 PA 451)	Floodplain Regulatory Authority(PA 167, 1968)
Part 91 N.R.P. Act (1994 PA 451)	Soil Erosion and Sedimentation Control Act (PA 347, 1972)
Part 301 N.R.P. Act (1994 PA 451)	Inland Lakes and Streams Act(PA 346, 1972)
Part 303 N.R.P. Act (1994 PA 451)	Wetland Protection Act (PA 203, 1979)
Part 307 N.R.P. Act (1994 PA 451)	Inland Lake Level Act (PA 146, 1961)
Part 309 N.R.P. Act (1994 PA 451)	Inland Improvement Act (PA 345, 1966)
Part 315 N.R.P. Act (1994 PA 451)	Dam Safety Act (PA 300, 1989)
Part 323 N.R.P. Act (1994 PA 451)	Shoreland Protection and Management Act (PA 245, 1970)
Part 325 N.R.P. Act (1994 PA 451)	Great Lakes Submerged Lands Act (PA 247, 1955)
Part 341 N.R.P. Act (1994 PA 451)	Irrigation District Act (PA 205, 1967)

US Federal Acts
Federal Water Pollution Control Act, Section 314 (PL 92-55)
Coastal Zone Management Act (PL 92-583, 1972)
Clean Water Act, Section 404 (PL 95-217)
River and Harbor Act, Section 10 (1899)
Coastal Energy Impact Program (PL 92-538)

Table 19.–Designated drains in the Manistee River watershed, by county and township. Data from: county drain offices. Total drains=40.

Missaukee County	Manistee County
Bloomfield Township	*Manistee Township*
Golden Creek Drain	Bar Lake Drain
Ham Creek Drain	Gromer Drain
	McGuineas Drain
Wexford County	*Maple Grove Township*
Liberty Township	Maple Grove Drain
Cedar Creek #1	Litzan Drain
Cedar Creek #2	Bond Drain
Harmon Drain	Lindruse Luomala Drain
Liberty #4	Big Kaiser Drain
Liberty Hwy.	*Springdale Township*
Liberty Valley Hwy	Bear Creek Drain
Missaukee-Wexford Drain	*Bear Lake Township*
Seaman Drain	Big Kaiser Drain
Cedar Creek Township	Chief Lake Drain
Manton Creek Drain	Gustafson Drain
Manton Lagoon Drain	Schoolhouse Drain
Greenwood Township	Beaver Creek Drain
Briggs Drain	*Brown Township*
Colfax Drain	Chief Lake Drain
Greenwood Drain	*Filer Township*
	Green Lake Drain
Osceola County	*Pleasanton Township*
Burdell Township	Lumley Drain
Burdell Drain #1	*Norman Township*
LeRoy Township	Mud Lake Drain
Beaver Creek Drain	
LeRoy Drain #2	
Rose Lake Township	
Rose Lake Drain	
Rose Lake Drain #1	
Rose Lake Drain #2	
Rose Lake Drain #3	

Table 20.–Access and campground facilities along the Manistee River. Data from: US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service 1983. USFS=US Forest Service.

	Access		Campgrounds				
Sites	Road right of way	Developed site	County	Private	State	USFS	Number of campsites
Mancelona Bridge	X				X		
Cameron Bridge	X				X		
612 Bridge	X				X		
Manistee River Forest Camp 1& 2		X			X		26
Manistee River Camp - 72		X			X		24
T26N, R5W, Sec. 30	X				X		
CCC Camp		X			X		25
T25N, R6W, Sec. 3	X				X		
North Sharon Road	X				X		
West Sharon Road		X			X		
T25N, R7W, Sec. 22	X				X		
M-66 Campground				X			15
Smithville		X			X		19
M-66 Bridge	X				X		
Rainbow Jim		X			X		
Missaukee Bridge		X	X				
Chase Creek		X			X		9
Highway 131 Bridge							
Roadside Park		X			X		
Old 131 Camp		X			X		23
Baxter Camp		X			X		18
Baxter Bridge		X			X		
Indian Trail Camp		X			X		12
Harvey Bridge		X			X		
Sherman Bridge	X				X		
High Bridge		X				X	15
Blacksmith Bayou		X				X	12
Bear Creek		X				X	
Rainbow Bend		X				X	20
Coho Bend				X			30
Udell Rollway						X	23
M-55 Bridge	X				X		
Access 67-1		X			X		
Access 67-5		X			X		
Lakola Road	X		X		X		
Edgetts Bridge		X					
Meadow Brook Bridge		X			X		
Skookum Bridge (2)		X			X		
Walker Bridge	X				X		
Hi School Bridge	X		X				
Silver Creek Campground		X			X		

Table 20.–Continued.

Sites	Access: Road right of way	Access: Developed site	Campgrounds: County	Campgrounds: Private	Campgrounds: State	Campgrounds: USFS	Campgrounds: Number of campsites
Lincoln Bridge Campground		X			X		
Elm Flats		X				X	
Dobson Bridge		X				X	
Peterson Access		X				X	
Peterson Bridge		X			X		
Skookum Bridge	X				X		

Table 21.–Dam inventory, Manistee River system. Data from: Michigan Department of Environmental Quality, Land and Water Management Division. Trib.=tributary.

Dam	River	Town	Range	Section	Head	Acre ft
Crawford						
Lake Margrethe	Portage Creek	26N	4W	8	3	N/A
Kalkaska						
Lutz Dam	Trib. Maple Ck.	25N	7W	12		
Gray Dam	Waterhole Ck.	25N	7W	16	2	
Goulait Dam	Little Silver Ck	25N	7W	27	20	15
Simmons Dam	Trib. Manistee R.	25N	8W	22	8	
Gould Dam	Springfed trib. to Gould Creek	25N	8W	30	2	
Vantol Dam	Bourne Creek	25N	8W	32	3	
Williams Dam	Trib. Manistee R.	25N	8W	31	3	
Condon Dam	Trib. Manistee R.	25N	8W	31		
Ash Dam	Fife Lake outlet	25N	8W	18	2	
Skinner Dam	Inlet Ck.	25N	8W	17		
Goose Creek Imp. Dam	Goose Ck.	27N	5W	1		
Cotton Dam	Collar Ck.	27N	6W	28	2	
Missaukee						
Cannon Creek Dam #1	Big Cannon Ck.	24N	5W	7		
Cannon Creek Dam #2	Big Cannon Ck.	24N	6W	12	4	60
Horseshoe Lake Dam	Big Cannon Ck.	24N	6W	2	11	135
Missaukee Walleye Rearing Pond Dam	Trib. Morrisy Ck.	24N	8W	31	5	
Hamm Creek Dam	Trib. Hamm Ck.	24N	8W	10	3	1
Jenkins Dam	Trib Morrisy Ck.	24N	8W	31	11	10
Wexford						
Malstrom Dam	Trib. N. Br. Pine	21N	10W	35	5	5
Norman Smith Dam	Trib. Spaulding Ck.	21N	10W	23	16	105
Korr Dam	Yates Ck.	21N	12W	23	6	
Carlson Dam #2	Yates Ck.	21N	12W	22	8	
Olga Lake Dam	Coe Ck.	22N	11W	36	5	145
Bayma Dam	Slagle Ck.	22N	11W	17	5	4
Slagle Trout Club Dam	Slagle Ck.	22N	12W	6	6	115
Corlett Dam	Slagle Ck.	22N	12W	6	12	
Manton Millpond Dam	Manton Ck.	23N	9W	4	10	230
Manton Upper Power Dam	Manton Ck.	23N	9W	3	11	260
Brooke Dam	Trib. Soper Ck.	23N	10W	5	8	
Spink Dam	Burkett Ck.	23N	11W	6	30	
McNitt Dam	Trib. Hodenpyl Pd	23N	11W	14	3	2
Carnahan Dam	Ferguson L. Outlet	23N	11W	3		
Barnes Dam	Trib. Adams Ck.	23N	11W	11	17	84
Jackson Dam	Burkett Ck.	23N	11W	7	6	
Von Hofe Dam	Seaton Ck.	23N	12W	32	4	4

Table 21.–Continued.

Dam	River	Town	Range	Section	Head	Acre ft
Wexford continued						
Taylor Dam	East Chase Ck.	24N	9W	26	3	
Woodworth Dam	Trib. Buttermilk Ck.	24N	9W	32	5	6
Parks No. One Dam	Silver Ck.	24N	10W	36	10	
Parks No. Two Dam	Silver Ck.	24N	10W	36	10	
Kerr Upper Dam	Trib. Manistee R.	24N	11W	31	25	25
Kerr Lower Dam	Trib. Manistee River	24N	11W	31	11	5
Guthrie Dam	Wheeler Ck.	24N	11W	31	24	12
Wheeler Ck. Dam	Wheeler Ck.	24N	11W	8	17	892
Nehez Dam	Trib. Fletcher Ck.	24N	12W	5	10	10
Manistee						
Easterling Dam	Pine Ck.	21N	13W	19	4	
Prunski Dam	Trib. Pine R.	21N	13W	27		16
Stronach Dam	Pine River	21N	13W	16	18	180
Sunnybrook Dam	Pine River	21N	13W	32		
Manistee Sport & Fishing Club Dam	Pine Ck.	21N	14W	8	2	
Manistee marsh Dam	Manistee River	21N	16W	6		
Tippy Dam	Manistee River	22N	13W	31	56	39,500
Schneiders Dam	Chief Creek	22N	15W	16	5	60
Hodenpyl Dam	Manistee River	23N	12W	30	68	60,700
Benton Dam	Lemon Creek	23N	13W	6	4	
Nimitalo’s Dam	Cedar Ck.	23N	14W	24	4	
Beneke Dam	Unnamed trib.	23N	14W	35		
Copemish Dam	First Ck.	24N	13W	18	8	160
Grand Traverse						
Headquarters Lake Dam	Fife Lake outlet	25N	9W	26	5	190
Walton Dam	Walton Outlet Ck.	25N	9W	33	3	12
Osceola						
Hatt Dam	Little Beaver Ck.	19N	10W	19	4	10
Barztel Dam	Trib. Pine River	19N	10W	6		
Lake						
Crystal Springs Trout Ranch Dam	Unnamed trib to Pine R.	19N	11W	3	7	
Streator Dam	Silver Ck.	20N	11W	16		

Table 22.–Value estimates for annual turbine mortalities at Hodenpyl and Tippy dams. Entrainment and mortality data from: Lawler, Matusky & Skelly Engineers, 1991. *threatened species. **average weight of each fish is 2.85 pounds.

Species	Average length (cm)	Percent composition	Entrained	Mortality	Replacement value/fish	Restitution value/fish	Total replacement value	Total restitution value
TIPPY								
Golden redhorse	33.4	0.3	396	78	$0.40	$5.00	$31.20	$390
River redhorse*	36.1	0.3	396	78	$0.40	$5.00	$31.20	$390
Shorthead redhorse	31.6	1.0	1319	259	$0.40	$5.00	$103.60	$1,295
White sucker	38.3	32.0	42,203	8,272	$0.50	$5.00	$4,136.00	$41,360
Black crappie	5.2	3.1	4,088	801	$0.43	$10.00	$344.43	$8,010
Bluegill	14.1	3.8	5,012	982	$0.86	$10.00	$844.52	$9,820
Green sunfish	12.7	0.7	923	181	$0.69	$10.00	$124.89	$1,810
Pumpkinseed	12.0	1.0	1,319	259	$0.66	$10.00	$170.94	$2,590
Rock bass	14.0	3.4	4,484	879	$0.85	$5.00	$747.15	$4,395
Smallmouth bass	24.7	17.2	22,684	4,446	$2.89	$10.00	$12,848.94	$44,460
Sunfish species	10.5	0.3	396	78	$0.62	$10.00	$48.36	$780
Gizzard shad	33.6	3.1	4,088	801	$0.75	$5.00	$200.25	$4,005
Spottail shiner	10.5	0.3	396	78	$0.06	$5.00	$4.68	$390
Burbot	17.3	0.7	923	181	$1.00	$5.00	$181.00	$905
Logperch	4.5	0.3	396	78	$0.06	$5.00	$4.68	$390
Walleye	36.1	3.4	4,484	879	$3.71	$10.00	$3,261.09	$8,790
Yellow perch	11.1	2.1	2,770	543	$0.32	$10.00	$173.76	$5,430
Trout-perch	7.5	14.4	18,991	3,722	$0.06	$5.00	$223.32	$18,610
Brown trout	34.5	10.0	13,188	2,585	$1.89	$10.00	$4,885.65	$25,850
Rainbow trout	12.0	0.3	396	78	$0.38	$10.00	$30.42	$780
Unidentified	10.5	2.1	2,770	543	$0.06	$5.00	$32.58	$2,715
Totals			31,622	25,801			$28,427.88	$183,165

Table 22.–Continued.

Species	Average length (cm)	Percent composition	Entrained	Mortality	Replacement value/fish	Restitution value/fish	Total replacement value	Total restitution value
HODENPYL								
Black crappie	4.5	7.4	11,177	2,191	$0.39	$10.00	$854.49	
Bluegill	4.2	0.8	1,208	236	$0.34	$10.00	$80.24	
Chestnut lamprey	18.2	0.2	302	59	$0.06	$0.00	$3.54	
Logperch	4.3	3.6	5,438	1,066	$0.06	$5.00	$63.96	
Northern pike	59.5	0.2	302	59	$12.60	$30.00**	$743.40	
Rock bass	12.0	0.9	1,359	266	$0.66	$5.00	$175.56	
Smallmouth bass	3.7	4.2	6,344	1,243	$0.40	$10.00	$497.20	
Spottail shiner	6.8	2.8	4,229	829	$0.06	$5.00	$49.74	
Trout-perch	5.4	75.0	113,283	22,203	$0.06	$5.00	$1,332.18	
Walleye	21.3	0.8	1,208	236	$2.01	$10.00	$474.36	
Yellow perch	7.8	3.3	4,984	977	$0.21	$10.00	$205.17	
Centrarchidae	4.6	0.2	302	59	$0.36	$10.00	$21.24	
Unidentified	3.0	0.6	906	178	$0.06	$5.00	$10.68	
Totals			151,042	29,602			$4,511.76	

Table 23.–National Pollution Discharge Elimination System permits issued in the Manistee River watershed. Data from: Michigan Department of Environmental Quality, Surface Water Quality Division.

Permittee	Watercourse
Flowing Well Trout Farm	North Br. Manistee River
MDNR - Harrietta State Fish Hatchery	Slagle Creek
McNitt Trout Farm	Slagle Creek
M R Products, Inc.	Copemish Pond (First Creek)
Consumers Energy Co - Hodenpyl hydroelectric facility	Manistee River
Consumers Energy Co - Tippy hydroelectric facility	Manistee River
Packaging Corporation of America	Manistee Lake
Morton Salt	Manistee Lake
AKZO Salt	Manistee Lake
Morton International	Manistee Lake
Martin Marietta	Manistee Lake
City of Manistee - Waste Water Treatment Plant	Manistee Lake

Table 24.–Act 307 sites in the Manistee River watershed, by county, as of 1991. Data from: Michigan Department of Environmental Quality, Environmental Response Division.

County	Oil & gas related	Storage tanks	Industry	Other	Unknown	Total
Crawford	--	2	--	--	--	2
Kalkaska	7	1	--	1	--	9
Missaukee	--	--	--	--	1	1
Wexford	9	2	1	4	2	18
Manistee	30	5	10	4	11	60
Gr. Trav.	10	1	--	--	1	12
Osceola	--	1	--	--	1	2
Lake	--	--	--	--	1	1
Totals	56	12	11	9	17	105

RIVER SEGMENTS

Seg 1 - Headwaters to M-72
Seg 2 - M-72 to Smithville (M-66)
Seg 3 - Smithville (M-66) to M-115 Bridge
Seg 4 - Hodenpyl Dam to Red Bridge (Coates Hwy)
Seg 5 - Tippy Dam to M-55 Bridge
Seg 6 - North Branch Manistee River
Seg 7 - Bear Creek
Seg 8 - Pine River

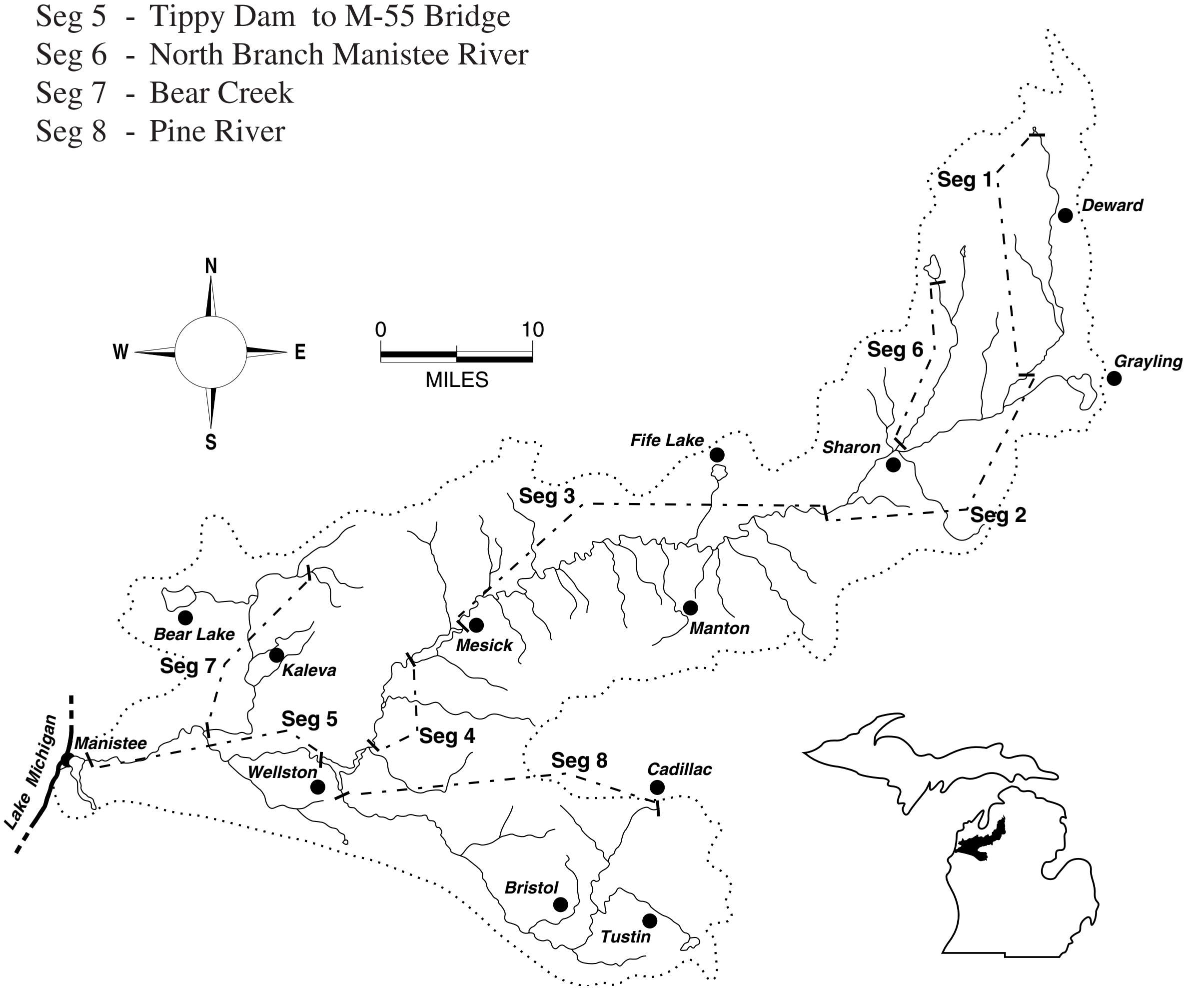


Figure 1.–The Manistee River watershed in northwestern lower Michigan.

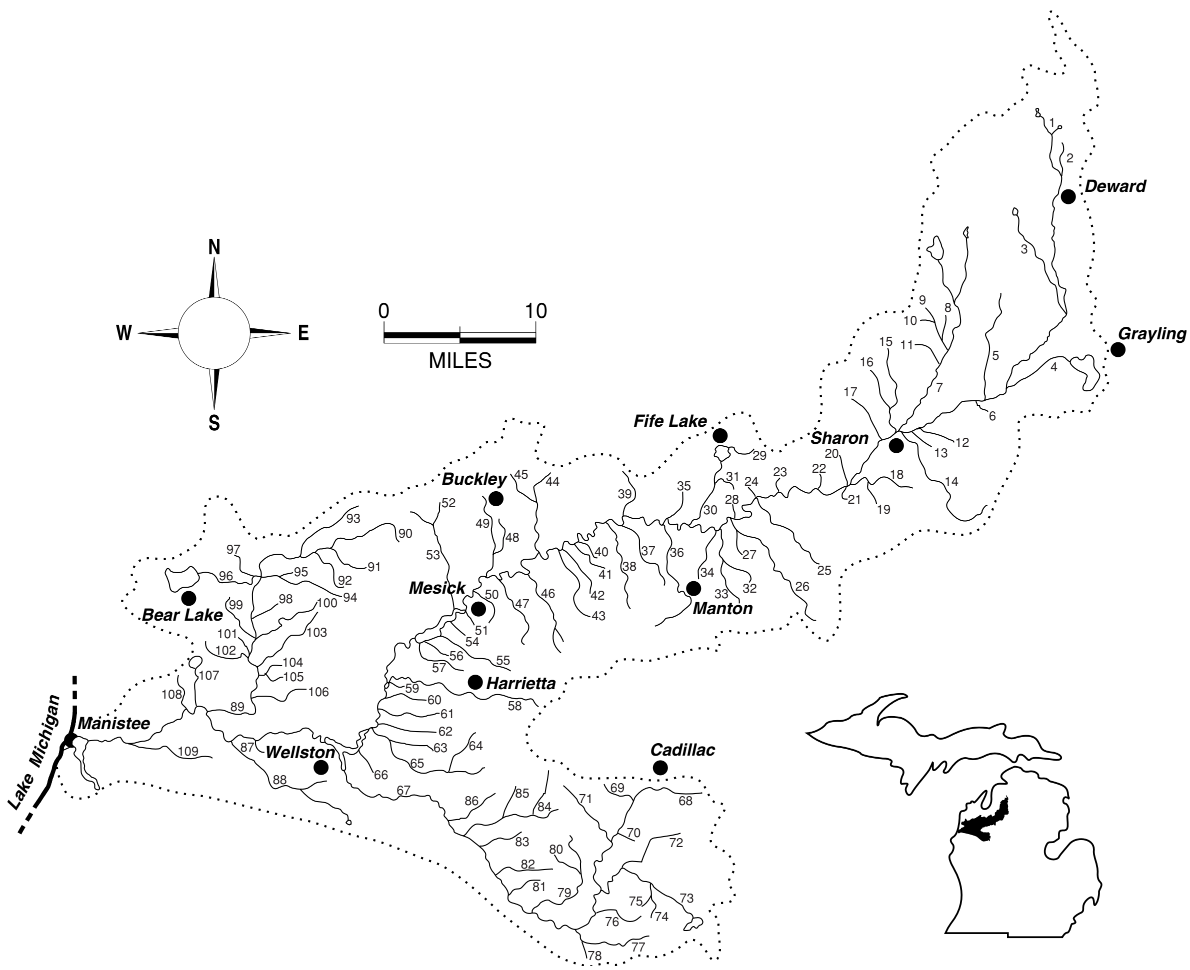


Figure 2.–Major tributaries of the Manistee River.

1. Deer Lake Outlet
2. Frenchman's Creek
3. Goose Creek
4. Portage Creek
5. Black Creek
6. Clear Creek
7. North Branch Manistee
8. Flowing Well Creek
9. Morrison Creek
10. Collar Creek
11. Sands Creek
12. Devil Creek
13. Little Devil Creek
14. Cannon Creek
15. Pierson Creek
16. Willow Creek
17. Maple Creek
18. Little Cannon Creek
19. Silver Creek
20. Waterhole Creek
21. Filer Creek
22. Nelson Creek
23. Spring Creek
24. Bourne Creek
25. Ham Creek
26. Hopkins Creek
27. Voice Creek
28. Bridson Creek
29. Fife Lake Inlet
30. Fife Lake Outlet
31. Gould Creek
32. Golden Creek
33. Morrisy Creek
34. Chase Creek
35. Walton Outlet
36. Manton (Cedar) Creek
37. Buttermilk Creek
38. Silver Creek
39. Sands Creek
40. Apple Creek
41. Blind Creek
42. Filer Creek
43. Soper Creek
44. Anderson Creek
45. West Branch Anderson Creek
46. Adams Creek
47. Cole Creek
48. East Branch Wheeler Creek
49. Wheeler Creek
50. Burkett Creek
51. Preston Creek
52. Cotton Creek
53. Fletcher Creek
54. Cripple Creek
55. Small Creek
56. Tar Creek
57. Seaton Creek
58. Slagle Creek
59. Dead Creek
60. Cedar Creek
61. Arguilla Creek
62. Hinton Creek
63. Sands Creek
64. Johnson Creek
65. Peterson Creek
66. Snyders Creek
67. Pine River
68. North Branch Pine River
69. Spalding Creek
70. Sixteen Creek
71. Fairchild (Negro) Creek
72. East Branch Pine River
73. Rose Lake Outlet
74. Edgett Creek
75. Diamond Lake Outlet
76. Sprague Creek
77. Beaver Creek
78. Little Beaver Creek
79. Coe Creek
80. Dyer Creek
81. Sellars Creek
82. Silver Creek
83. Elm Creek
84. Poplar Creek
85. Dowling Creek
86. Hoxie Creek
87. Sylvan Creek
88. Pine Creek
89. Bear Creek
90. First Creek
91. Second or Hatches Creek
92. Third Creek
93. Dutchman Creek
94. Lemon Creek
95. Healy Lake Outlet
96. Little Bear Creek
97. Green's Creek
98. Halls Creek
99. Arner Creek
100. Big Beaver Creek
101. Williamson Creek
102. Little Beaver Creek
103. Cedar Creek
104. Chicken Creek
105. Podunk Creek
106. Boswell Creek
107. Chief Creek
108. Sickle Creek
109. Claybank Creek

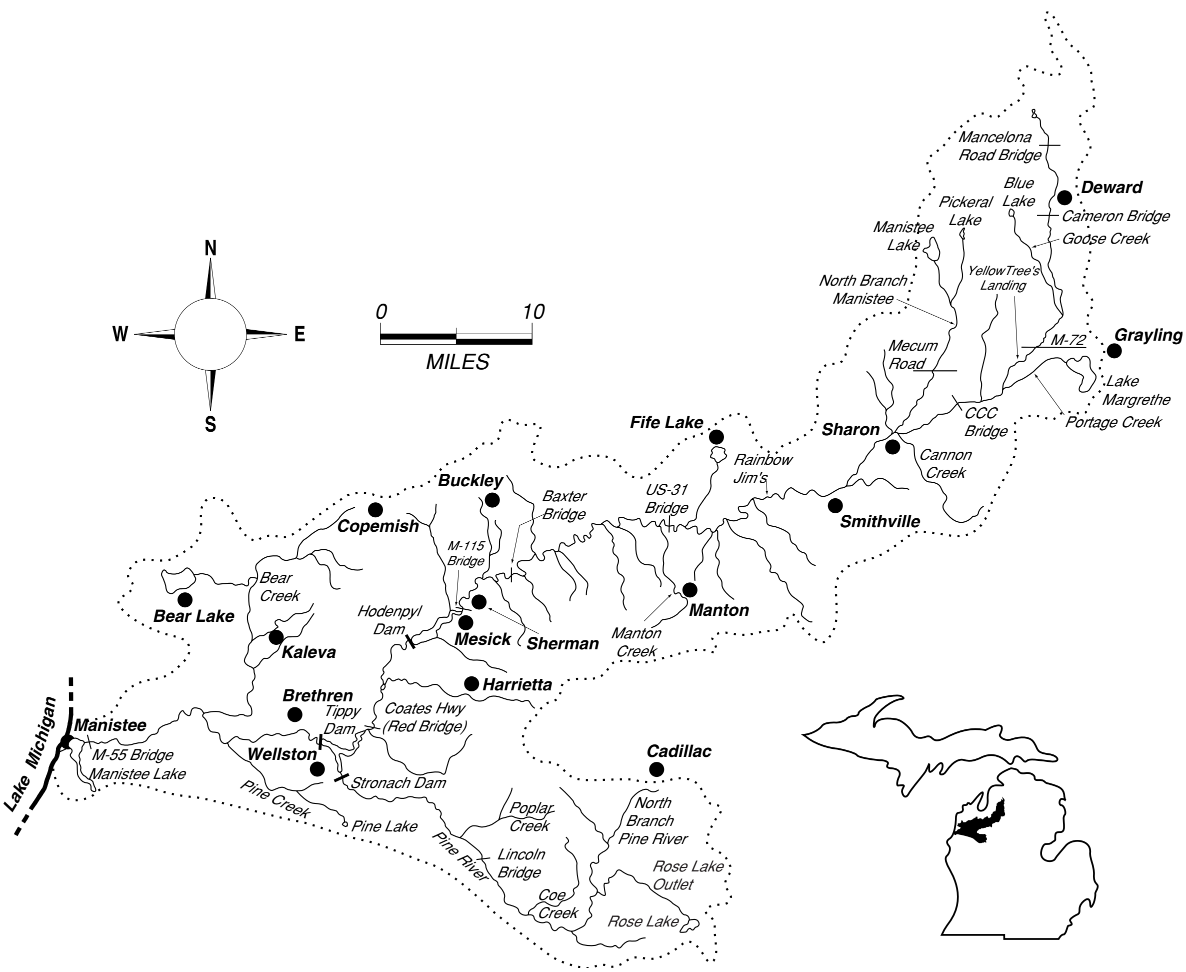


Figure 3.–General sites within watershed.

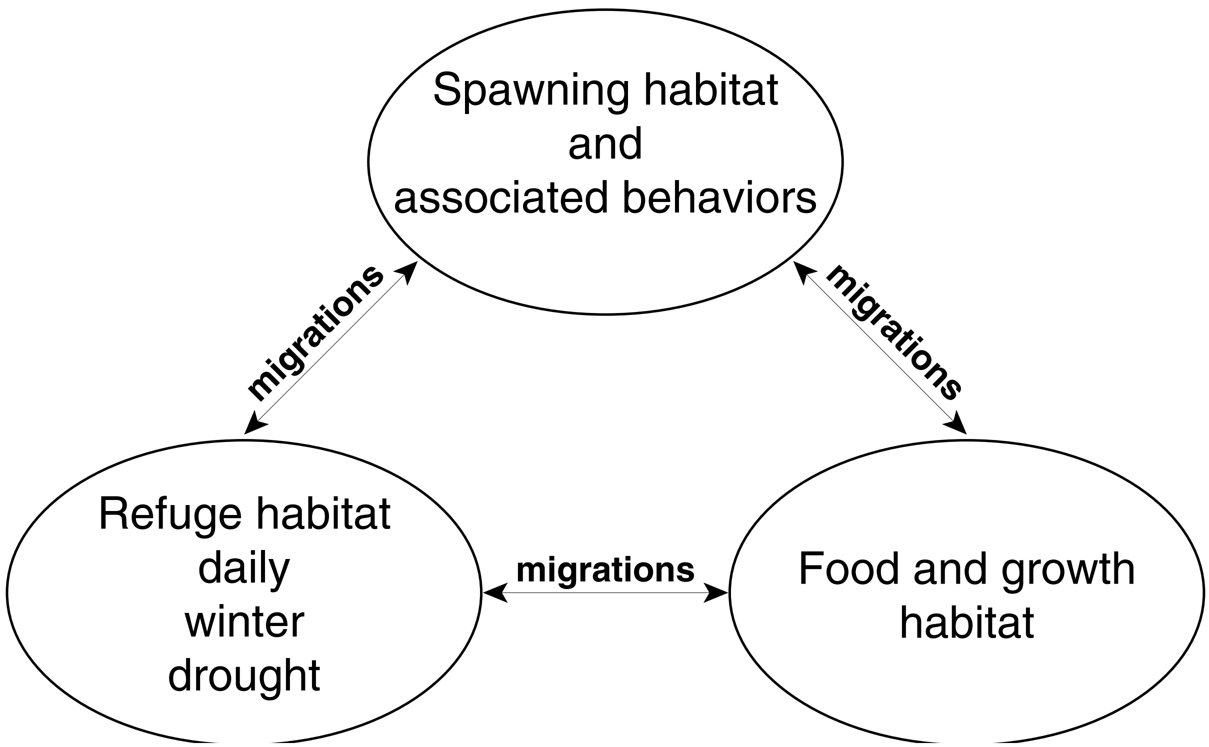


Figure 4.–The basic life cycle of stream fish with respect to habitat use (adapted from Schlosser 1991).

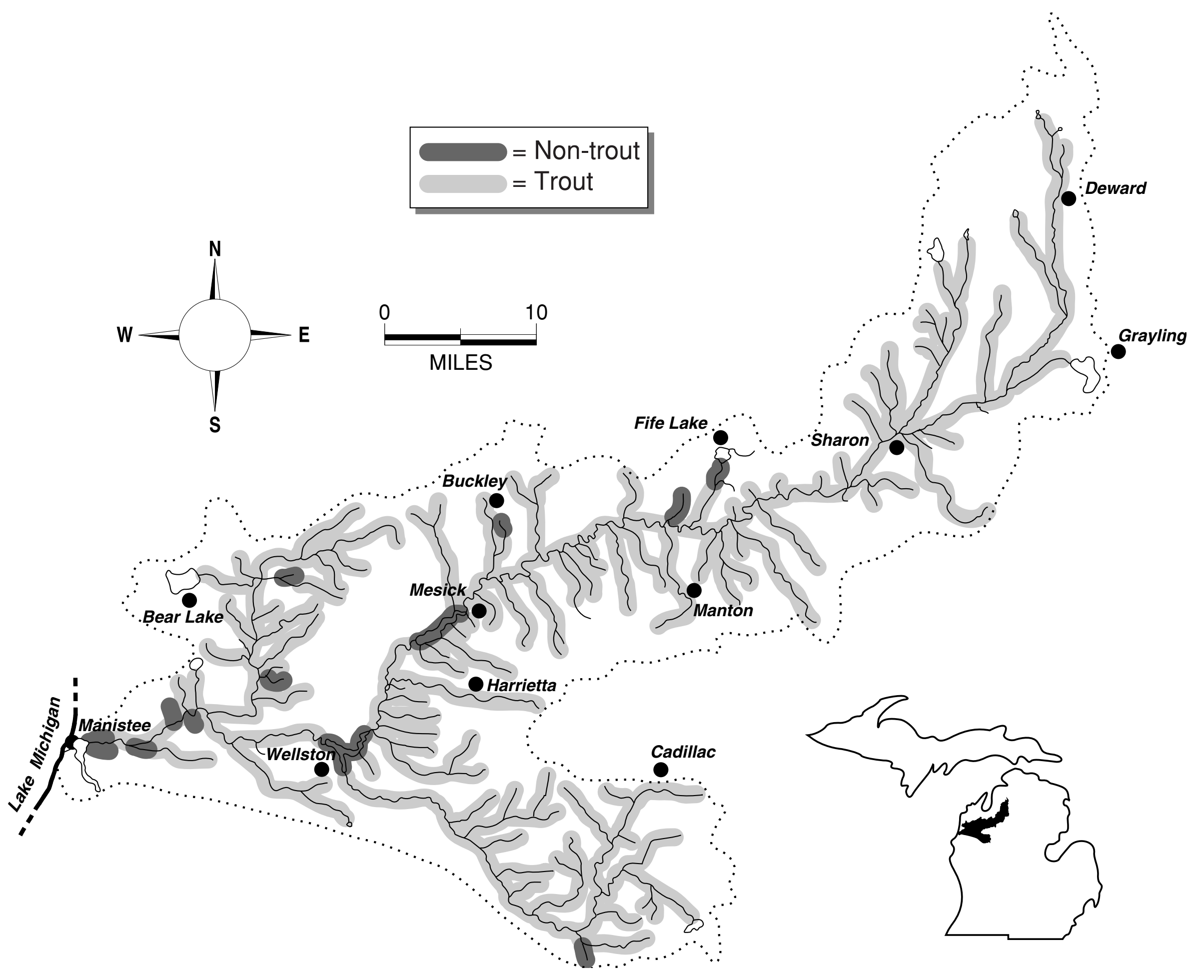


Figure 5.–Designated trout streams in the Manistee River watershed. Data from Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division.

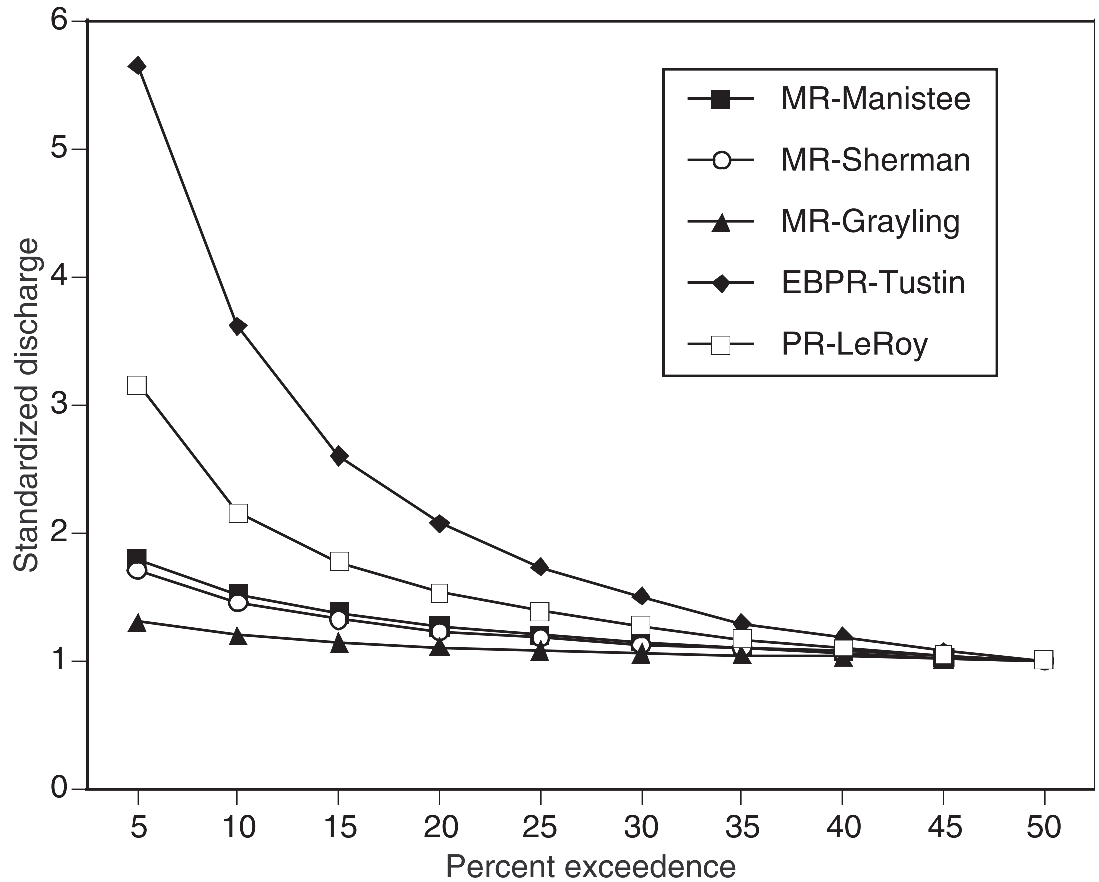


Figure 6.–Flow duration curves for selected sites on the Manistee and Pine Rivers. Information from United States Geological Survey for period of record.

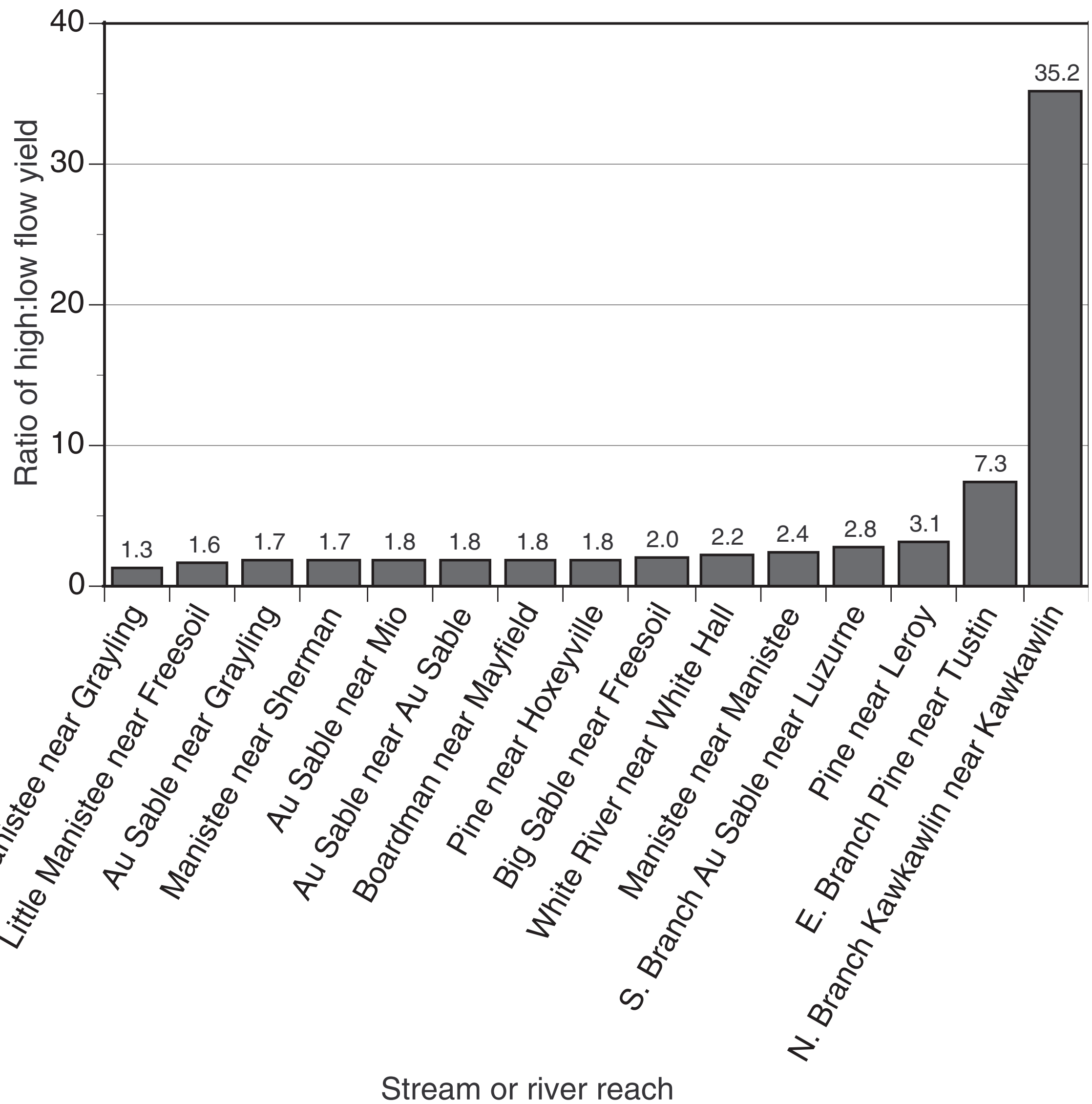


Figure 7.–Ratio of high:low flow yields for selected Michigan rivers. Data from Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division.

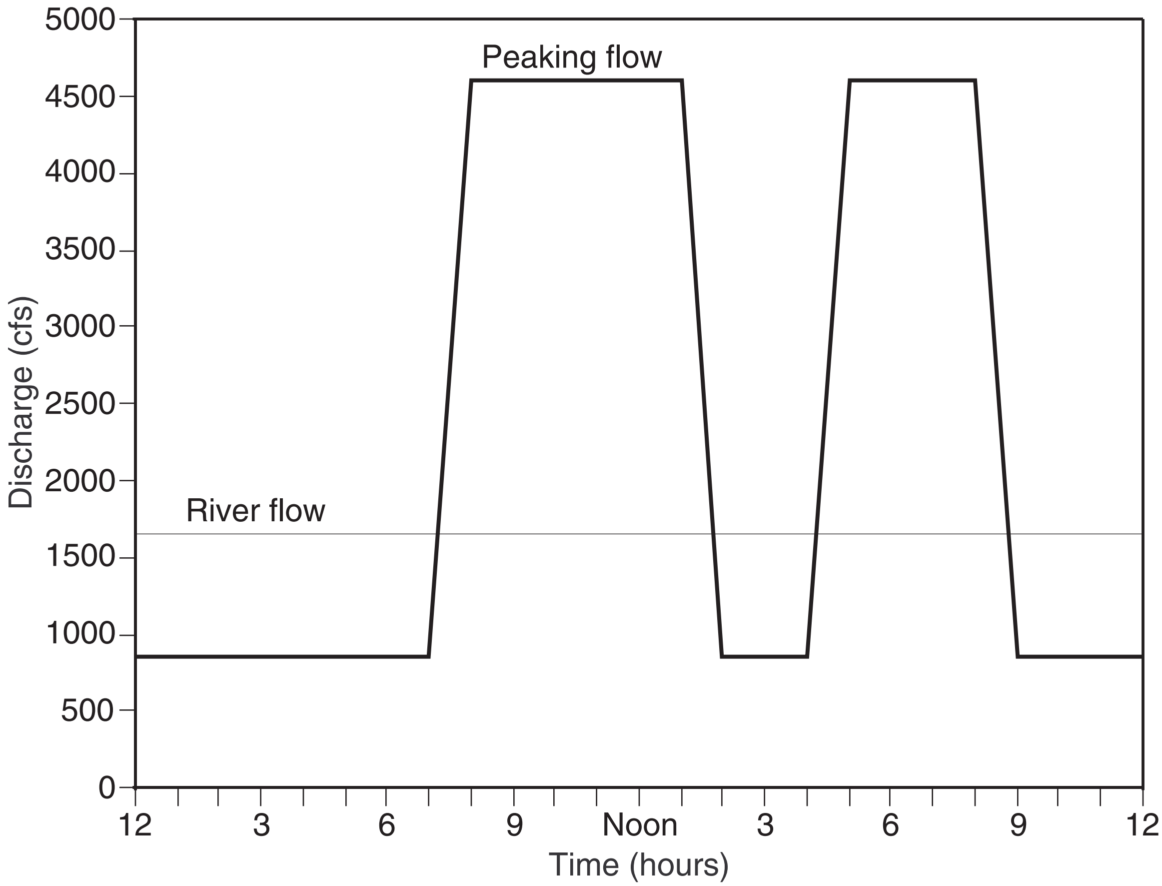


Figure 8.–Typical daily peaking flow pattern at Tippy Dam.

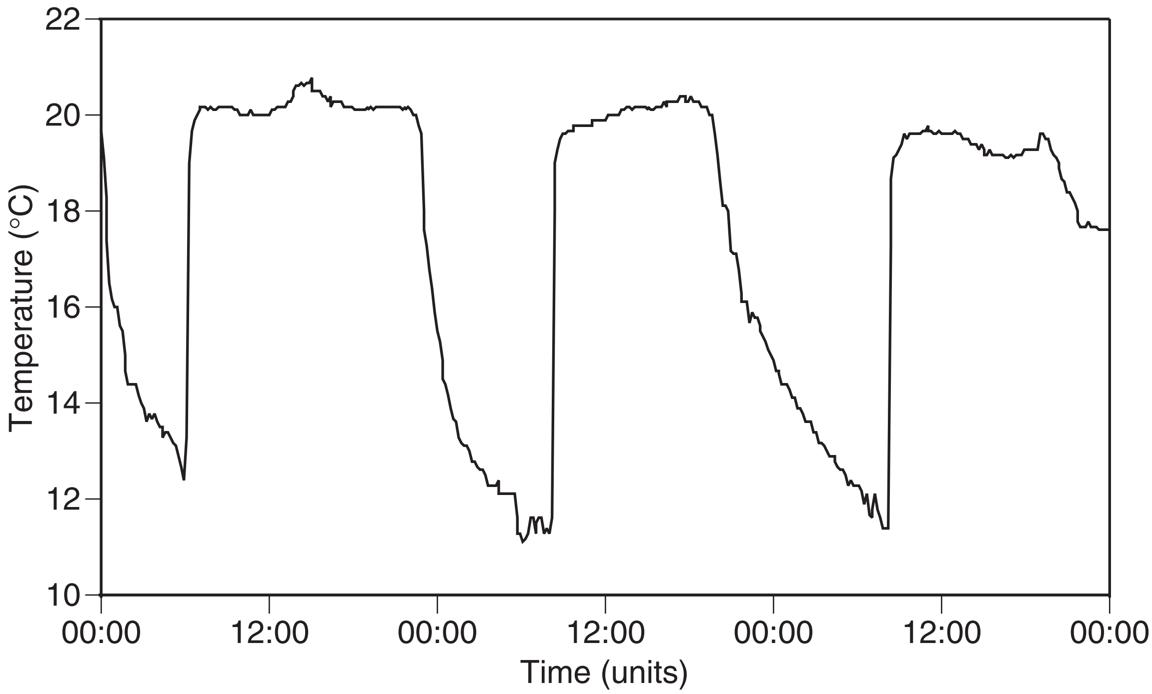


Figure 9.–Temperature patterns at Alcona peaking project on the Au Sable River, Michigan.

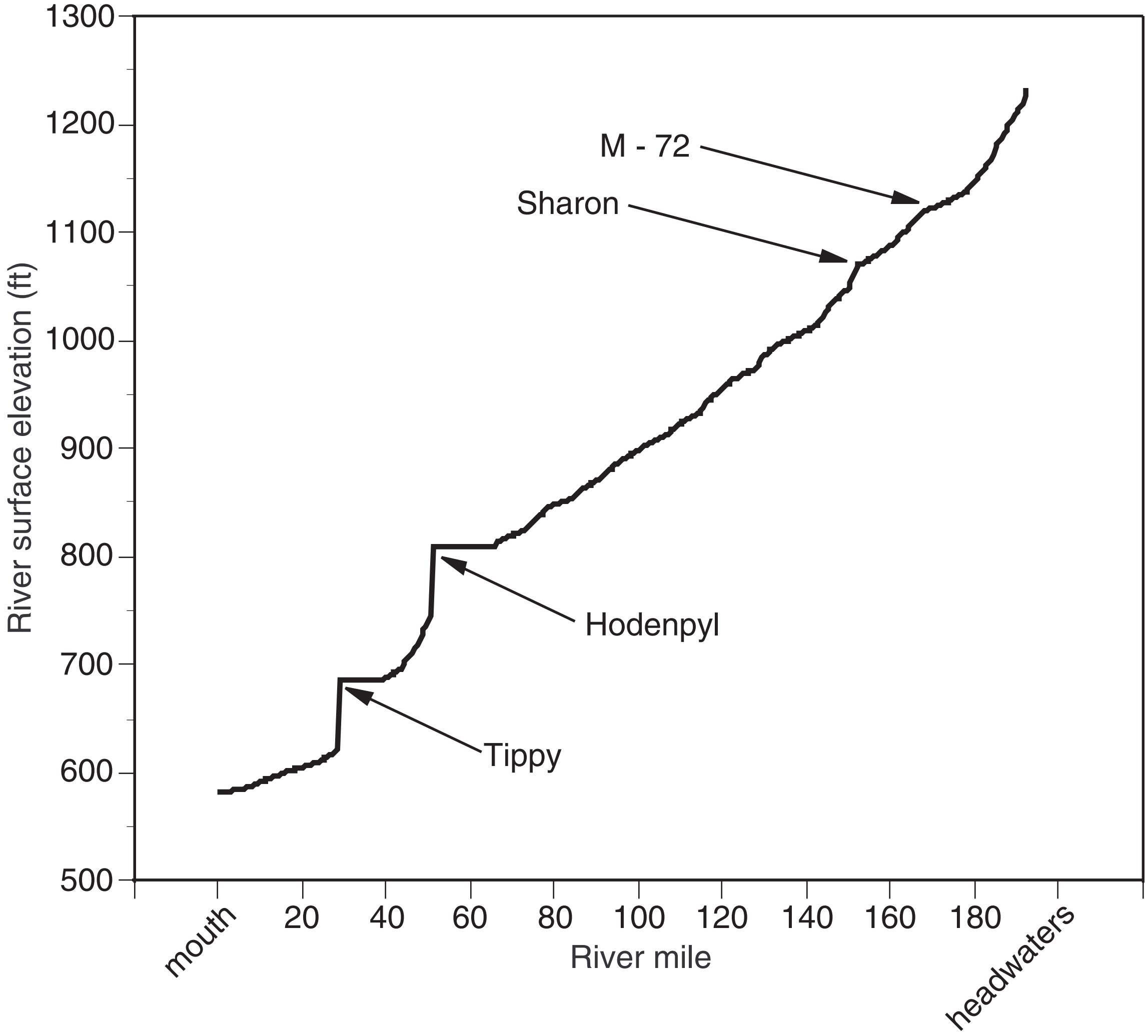


Figure 10.–Gradient (elevation change in ft/mi) of the Manistee River.

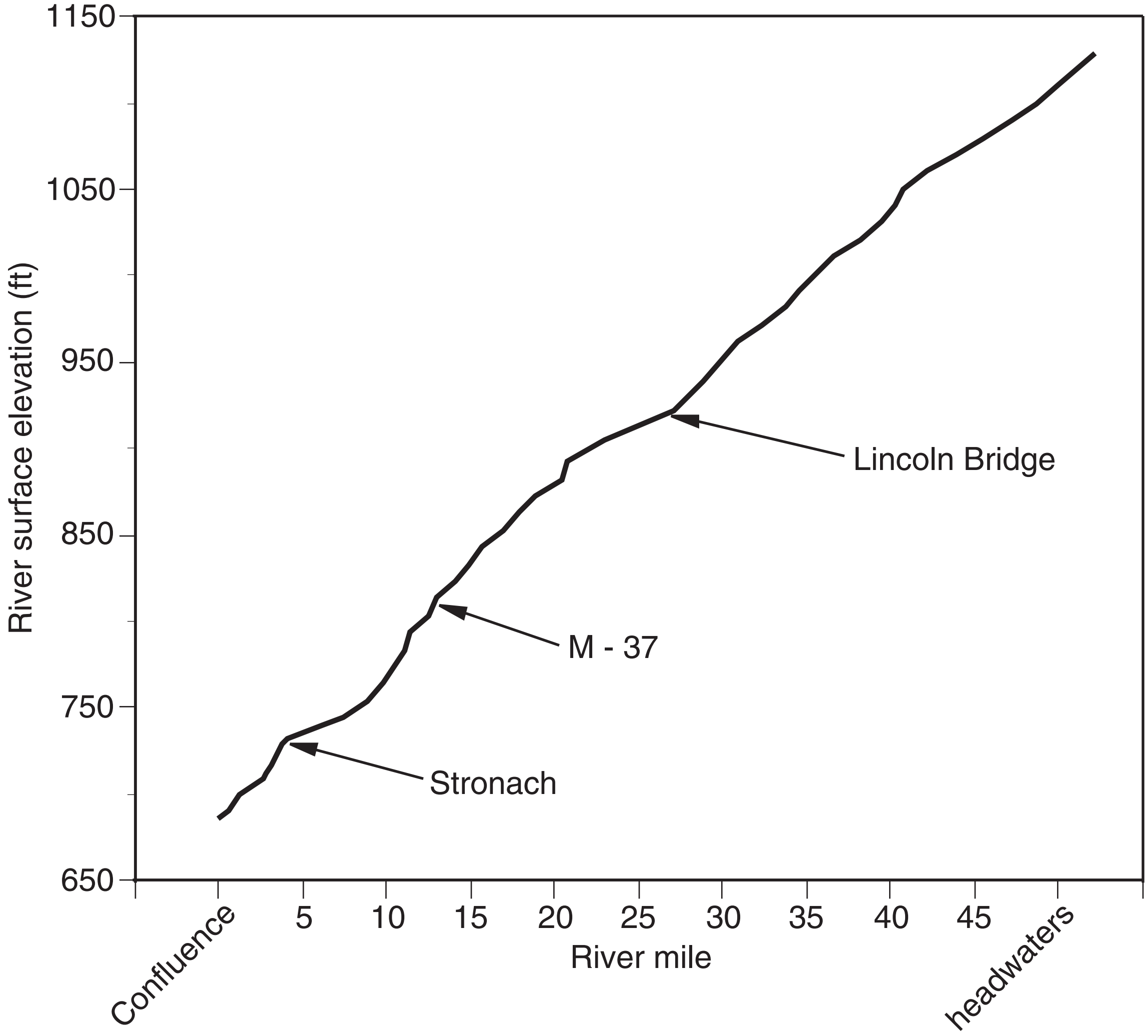
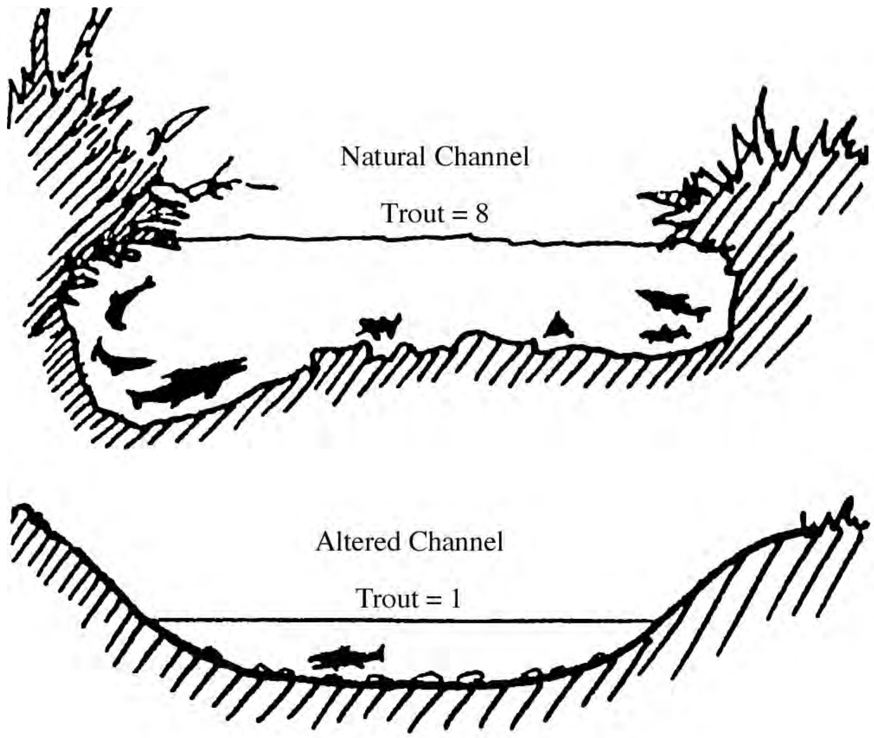
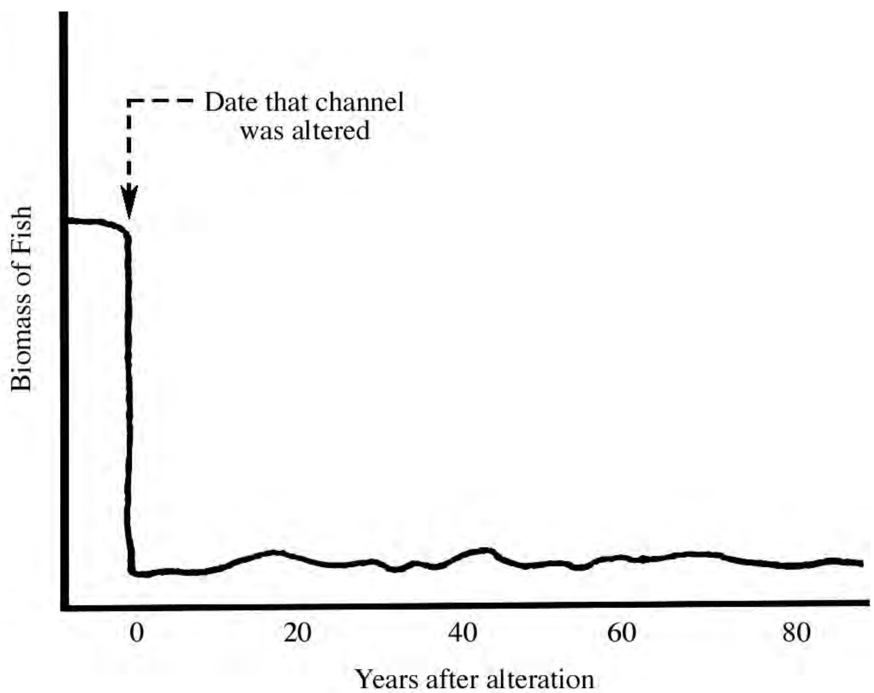


Figure 11.–Gradient (elevation change in ft/mi) of the Pine River.



In Idaho streams, undisturbed channels held 8 times greater biomass of trout on the average.



Over 80 years after channelization, biomass of fish remains 80 to 90 percent below original levels.

Figure 12.–Natural and altered channel-cross sections and trout biomass (from Gebhards 1973).

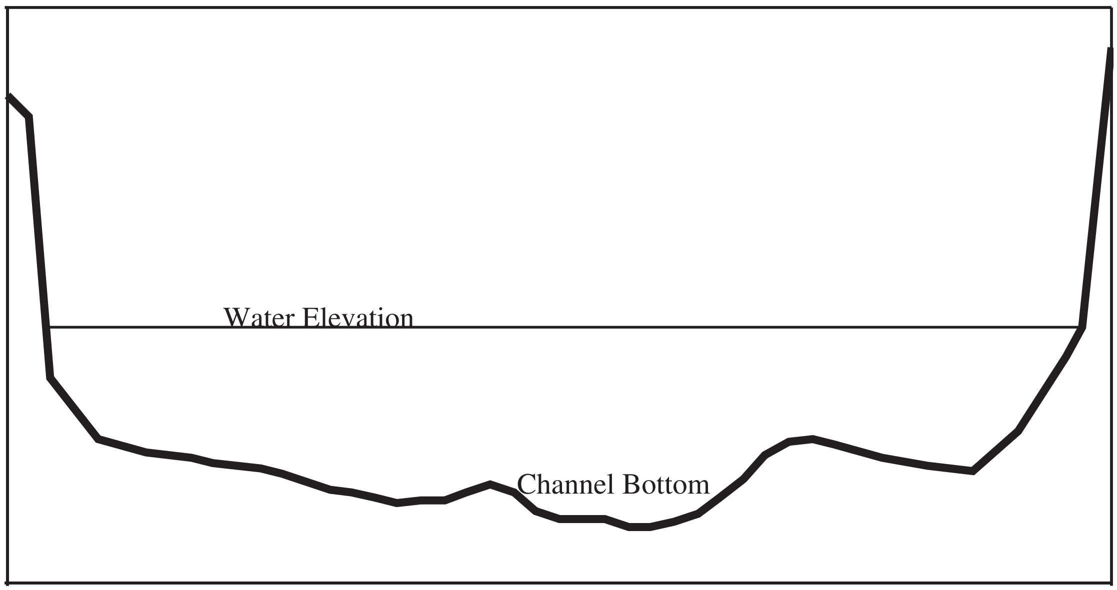


Figure 13a.–Degraded mainstem channel-cross section below Tippy Dam.

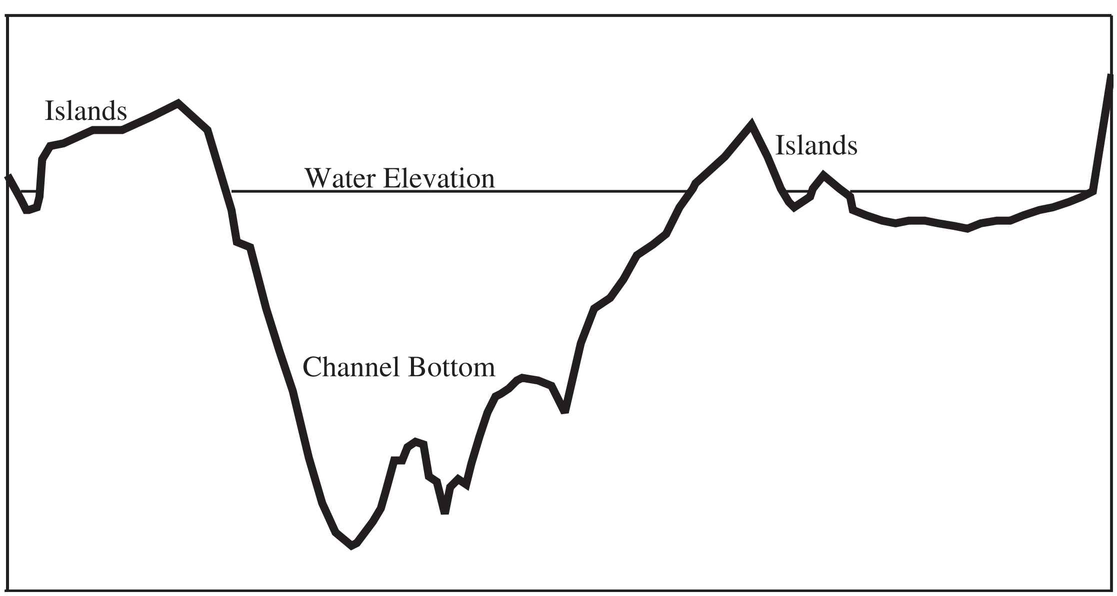


Figure 13b.–Aggraded mainstem channel-cross section below Tippy Dam.

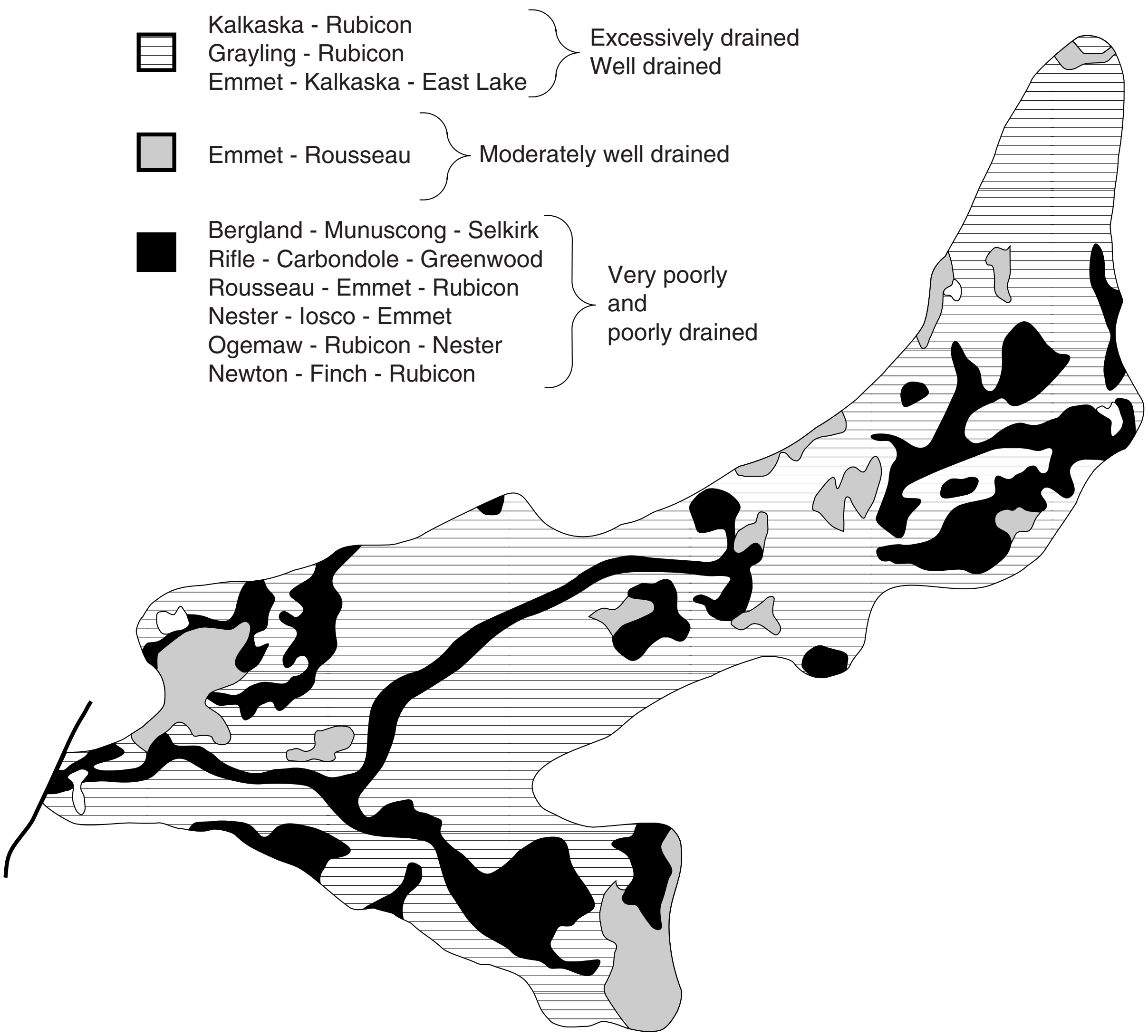


Figure 14.–Soil associations in the Manistee River watershed. Source: U.S. Department of Agriculture, U.S. Forest Service, Manistee River Wild and Scenic River Final Study Report and Environmental Impact Statement.

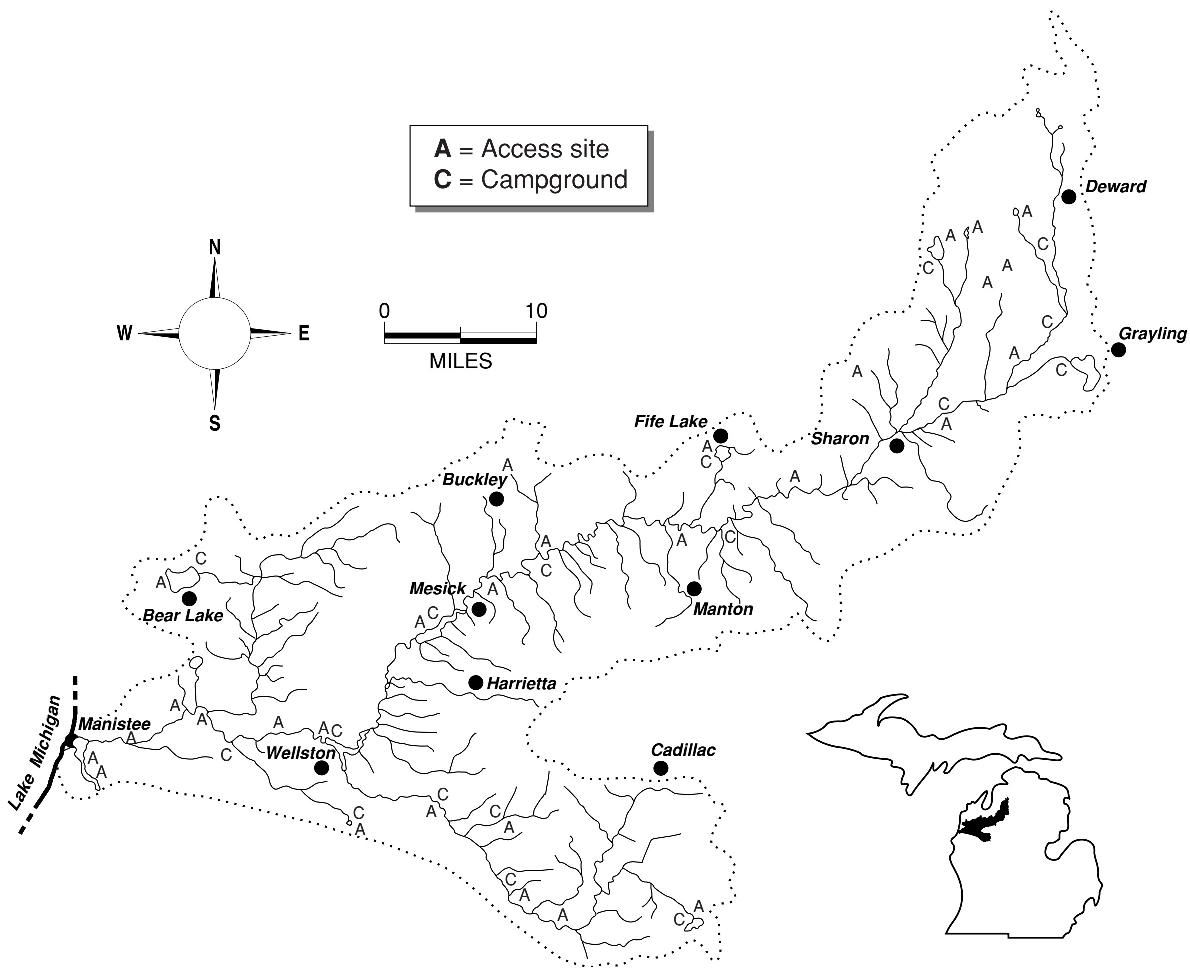


Figure 15.–Public access site and campground locations in the Manistee River watershed. Data from Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Parks and Recreation and United States

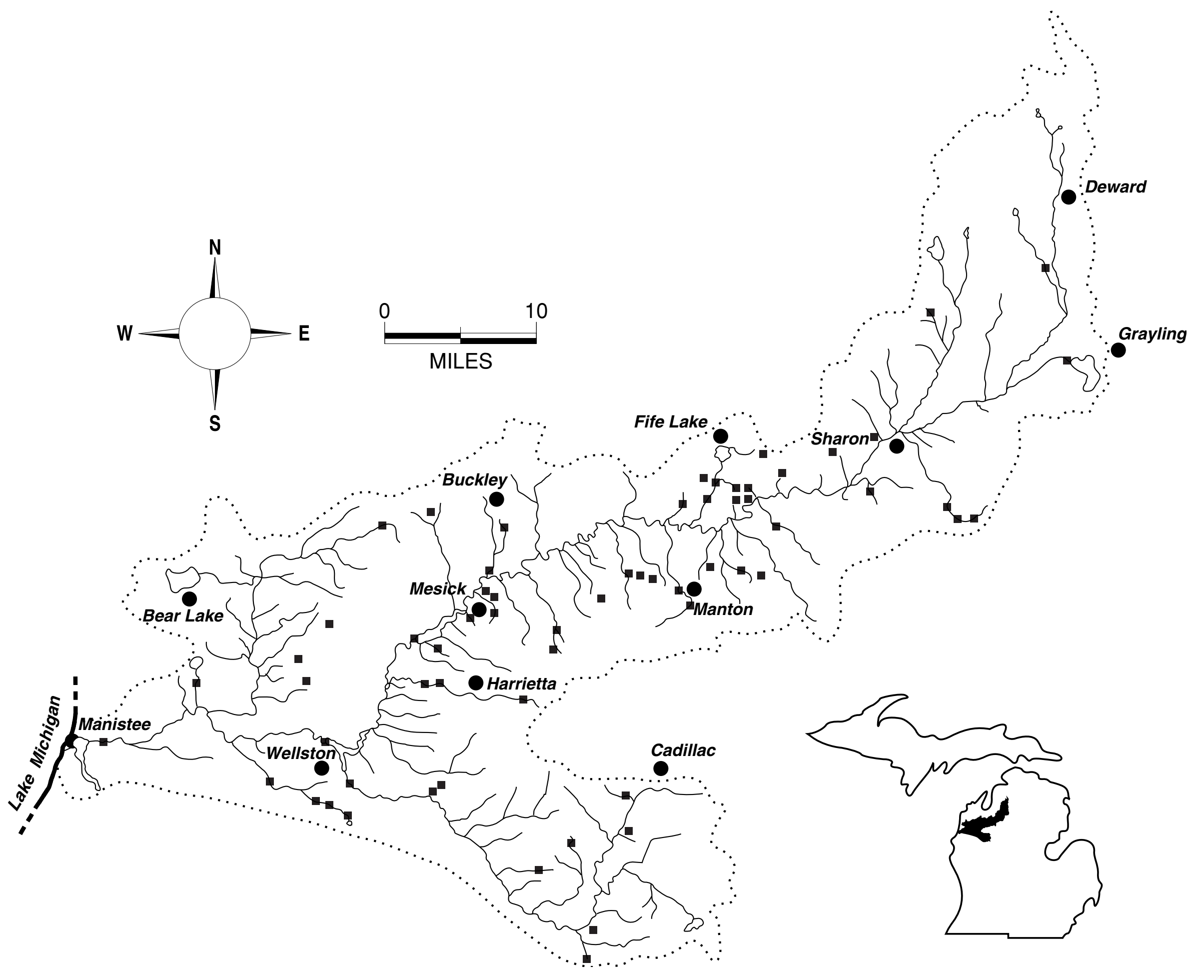


Figure 16.–Location of dams in the Manistee River watershed.

Michigan DNR

STATE OF MICHIGAN
DEPARTMENT OF NATURAL RESOURCES

Number 21 June 1998

Manistee River Assessment Appendix

Thomas J. Rozich

www.dnr.state.mi.us

FISHERIES DIVISION
SPECIAL REPORT

MICHIGAN DEPARTMENT OF NATURAL RESOURCES
FISHERIES DIVISION

Fisheries Special Report 21
June 1998

Manistee River Assessment
Appendix

Thomas J. Rozich

Michigan DNR
Printed under authority of Michigan Department of Natural Resources
Total number of copies printed 375 — Total cost $1453.93 — Cost per copy $3.88

Appendix I
Distribution Maps of Fish Species

This appendix contains maps of known past and present fish distributions within the Manistee River watershed. The distributions of fish species were compiled from records located at the University of Michigan, Museums Fisheries Library, Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Institute for Fisheries Research, and offices in Cadillac and Grayling. Scientific names and phylogenic order follow Robins et al. (1991). Species that are listed under Michigan's Endangered Species Act (Part 365, Endangered Species Protection, of the Natural Resource and Environmental Protection Act, Act 451 of the Public Acts of 1994), their status follows their scientific name. Categories are declining, rare, threatened, endangered, extinct, and locally extinct.

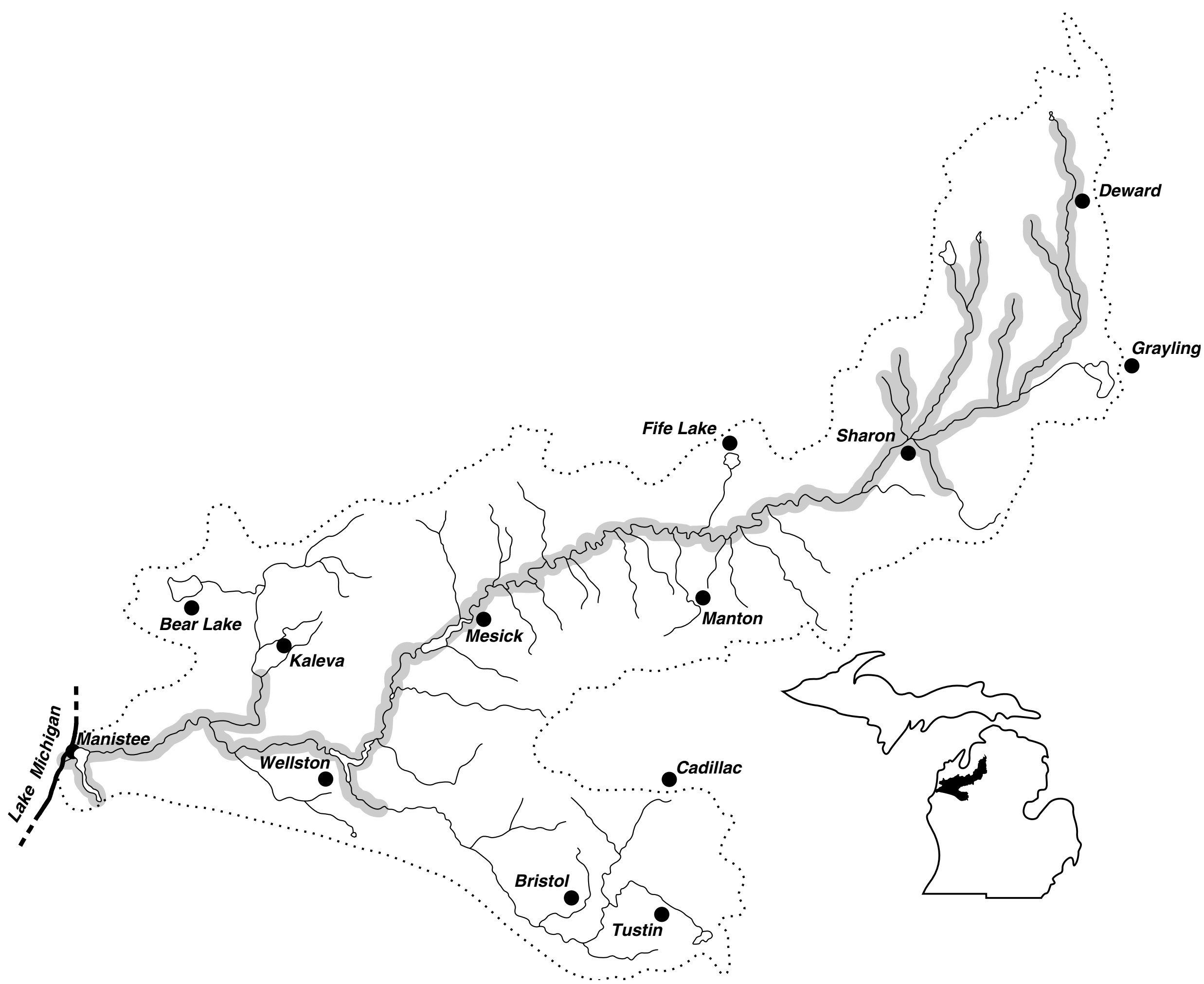
Habitat descriptions were compiled from The Fishes of Ohio (Trautman 1982), Freshwater Fishes of Canada (Scott and Crossman 1973), Fishes of Wisconsin (Becker 1983), Fishes of Missouri (Pflieger 1975), and Fishes of the Great Lakes Region (Hubbs and Lagler 1947).

Chestnut lamprey (*Ichthyomyzon castaneus*)

Habitat:

feeding - stable substrate of sand and silt with light growth of *chara* or quiet backwaters of muck and silt with dense rooted vegetation
- moderate current
- clear moderate-size water

spawning - moderate-size stream
- nest builder

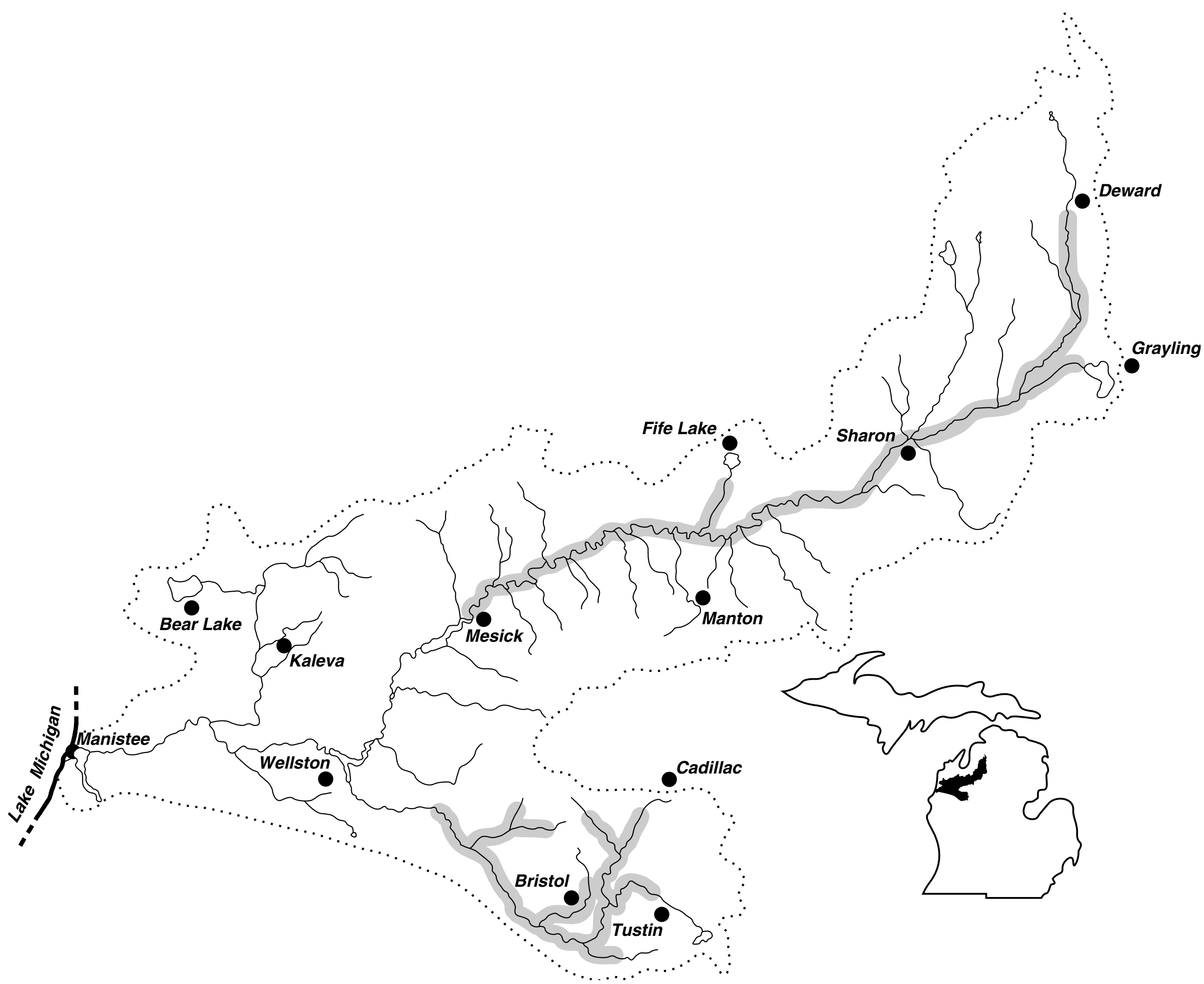


Northern brook lamprey (*Ichthyomyzon fossor*)

Habitat:

feeding - young: low gradient, substrate with bars and beds of mixed sand and organic debris
- moderately warm water

spawning - clear, high gradient streams (<15 feet wide)
- riffles with sand or gravel substrate



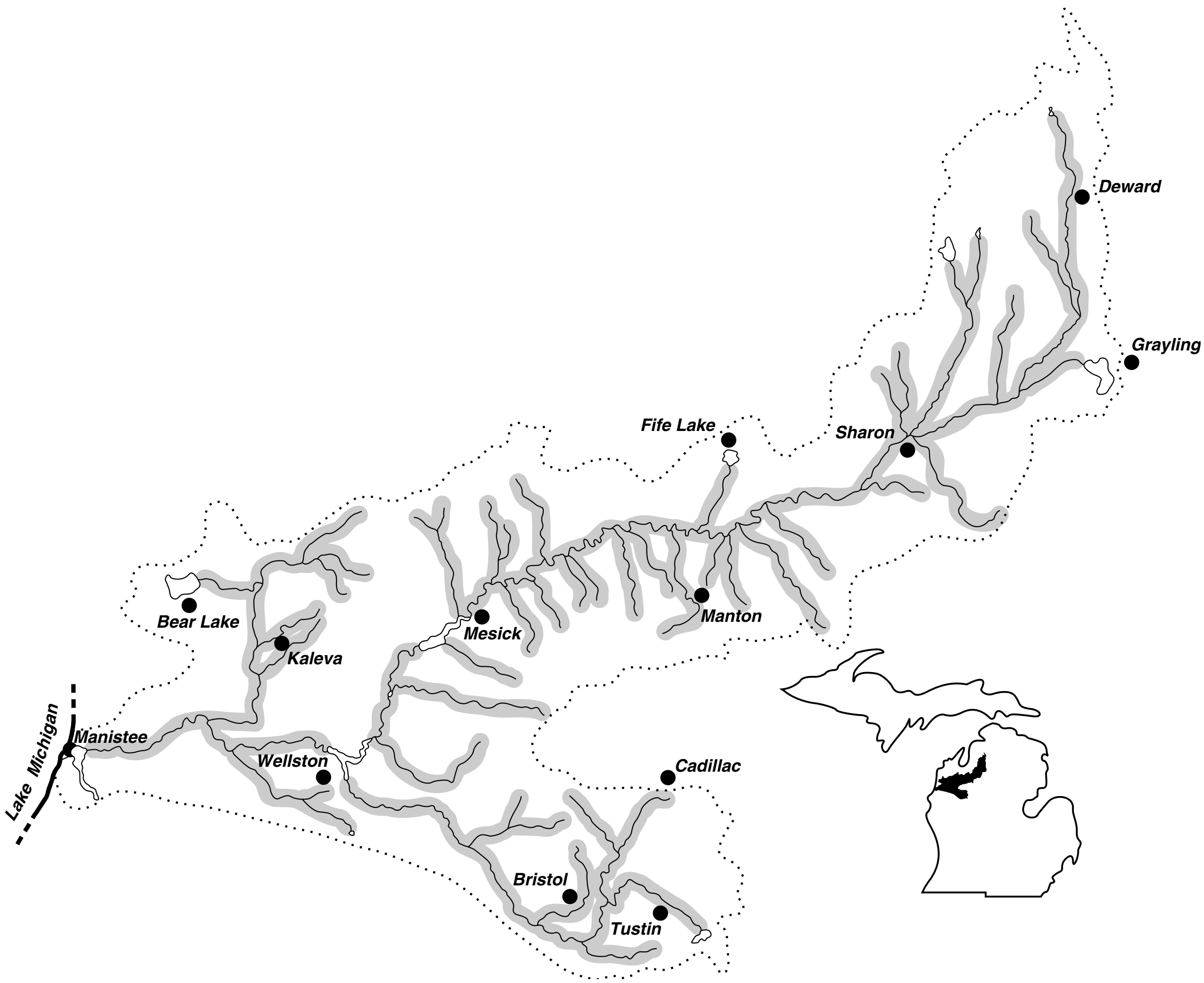
American brook lamprey (*Lampetra appendix*)

Habitat:

feeding - young: low gradient, substrate with bars and beds of mixed sand and organic debris
- clear cool stream water, sensitive to turbidity

spawning - clear, high gradient streams (>15 feet wide)
- cold water
- gravel substrate

winter refuge - sand or silt substrate for amnocoetes

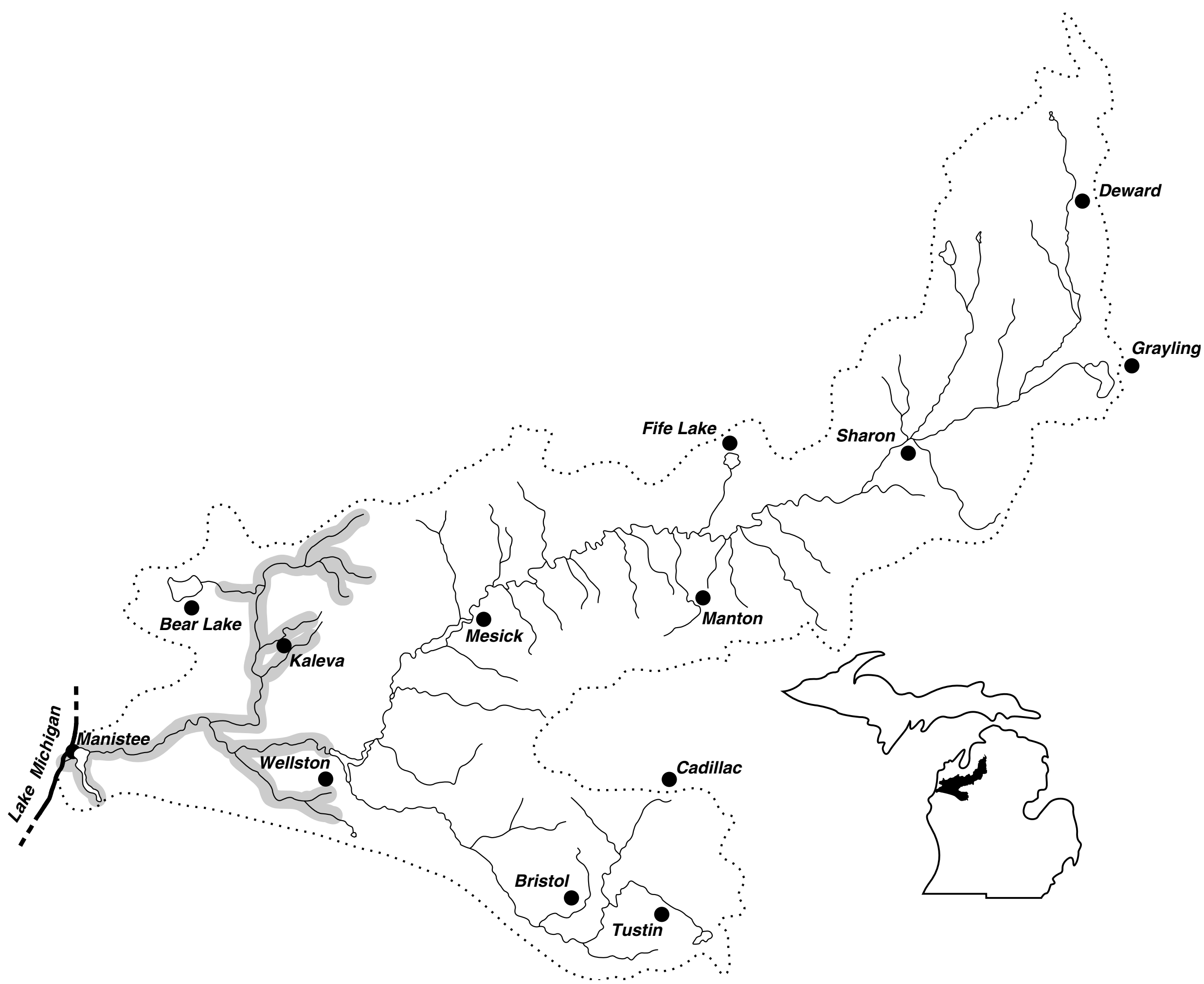


Sea lamprey (*Petromyzon marinus*)

Habitat:

feeding - young: substrate with beds of sand mixed with organic debris
- cannot tolerate silt
- adults: clear cool water of Lake Michigan

spawning - no dams
- riffles with sand and gravel substrates

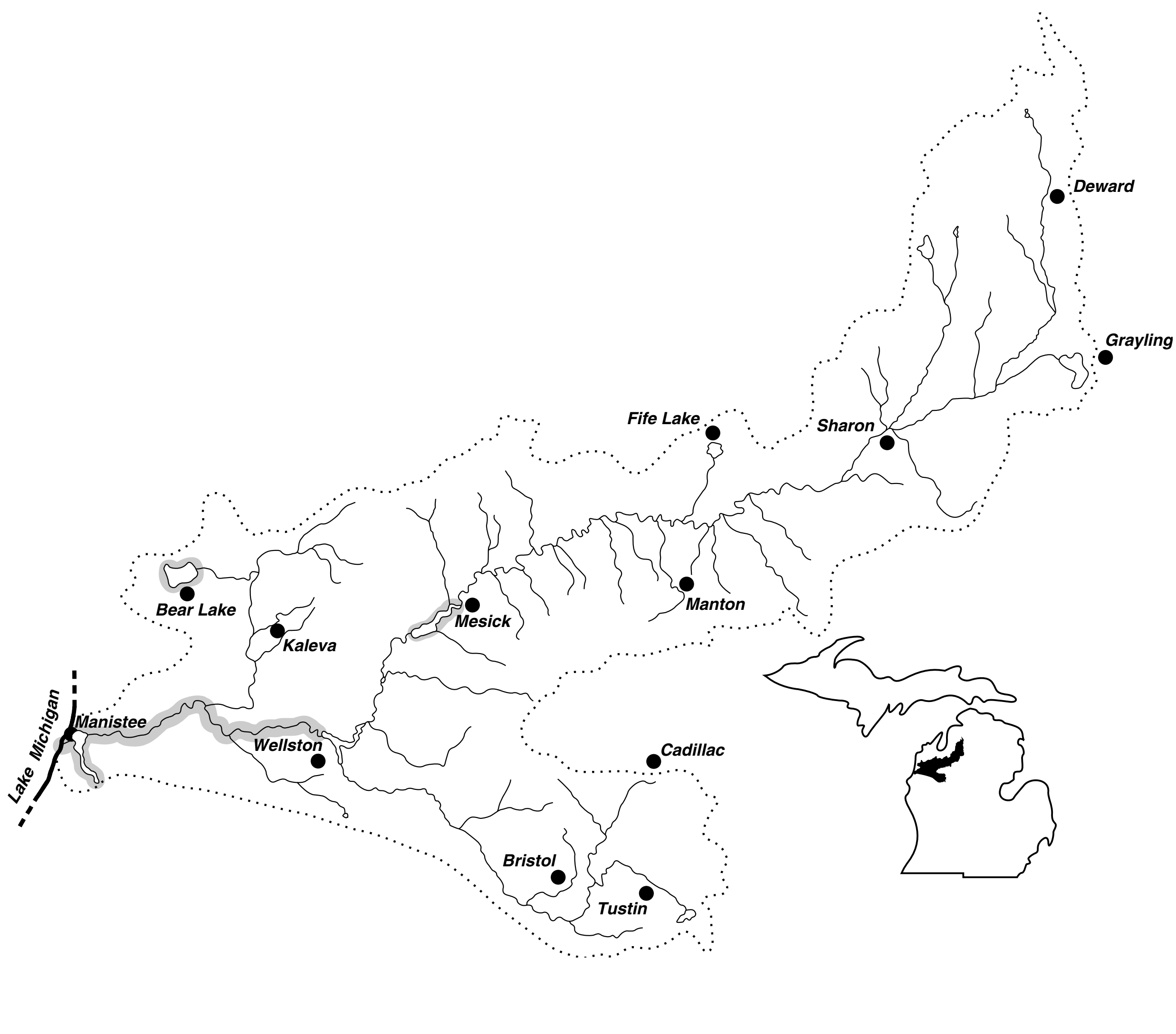


Lake sturgeon (*Acipenser fulvescens*)

Habitat:

feeding - shoal areas of large rivers, lakes, and impoundments
- gravel, sand, rock substrates

spawning - in or before rapids, at the base of dams in rivers
- in 2-15 feet of water
- swift current
- rocky ledges or around rocky islands in Great Lakes

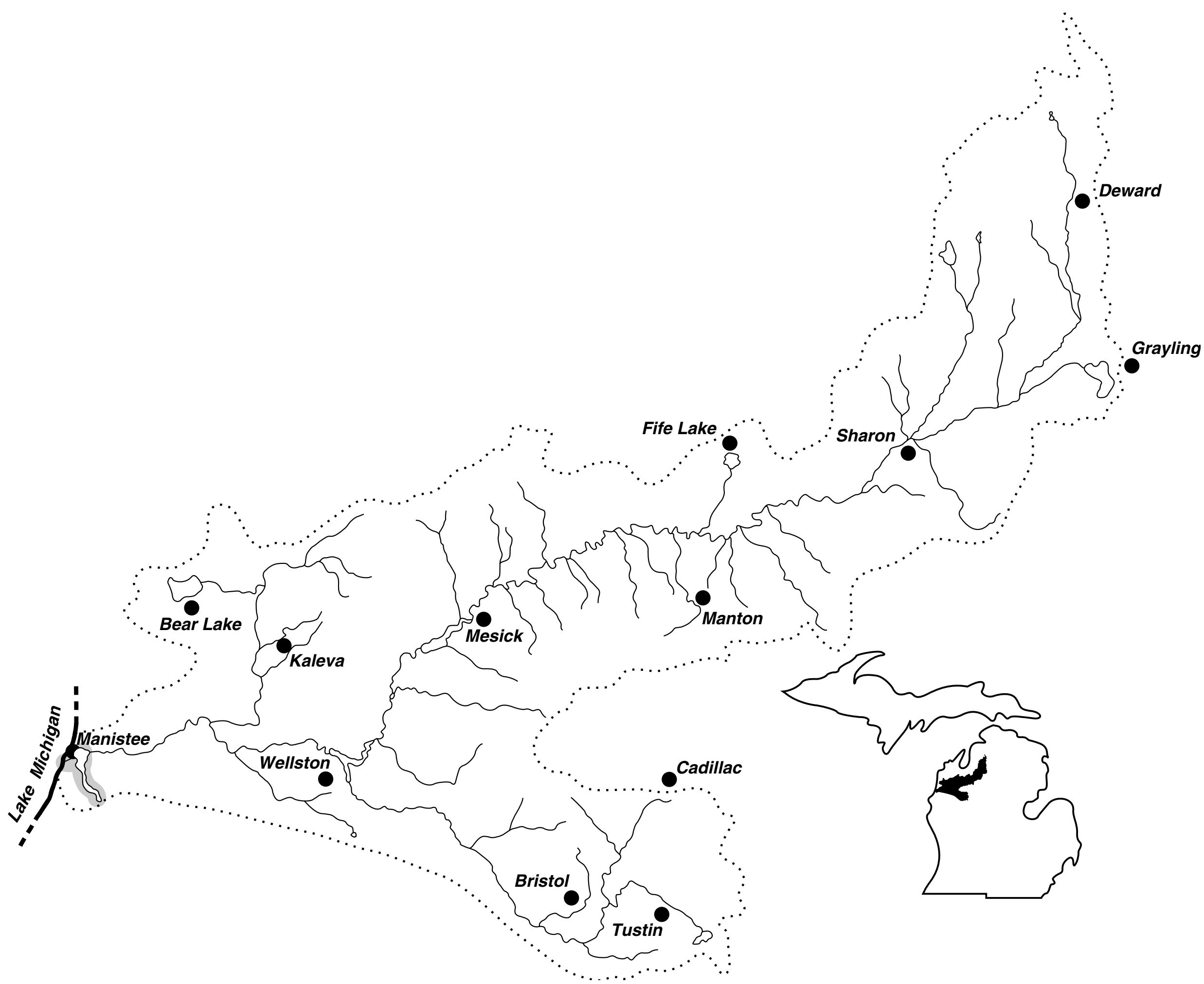


Longnose gar (*Lepisosteus osseus*)

Habitat:

feeding
- adults: in deeper water
- young: in shallows
- clear water, low-gradient streams, lakes, and impoundments
- will feed in moderate current
- aquatic vegetation preferred, but not necessary
- open water fish

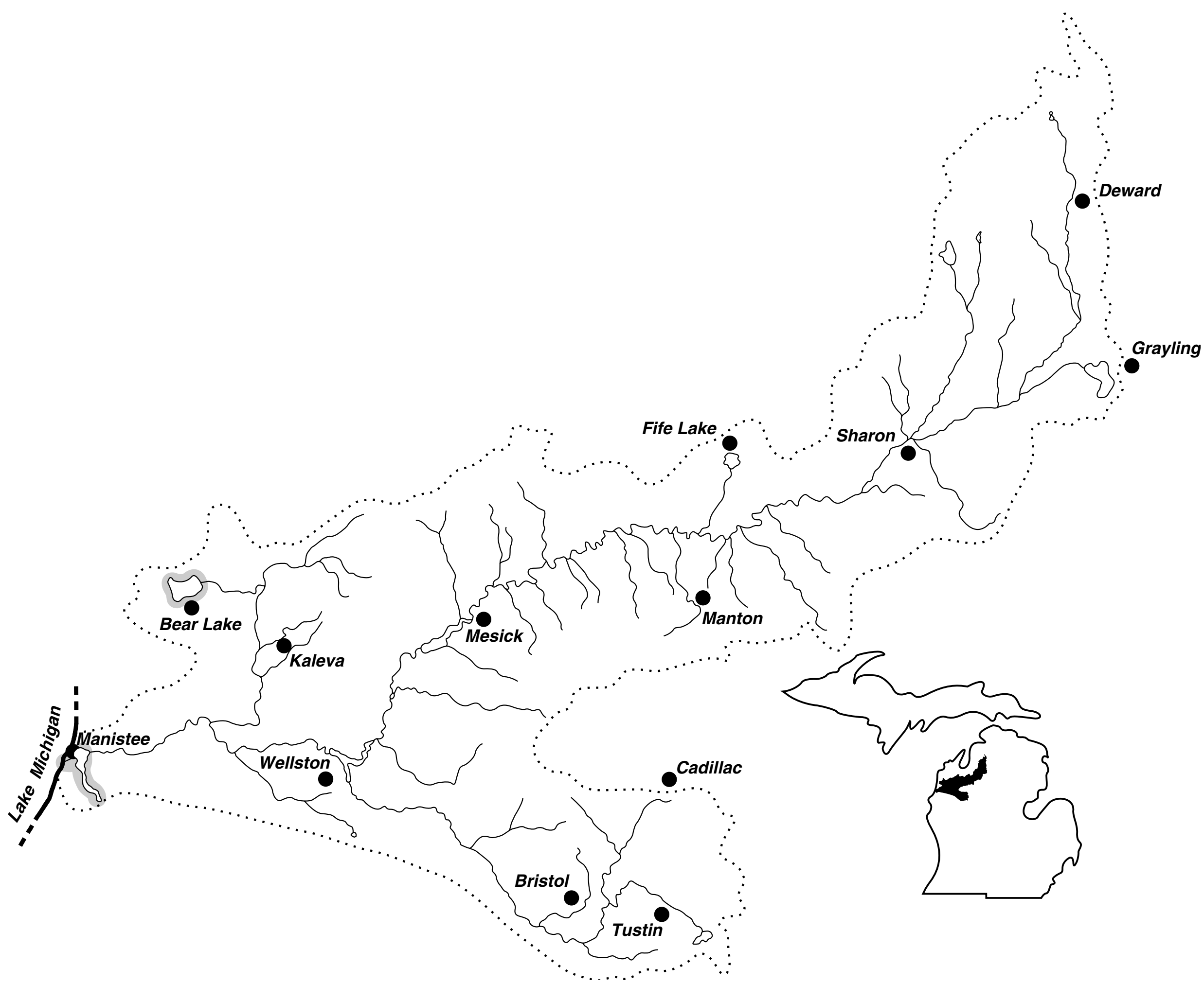
spawning
- warm shallow water of lakes or streams over vegetation



Bowfin (*Amia calva*)

Habitat:

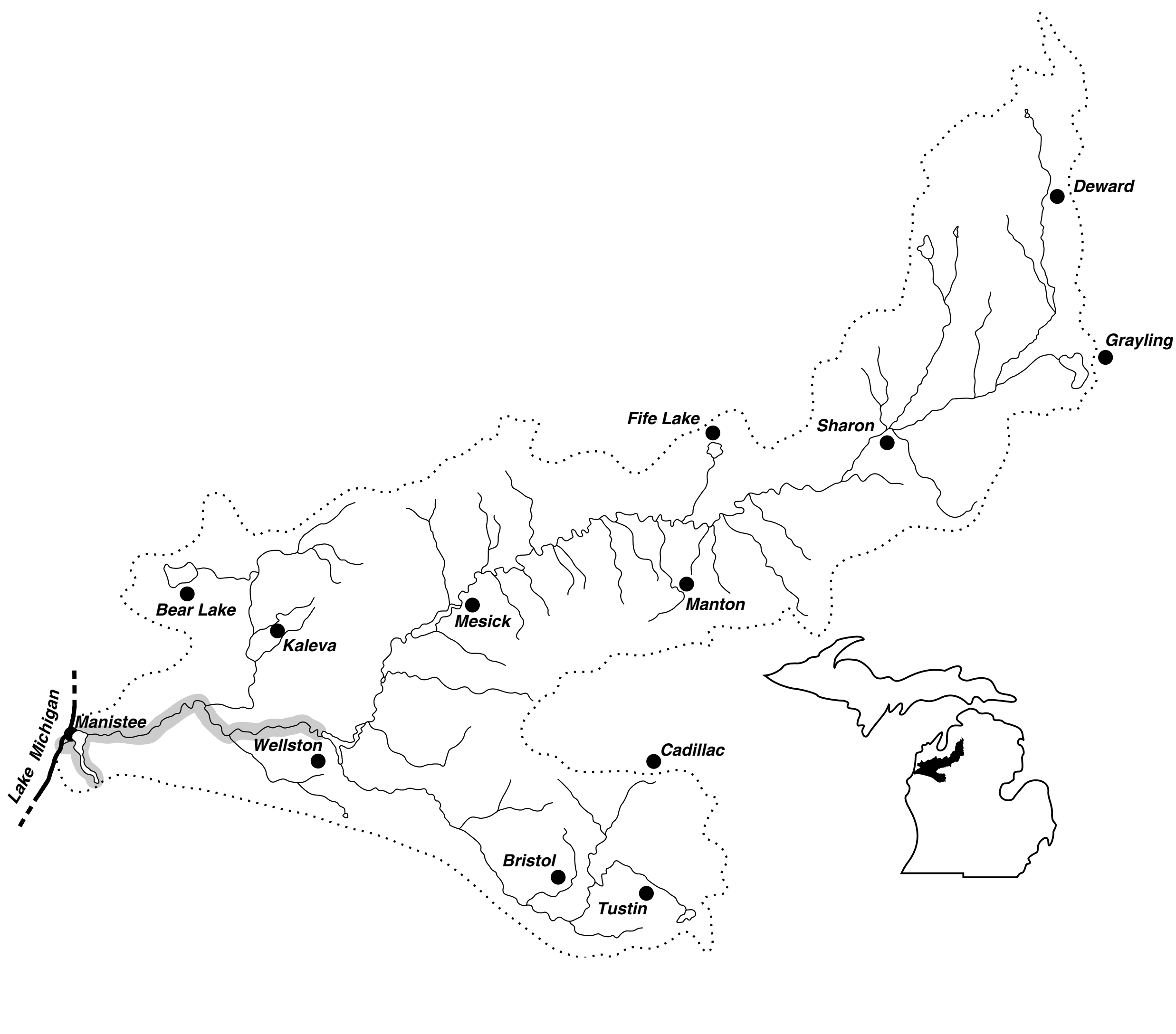
feeding	- clear water
	- abundant rooted aquatic vegetation
	- low gradient streams, lakes, and impoundments
	- tolerate only small amount of silt
spawning	- need vegetated water, 1 to 2 feet deep
	- can spawn under logs, stumps, or bushes
winter refuge	- gravelly pockets among aquatic vegetation



Alewife (*Alosa pseudoharengus*)

Habitat:

feeding	-	adults: deep water of Lake Michigan
	-	young: shallow water of Lake Michigan
	-	prefers warmer waters
spawning	-	streams or shallow beaches of lake
	-	sand or gravelly substrate
winter refuge	-	deep water

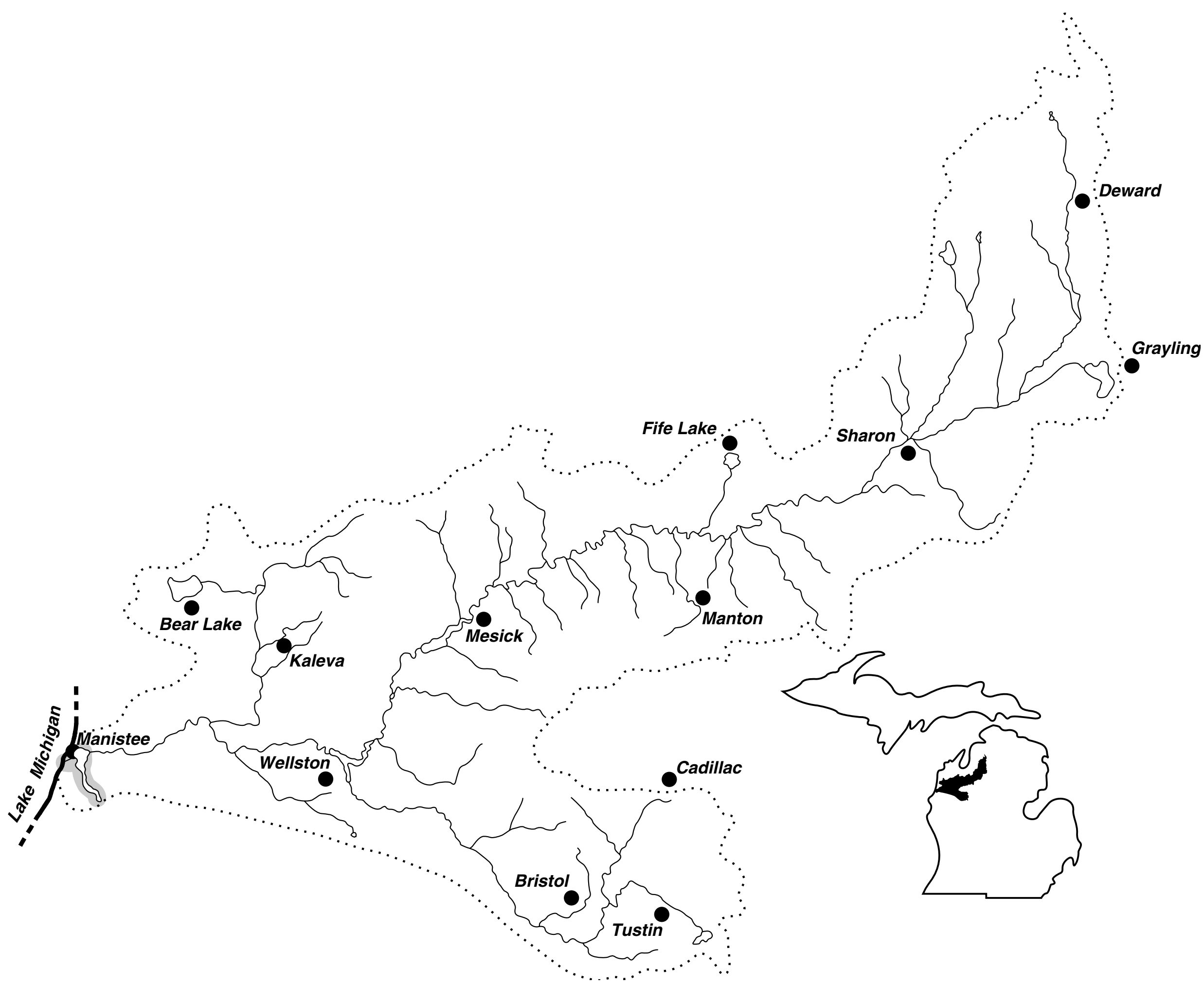


Gizzard shad (*Dorosoma cepedianum*)

Habitat:

feeding - large streams with low gradient, impoundments, and Lake Huron
- tolerant of clear and turbid water

spawning - shallow areas of ponds, lakes, and large rivers
- low gradient

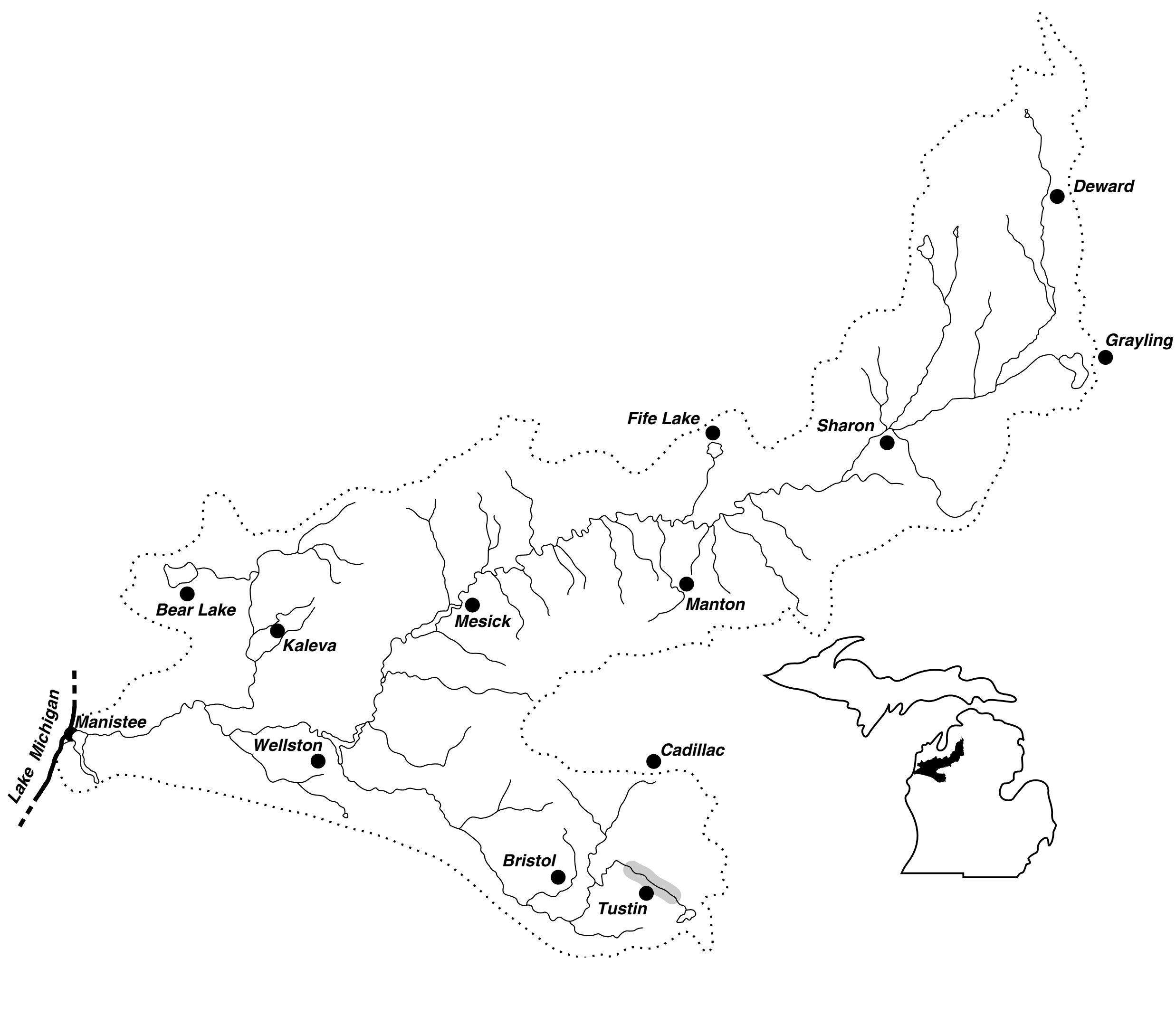


Central stoneroller (*Campostoma anomalum*)

Habitat:

feeding
- moderate to high gradients
- rocky riffles
- somewhat tolerant of turbidity
- riffles and adjacent pools of warm, clear, shallow streams
- gravel or cobble substrate

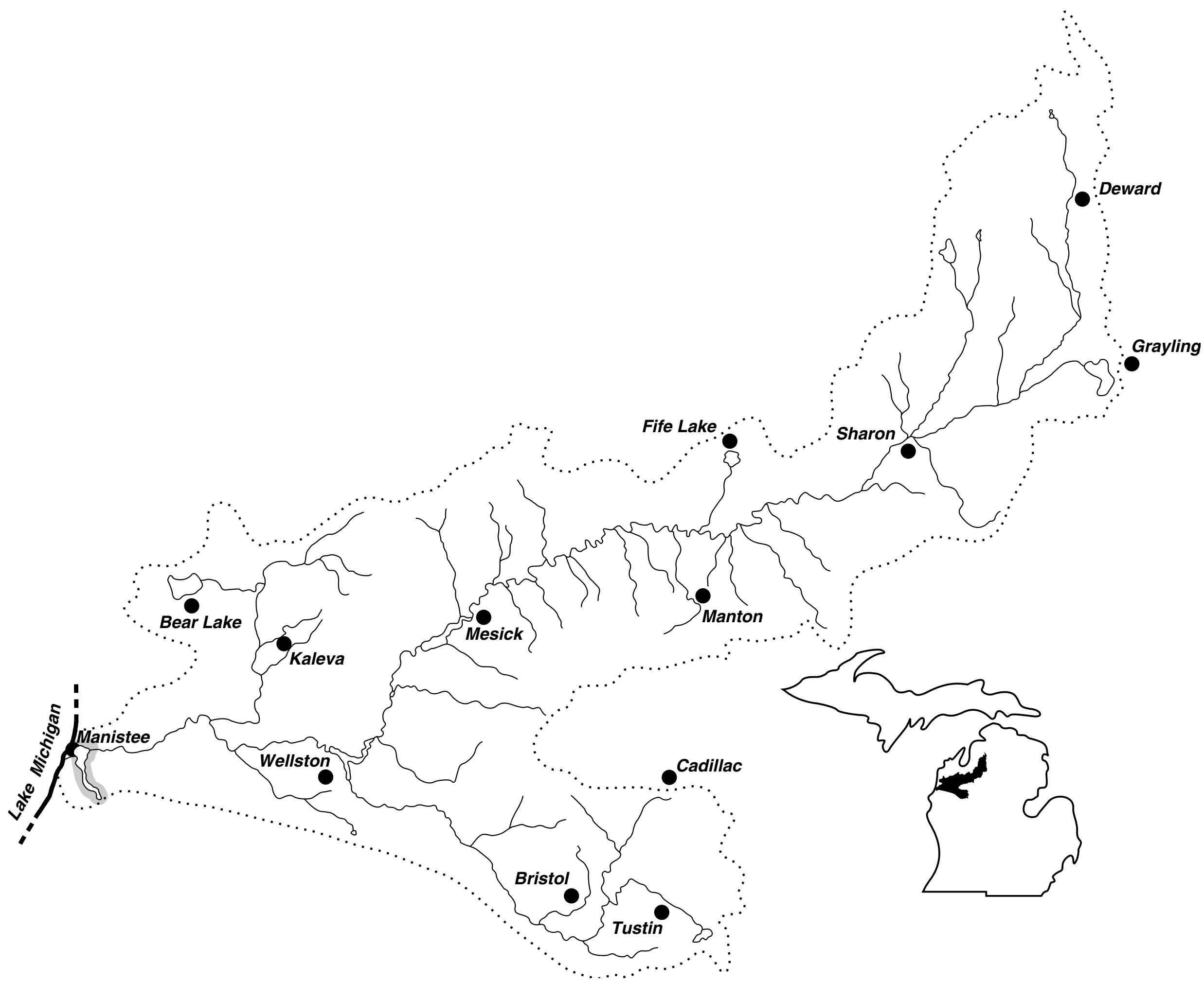
spawning
- riffles



Lake chub (*Couesius plumbeus*) - rare

Habitat:

feeding	- large rivers and lakes
	- over a variety of substrates
spawning	- tributary streams
	- rock substrate

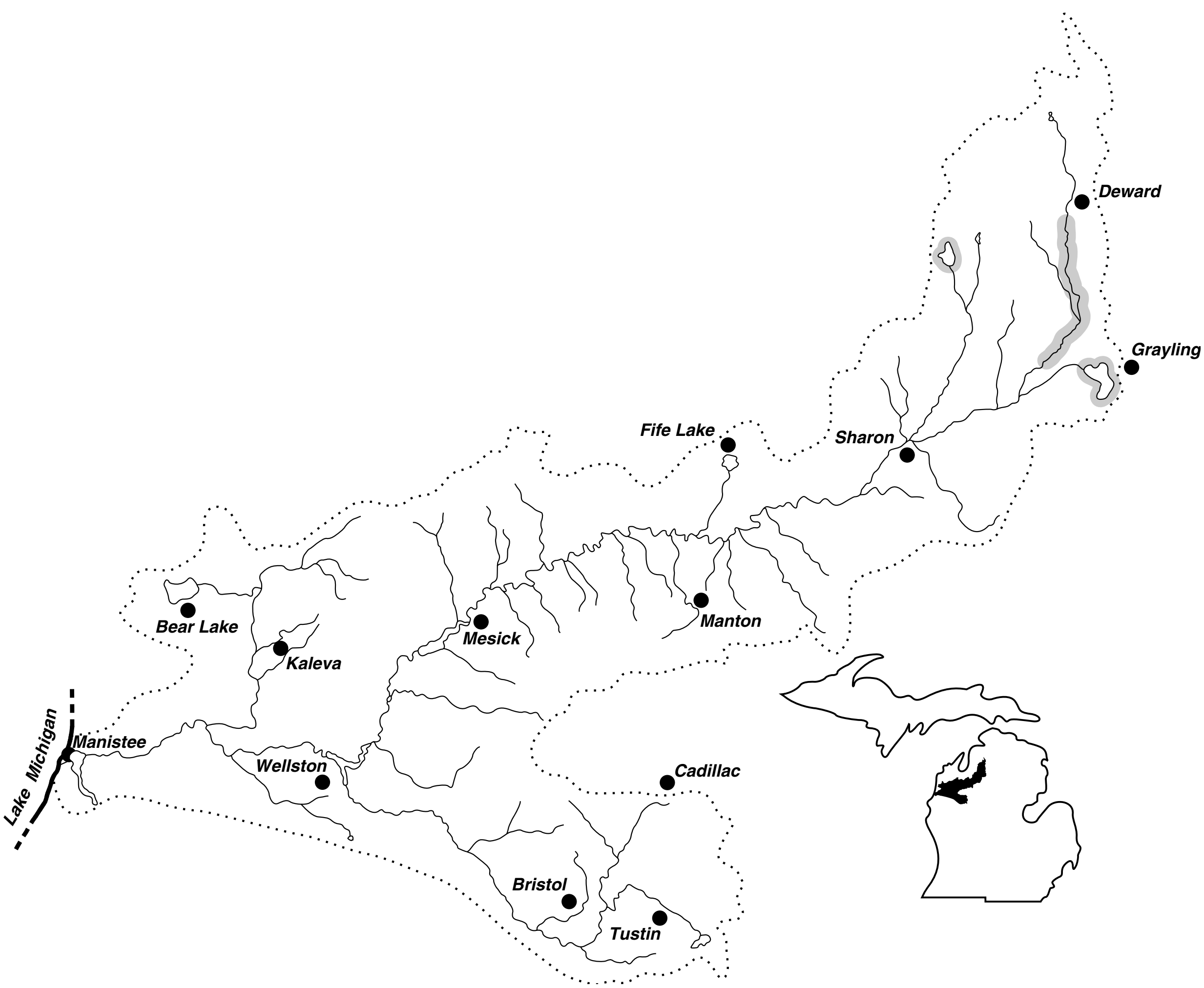


Spotfin shiner (*Cyprinella spiloptera*)

Habitat:

feeding
- clear water tolerant of turbidity and siltation
- some current
- shallow depths
- medium sized streams, lakes, and impoundments
- clear sand or gravel substrate

spawning
- swift current
- crevice spawner or on underside of submerged logs and roots

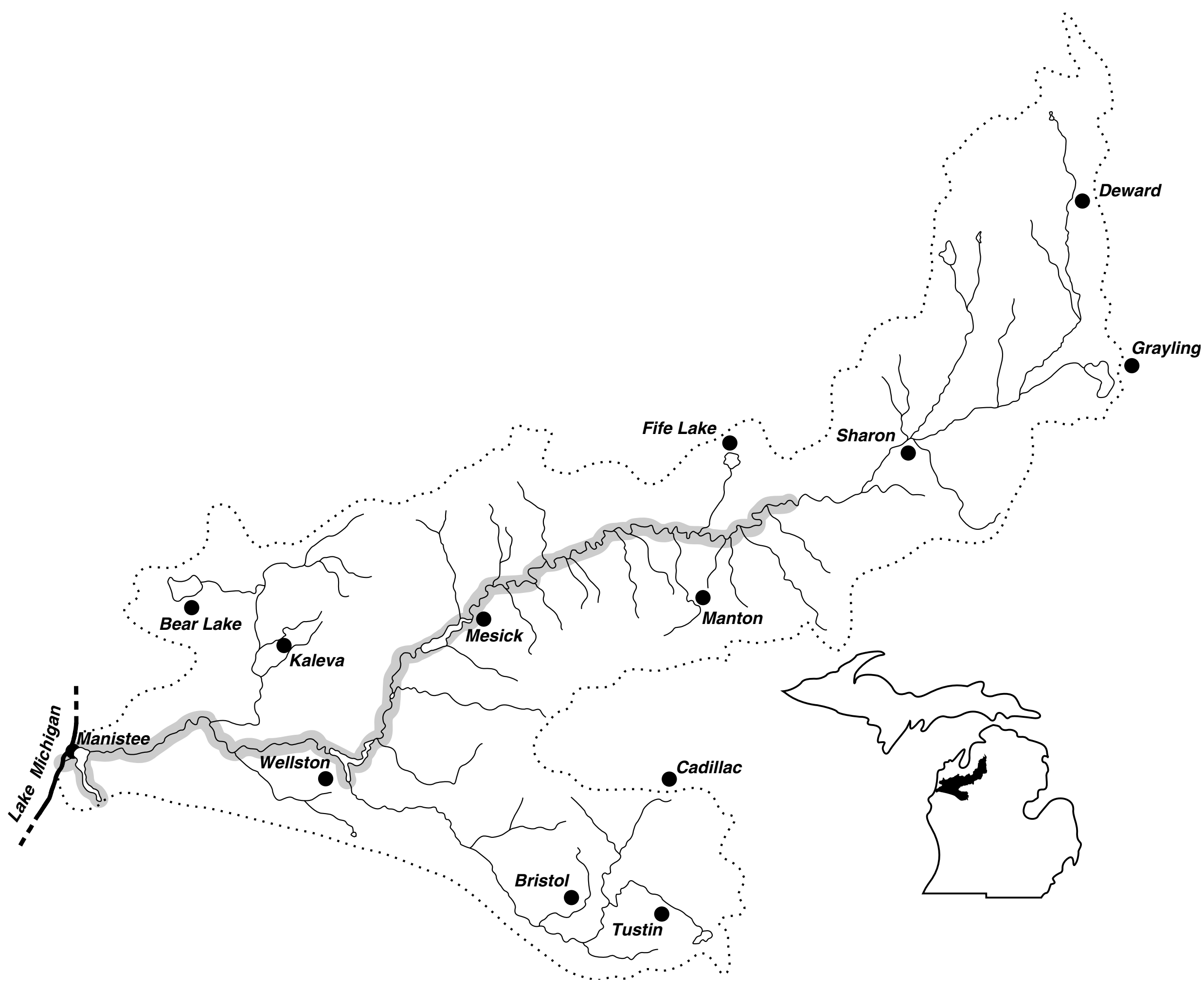


Common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*)

Habitat:

feeding - low gradient fertile streams, rivers, lakes, and impoundments
- abundance of aquatic vegetation or organic matter
- tolerant of all substrates and clear to turbid water

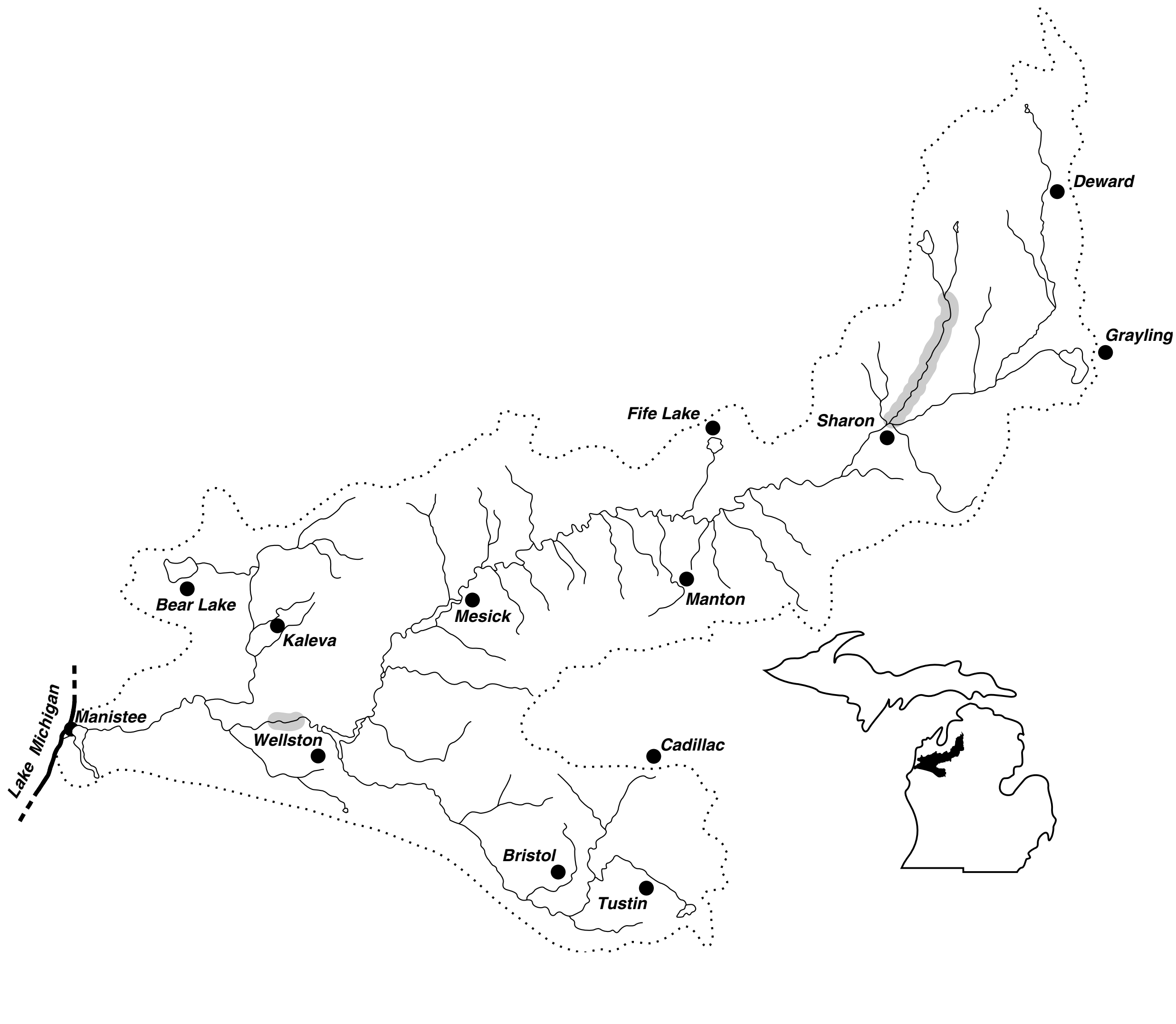
spawning - weedy or grassy shallows



Brassy minnow (*Hybognathus hankinsoni*)

Habitat:

feeding - cool acidic streams
- slow to moderate current
- sand or gravel substrate

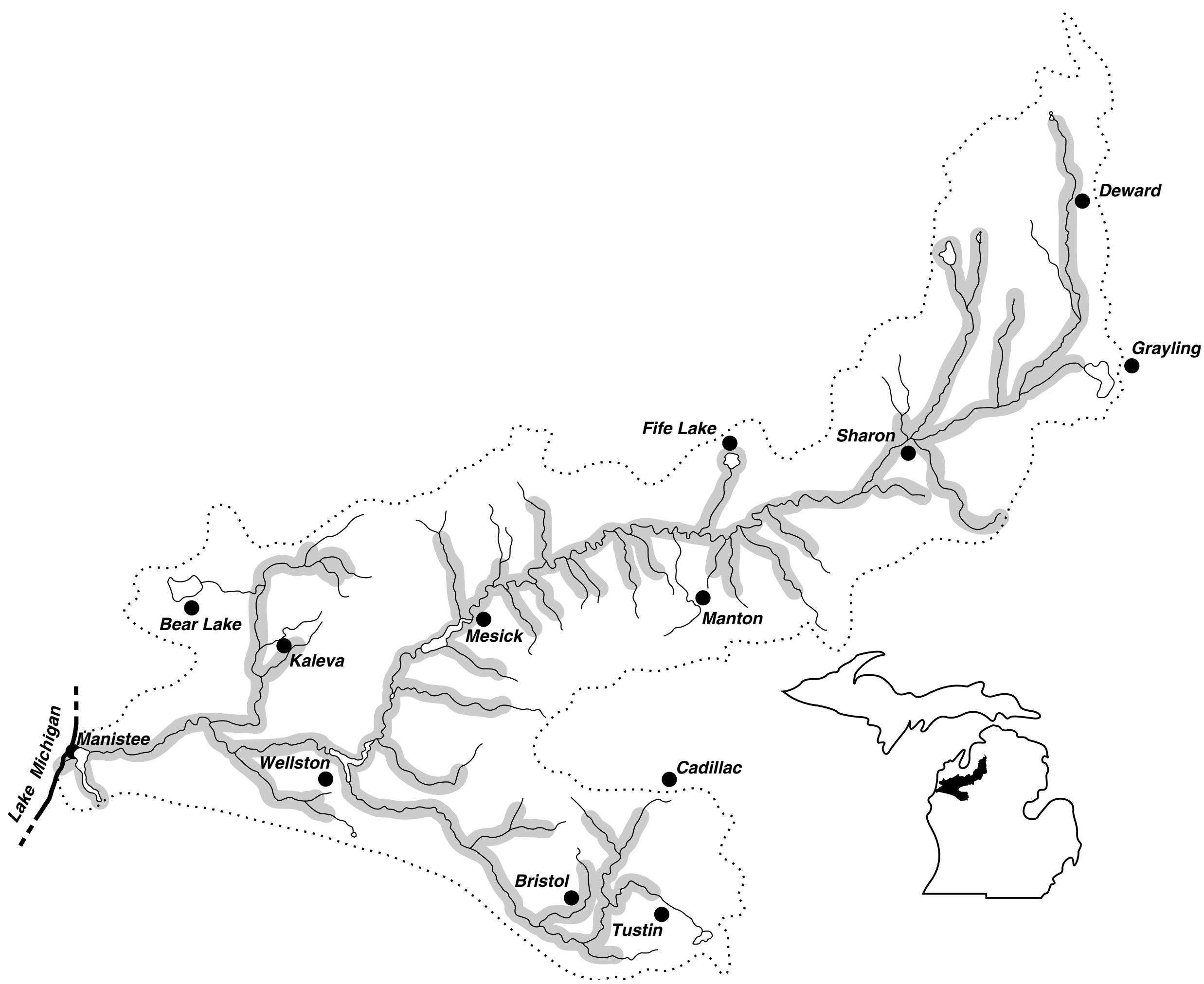


Common shiner (*Luxilus cornutus*)

Habitat:

feeding - small, clear, high-gradient streams and rivers, or shores of clear water lakes and impoundments
- gravel substrate
- can tolerate some submerged aquatic vegetation
- not very tolerant of turbidity or silted waters

spawning - gravel nests of other fish, especially those at the head of a riffle

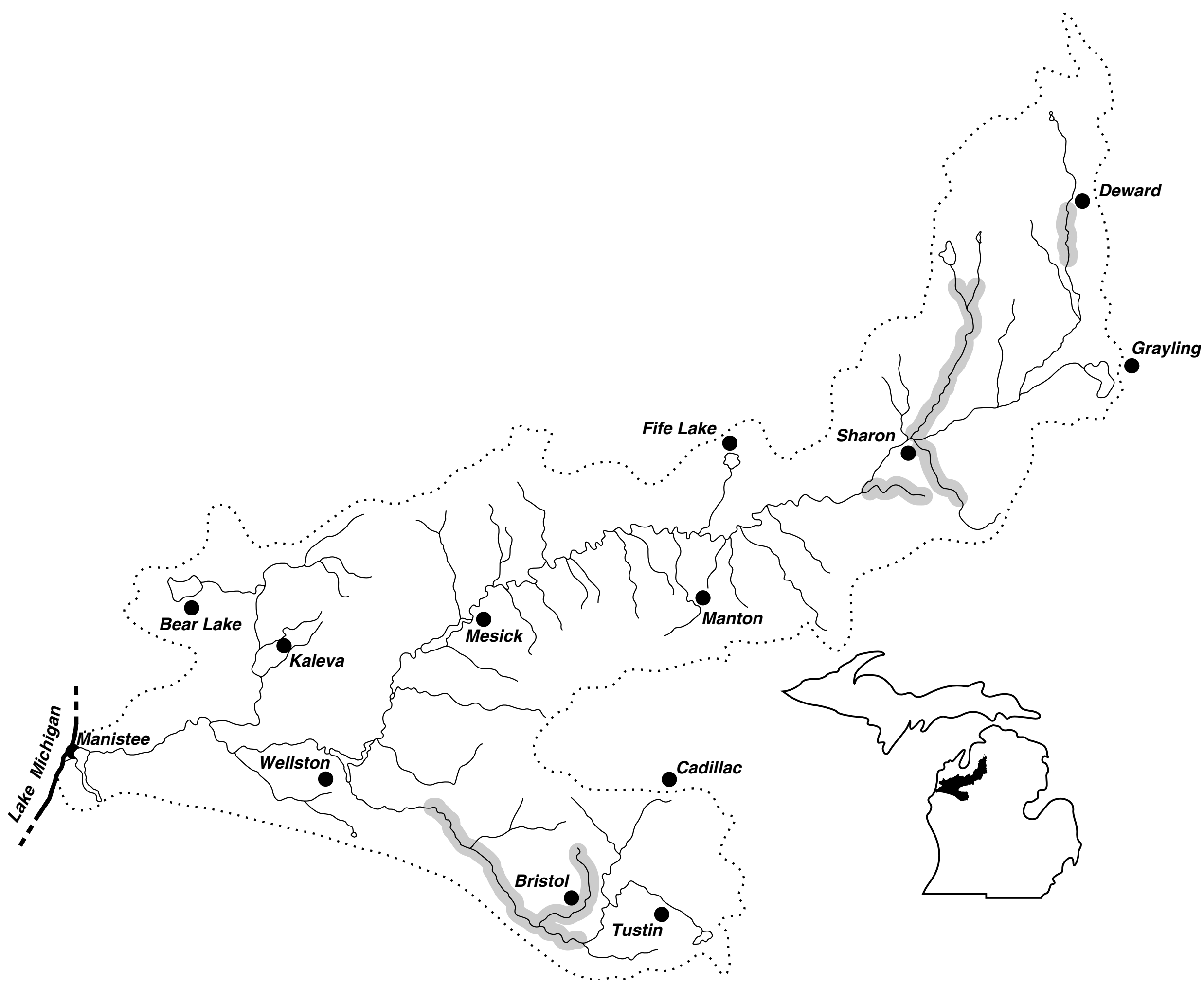


Pearl dace (*Margariscus margarita*)

Habitat:

feeding - cool, neutral to acidic streams and lakes
- clear to slightly turbid water

spawning - males are territorial
- clear water, 18-24 inches deep
- sand or gravel substrate
- weak to moderate current

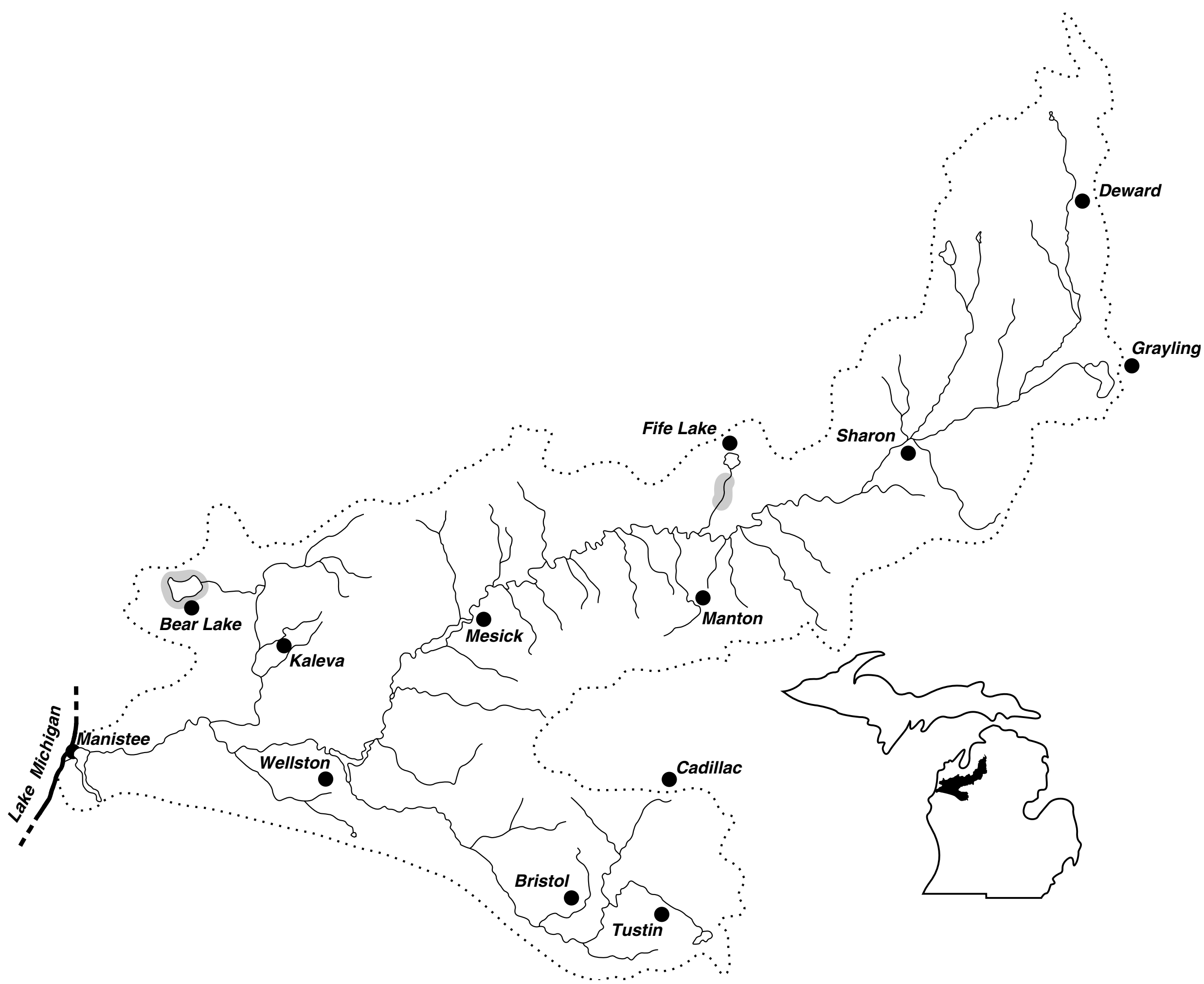


Hornyhead chub (*Nocomis biguttatus*)

Habitat:

feeding
- adults: near riffles
- young: near vegetation
- clear water, does not tolerate turbidity
- gravel substrate
- low gradient streams that are tributaries to large streams

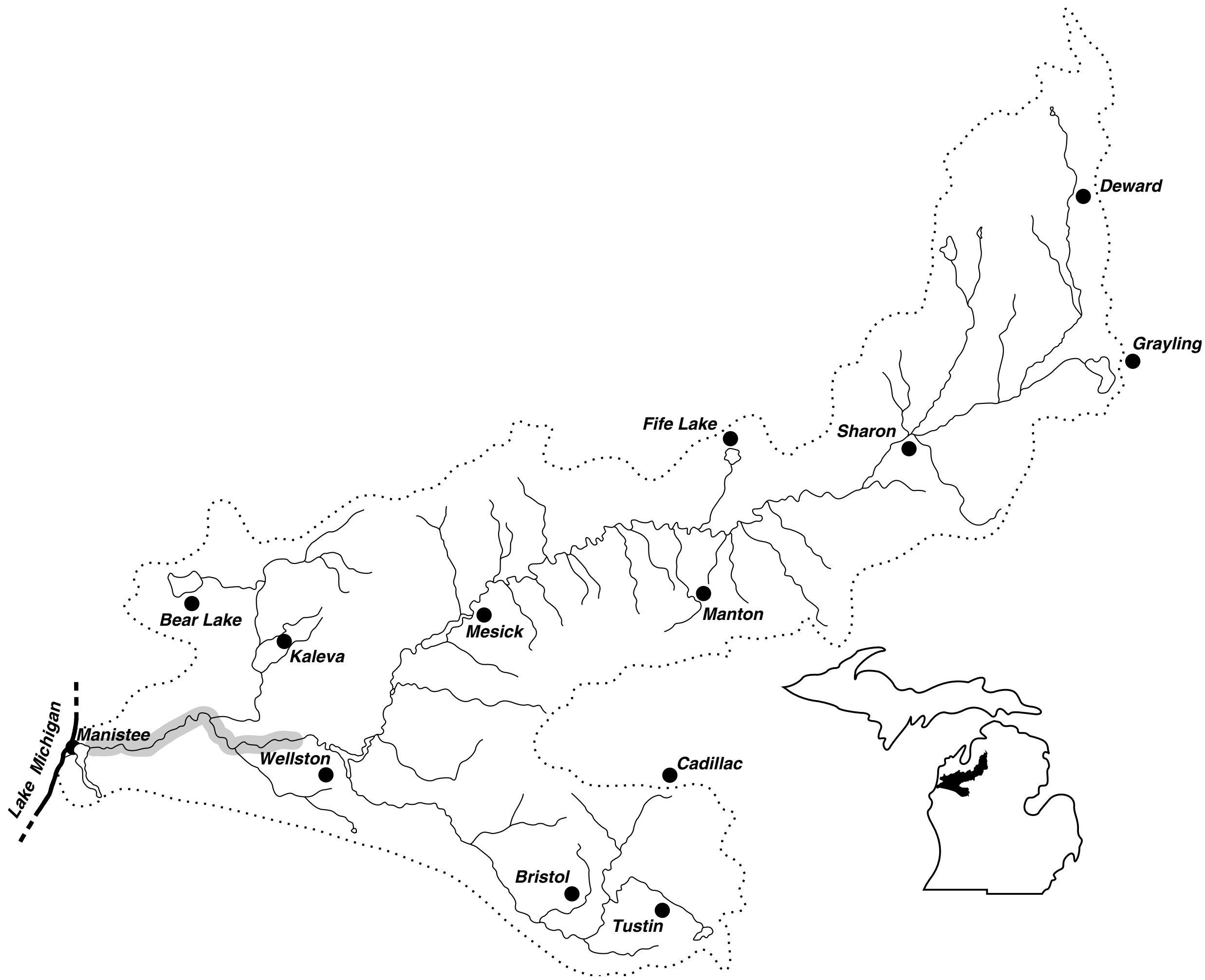
spawning
- large stones and pebbles present
- often below a riffle in shallow water
- gravel substrate



River chub (*Nocomis micropogon*)

Habitat:

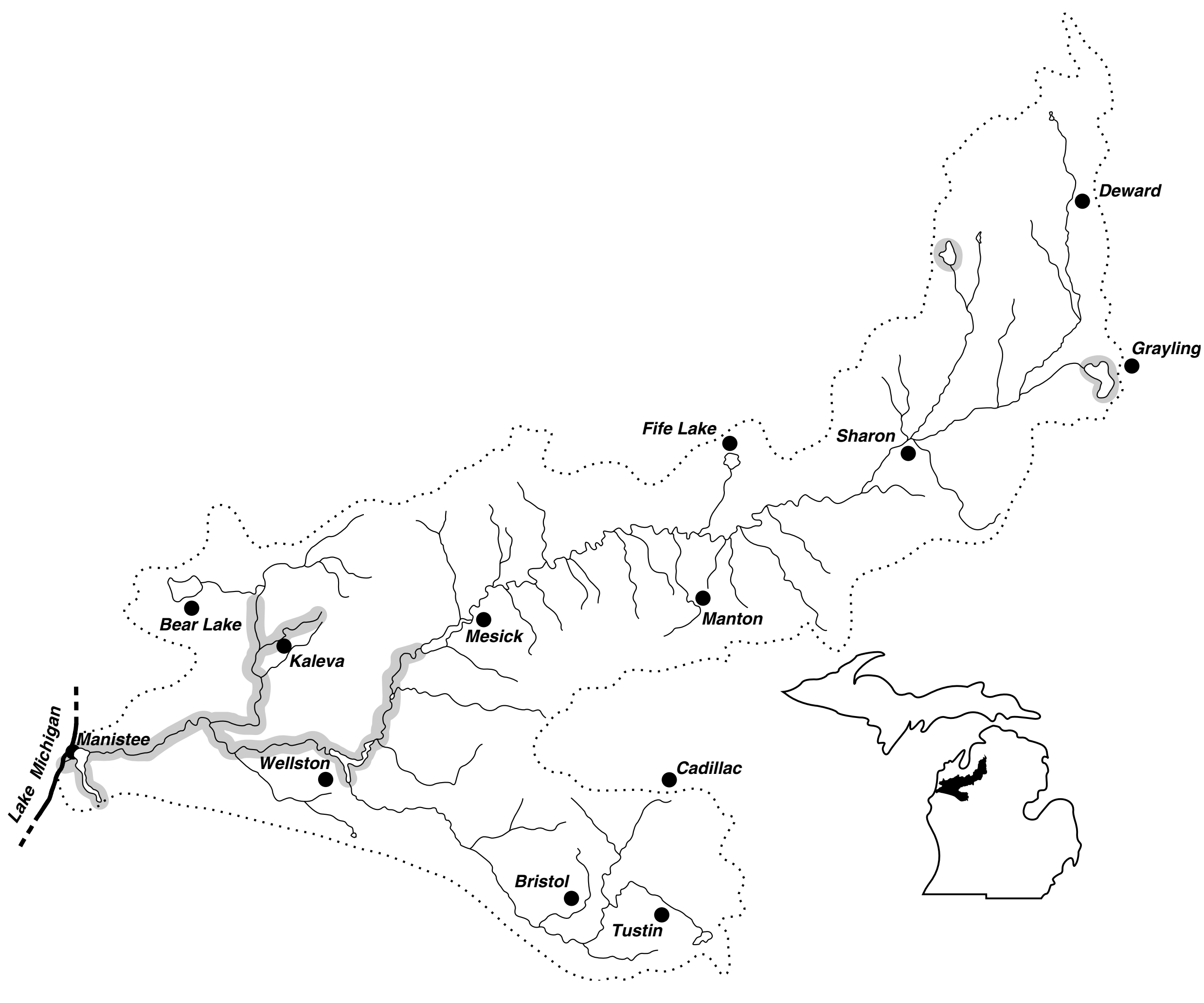
feeding
- moderate to large streams
- moderate to high gradient
- gravel, boulder, or bedrock substrate
- little to no aquatic vegetation
- cannot tolerate turbidity or siltation



Golden shiner (*Notemigonus crysoleucas*)

Habitat:

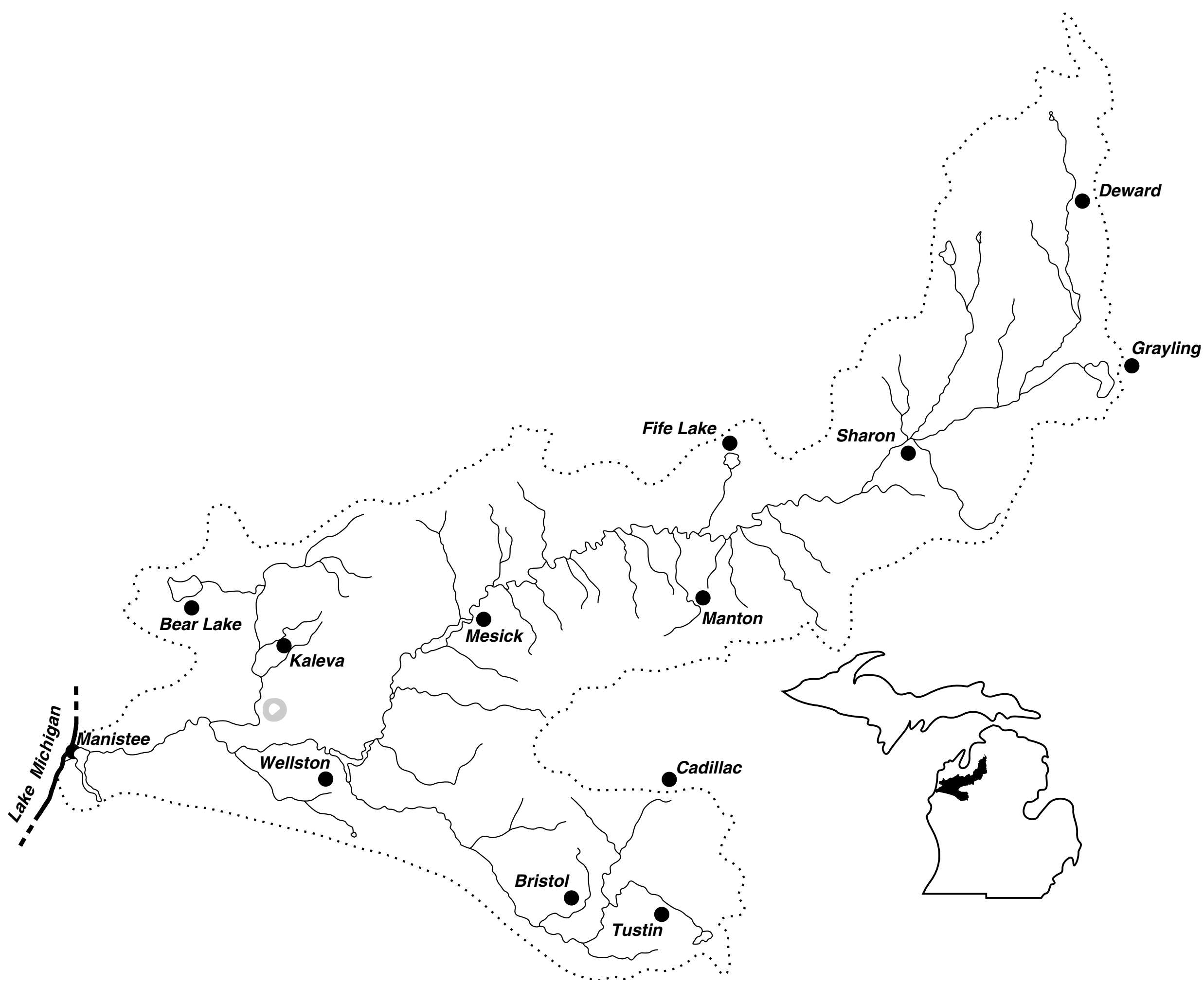
feeding	-	lakes and impoundments and quiet pools of low gradient streams
	-	clear shallow water
	-	heavy vegetation
spawning	-	vegetation



Pugnose shiner (*Notropis anogenus*) - rare

Habitat:

feeding - very clear water of lakes, impoundments, and low-gradient streams
- aquatic vegetation
- clean sand, marl, or organic debris substrate
- extremely intolerant of turbidity

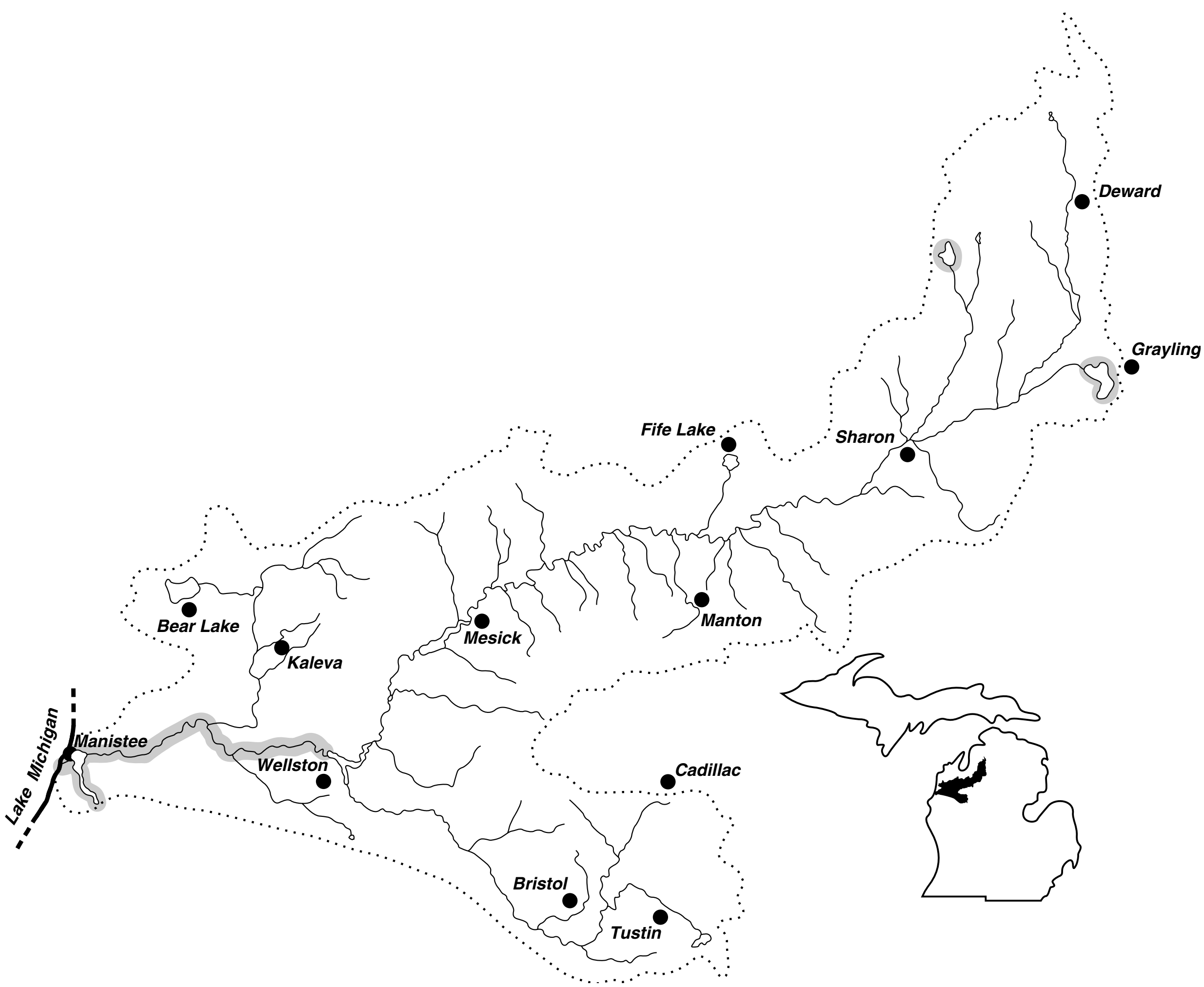


Emerald shiner (*Notropis atherinoides*)

Habitat:

feeding - open-large stream channels and lake
- low to moderate gradient
- range of turbidites and bottom types
- midwater or surface preferred, substrate of little importance
- avoids rooted vegetation

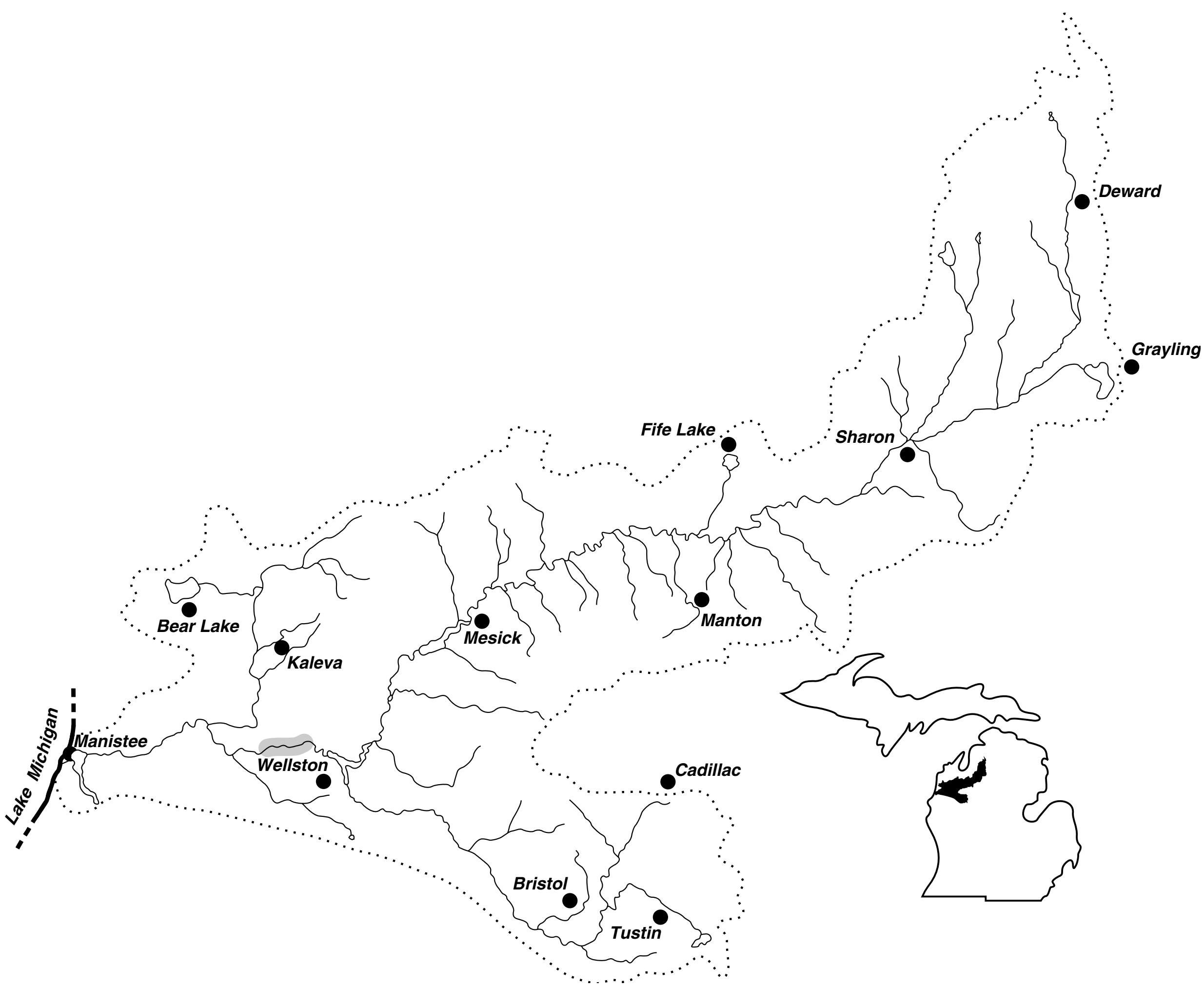
spawning - sand or firm mud substrate or gravel shoals



Blackchin shiner (*Notropis heterodon*)

Habitat:

feeding
- lakes, impoundments, and quiet pools in streams and rivers
- clear water
- clean sand, gravel, or organic debris substrate
- dense beds of submerged aquatic vegetation
- cannot tolerate turbidity, silt, or loss of aquatic vegetation

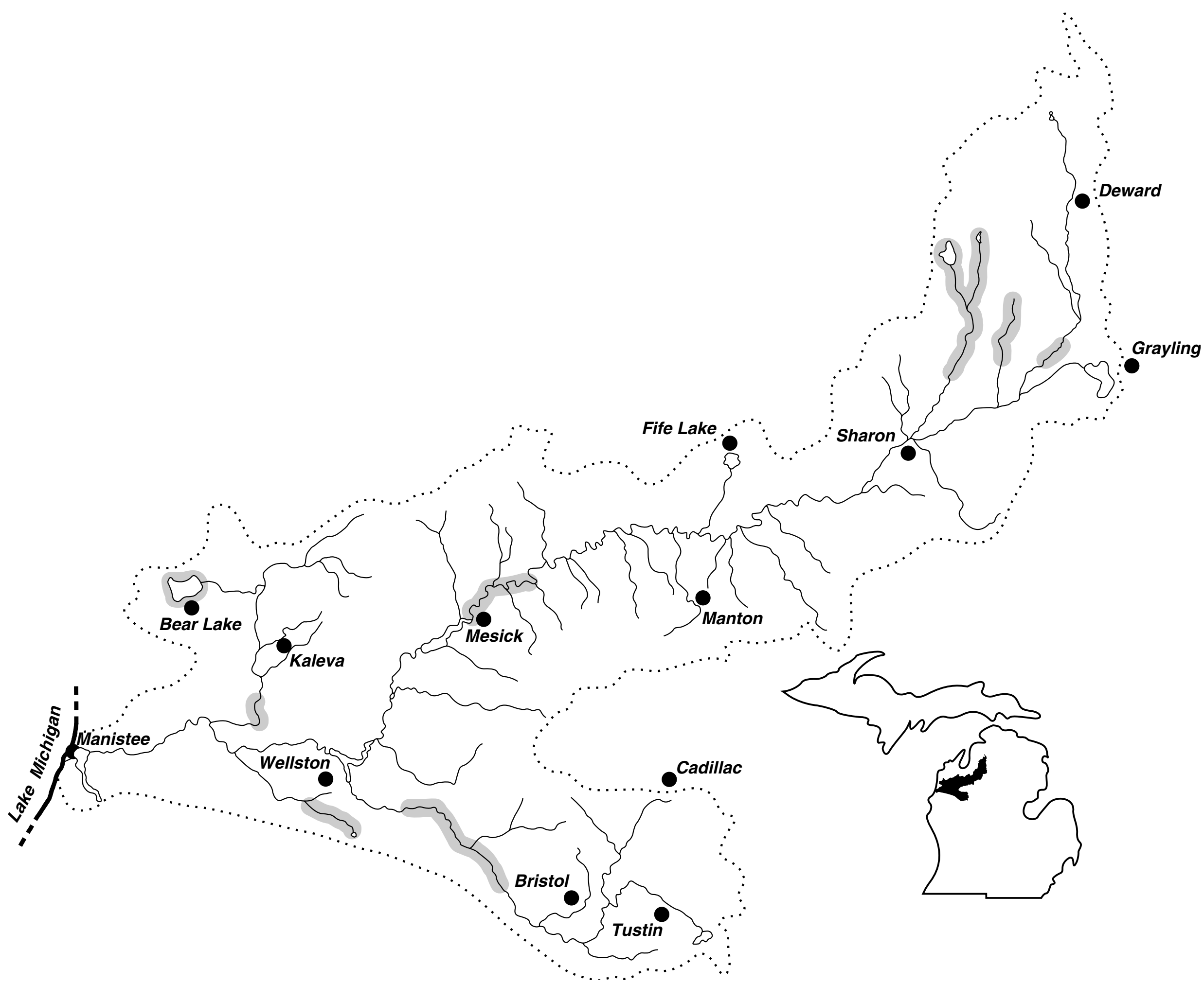


Blacknose shiner (*Notropis heterolepis*)

Habitat:

feeding - clear lakes, impoundments, and pools of small, clear, low-gradient streams
- aquatic vegetation
- clean sand, gravel, marl, muck, peat, or organic debris substrate
- cannot tolerate much turbidity, much siltation, or loss of aquatic vegetation

spawning - sandy substrate

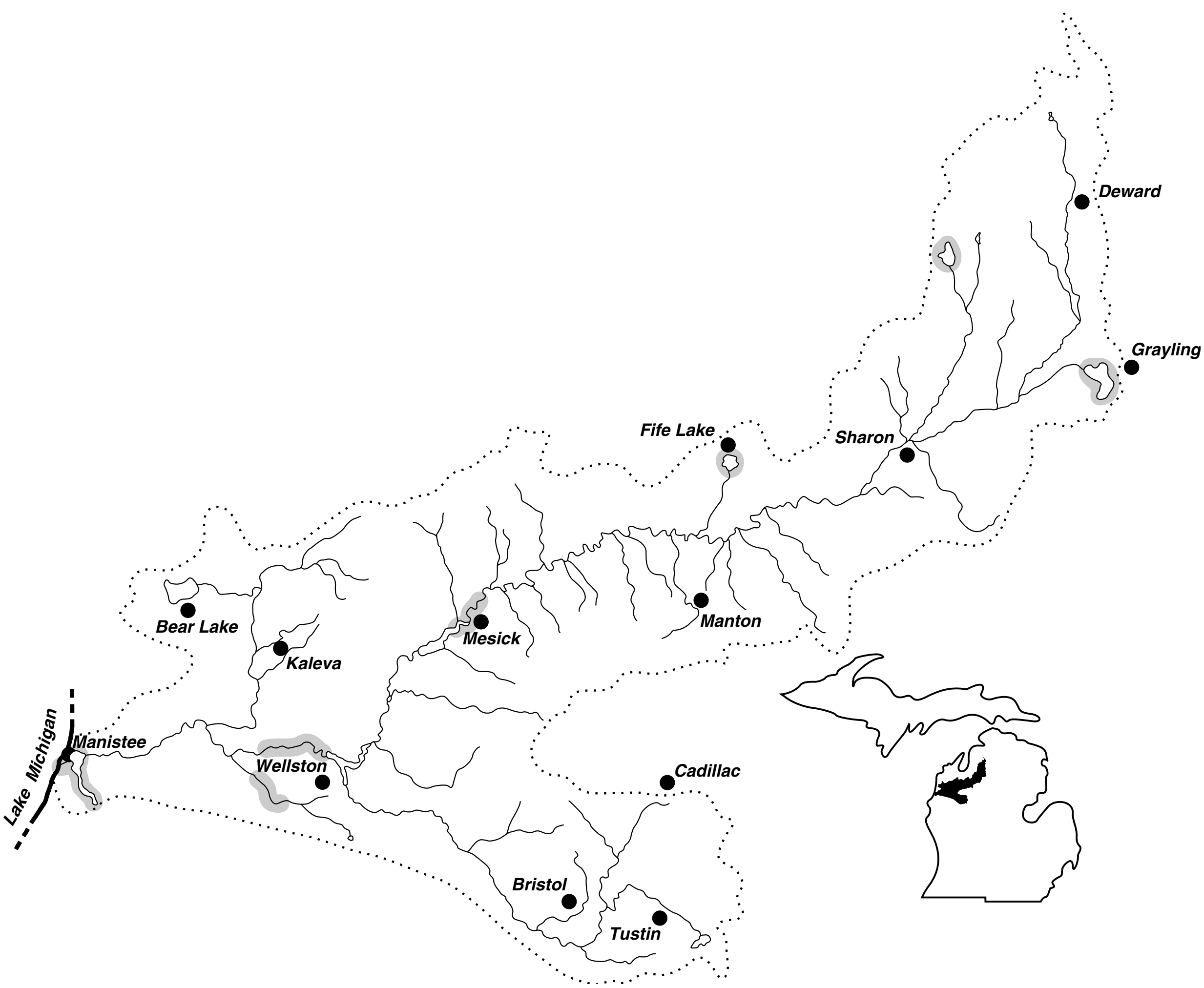


Spottail shiner (*Notropis hudsonius*)

Habitat:

feeding - large rivers, lakes, and impoundments
- firm sand and gravel substrate
- low current
- sparse to moderate vegetation
- avoids turbidity

spawning - over sandy shoals or gravelly riffles
- near the mouths of small streams

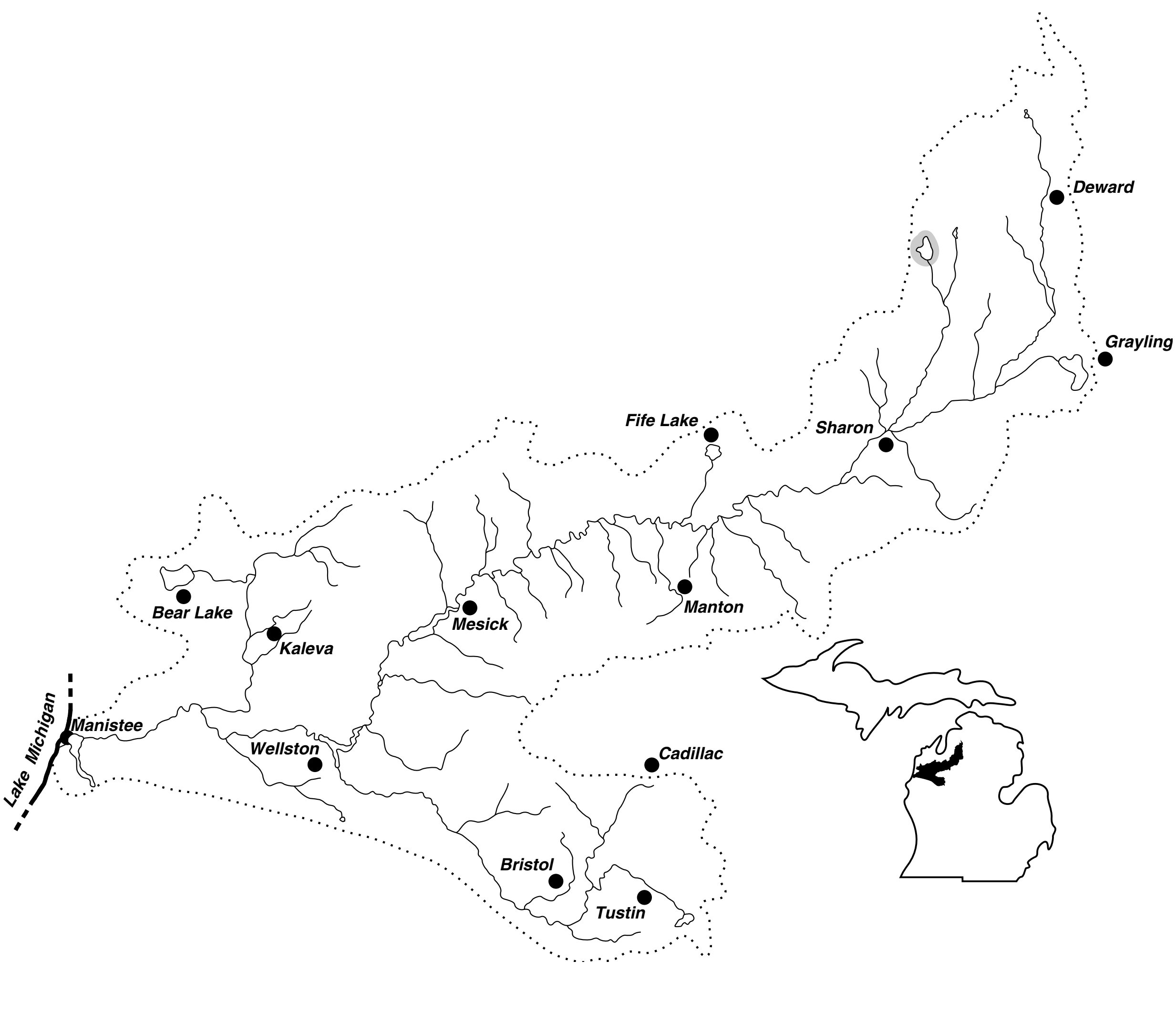


Rosyface shiner (*Notropis rubellus*)

Habitat:

feeding - moderate sized streams
- moderate to high gradient
- gravel or sand substrate; intolerant of silt substrate
- clear water; intolerant of turbidity

spawning - on nests of horneyhead chub, chesnut lamprey, and redhorses
- sandy-gravel, gravel or bedrock substrate
- shallow high gradient water

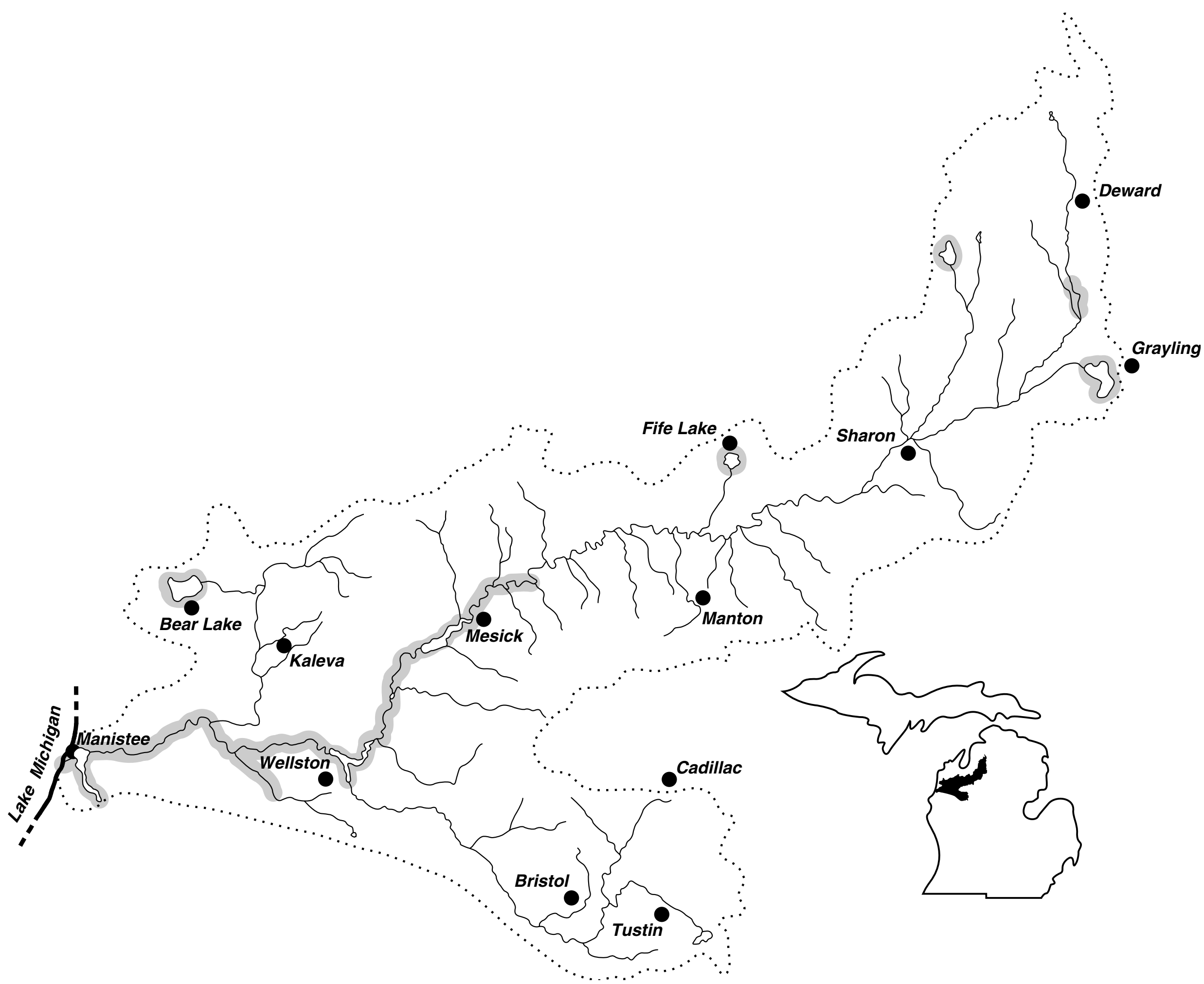


Sand shiner (*Notropis stramineus*)

Habitat:

feeding
- sand and gravel substrate
- shallow pools in medium size streams, lakes, and impoundments
- clear water and low gradient
- rooted aquatic vegetation preferred
- tolerant of some inorganic pollutants provided substrate is not covered

spawning
- clean gravel or sand substrate

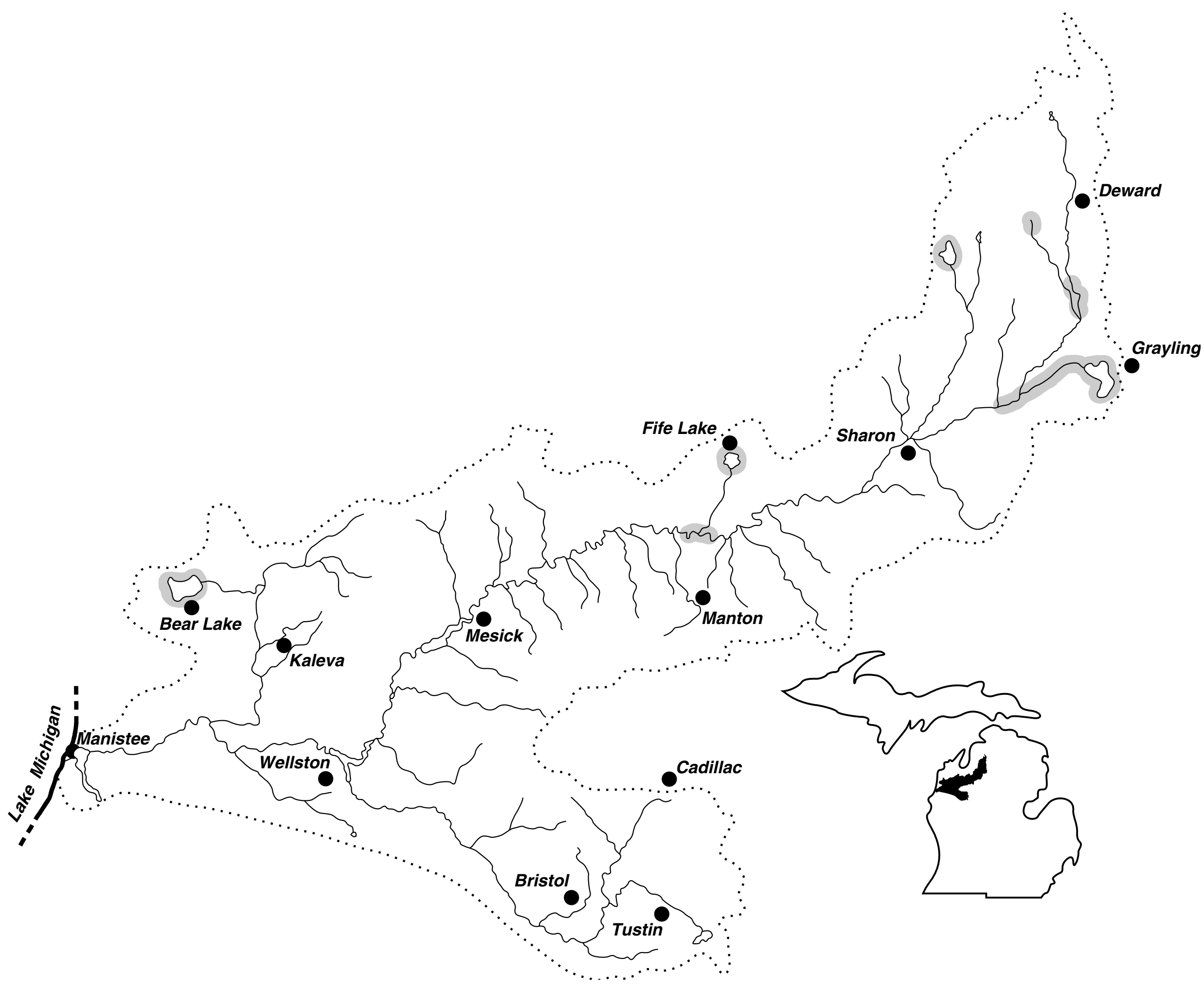


Mimic shiner (*Notropis volucellus*)

Habitat:

feeding - pools and backwater of streams, moderately weedy lakes and impoundments
- quiet or still water
- clear shallow water

spawning - aquatic vegetation necessary

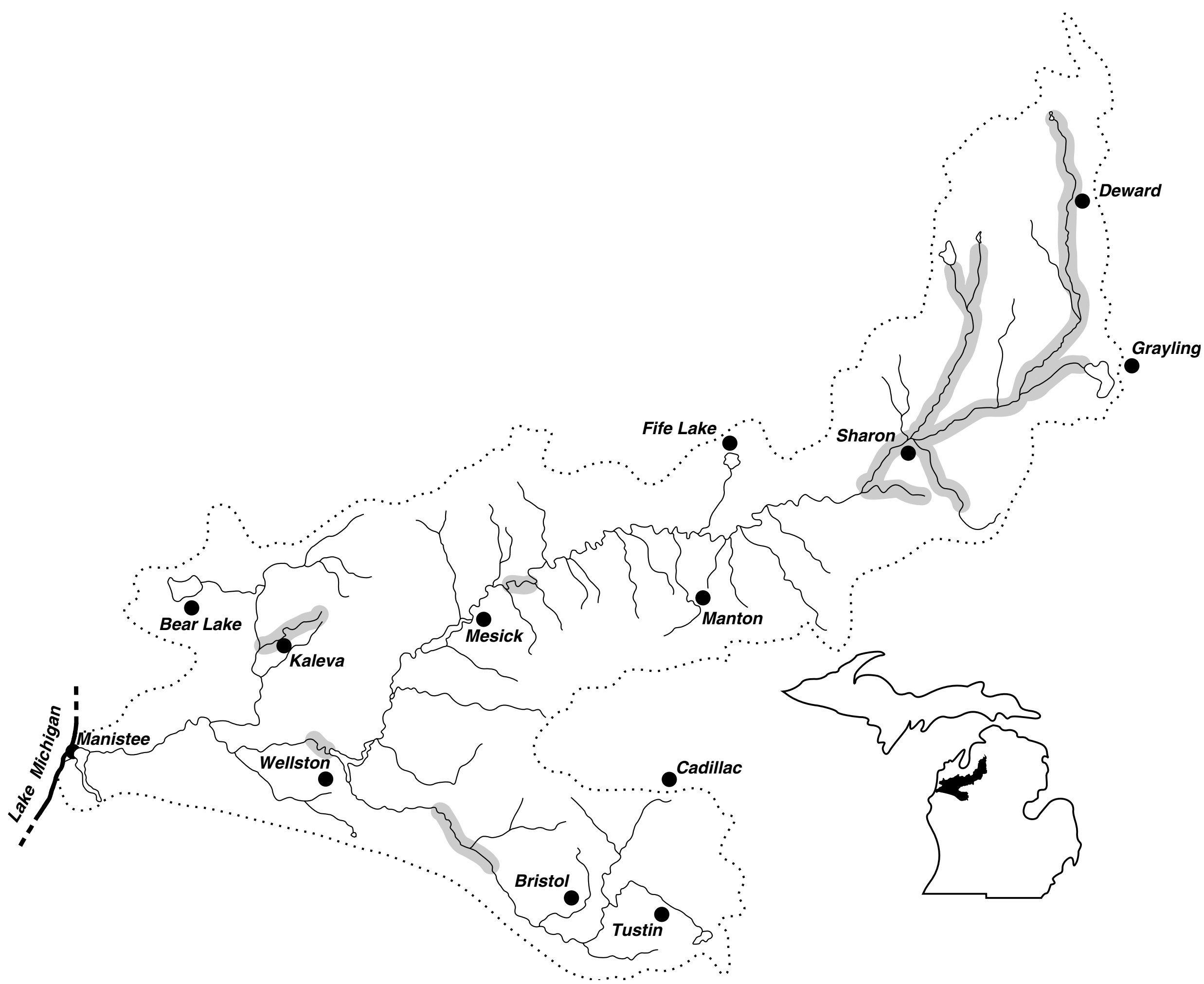


Northern redbelly dace (*Phoxinus eos*)

Habitat:

feeding - slow current
- in boggy lakes and streams
- detritus or silt substrate
- clear to slightly turbid water

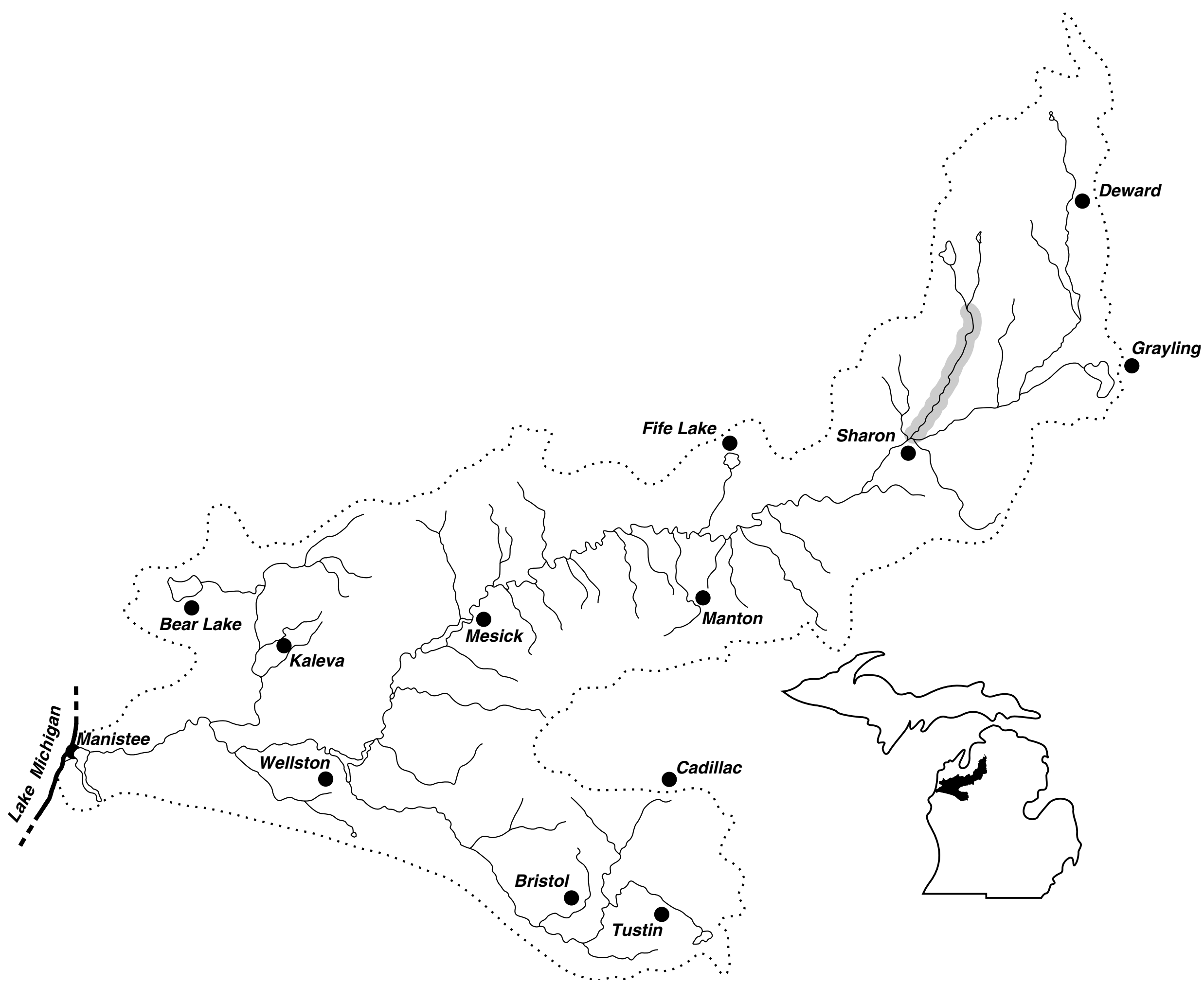
spawning - filamentous algae needed for egg deposition



Finescale dace (*Phoxinus neogaeus*)

Habitat:

feeding - cool bog lakes and streams
- neutral to slightly acidic waters
- various substrates

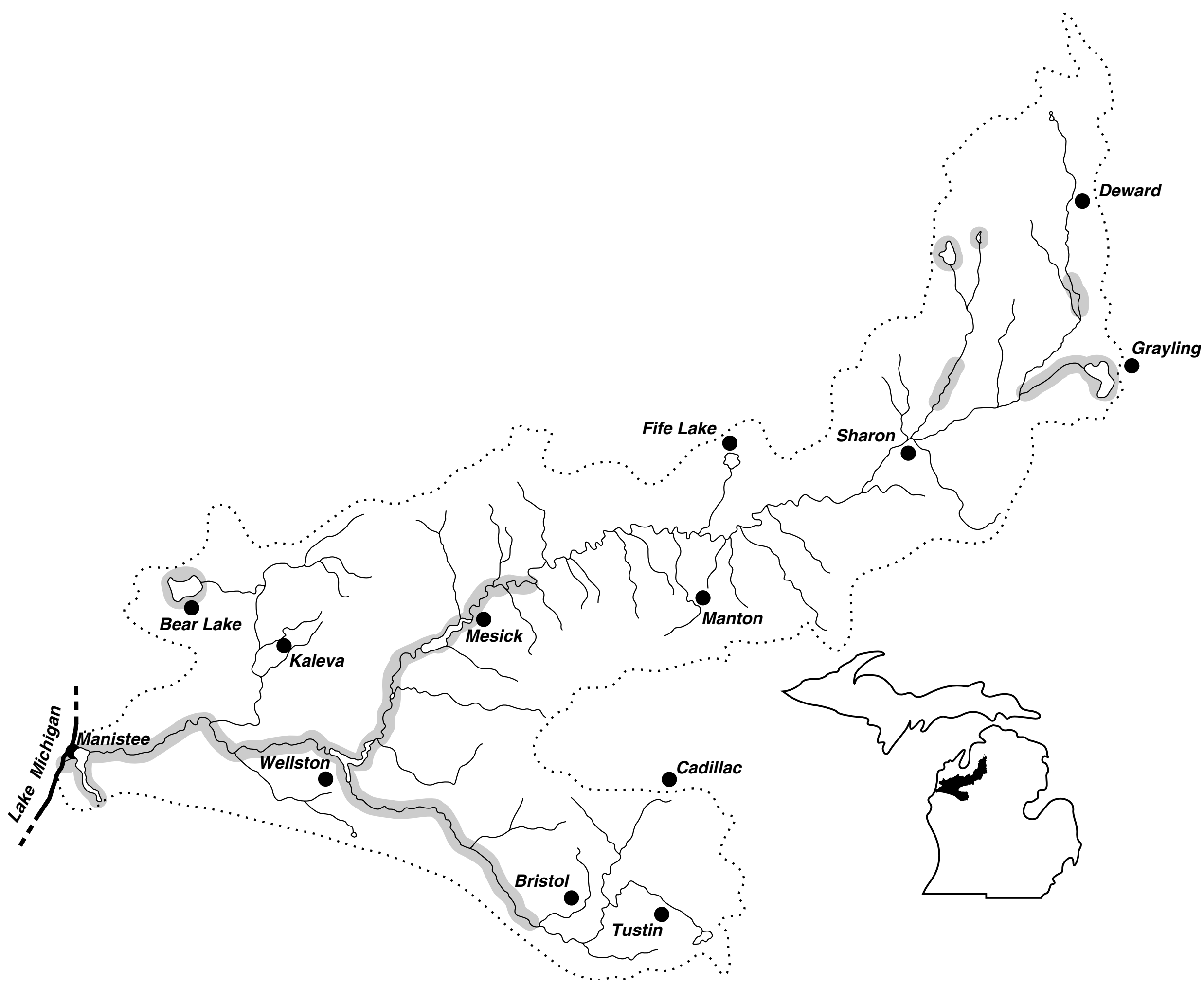


Bluntnose minnow (*Pimephales notatus*)

Habitat:

feeding
- quiet pools and backwaters of medium to large streams, lakes, and impoundments
- clear warm water
- some aquatic vegetation
- firm substrates
- tolerates all gradients, turbidity, organic and inorganic pollutants

spawning
- eggs deposited on the underside of flat stones or objects
- nests in sand or gravel substrate

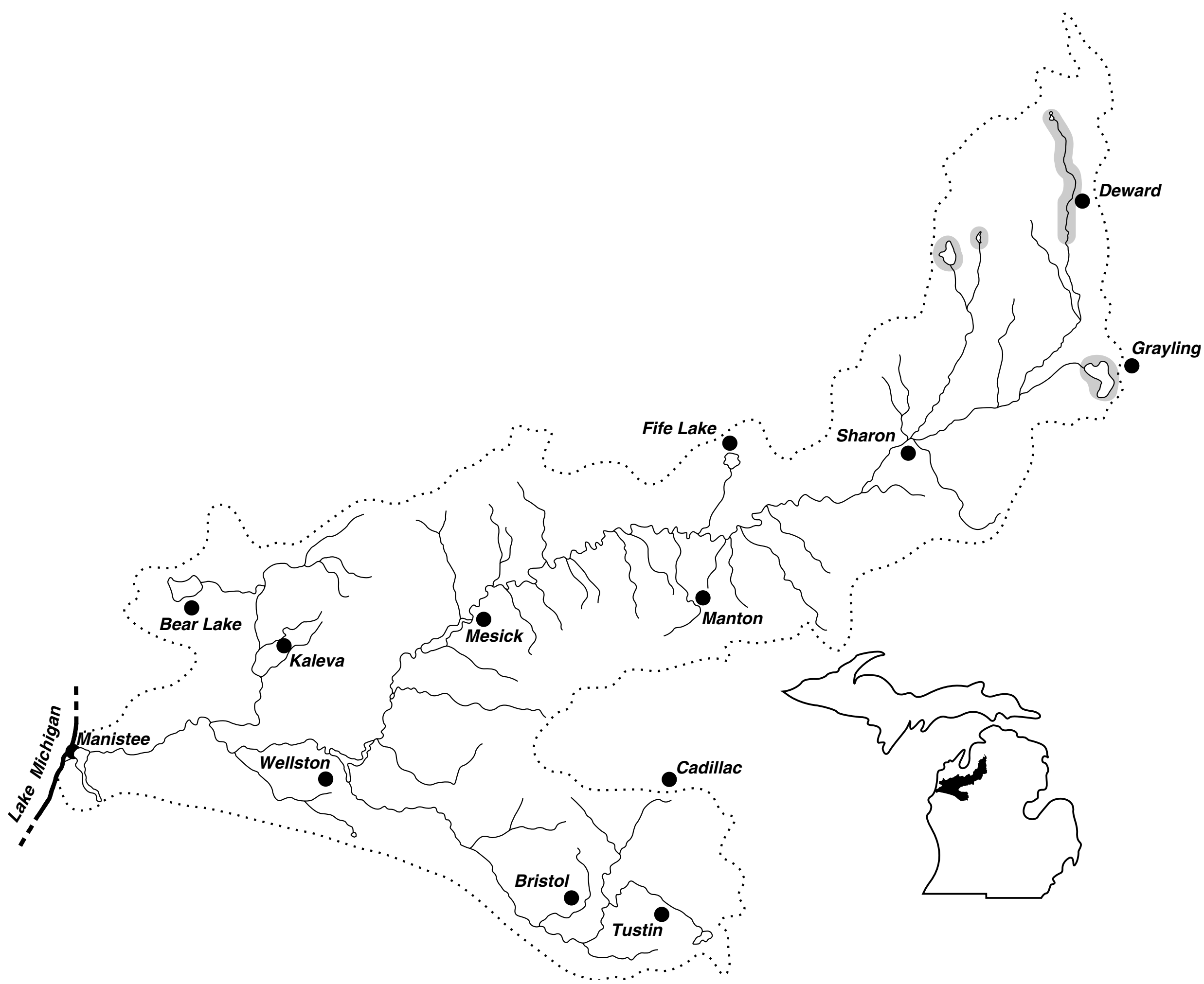


Fathead minnow (*Pimephales promelas*)

Habitat:

feeding - pools of small streams, lakes, and impoundments
- tolerant of turbidity, high temperatures, and low oxygen

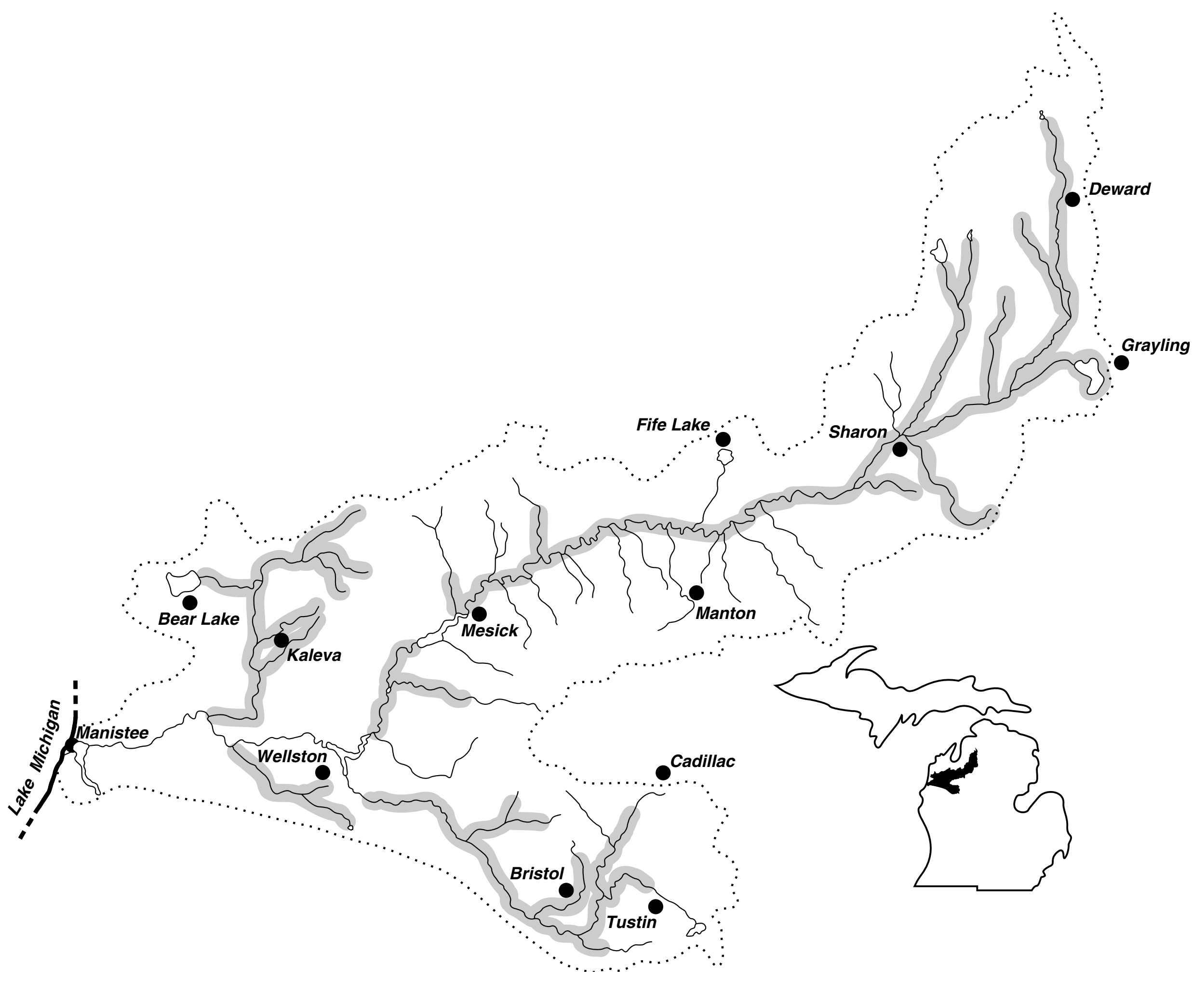
spawning - on underside of objects in water 2 to 3 feet deep
- prefer sand, marl, or gravel substrate



Blacknose dace (*Rhinichthys atratulus*)

Habitat:

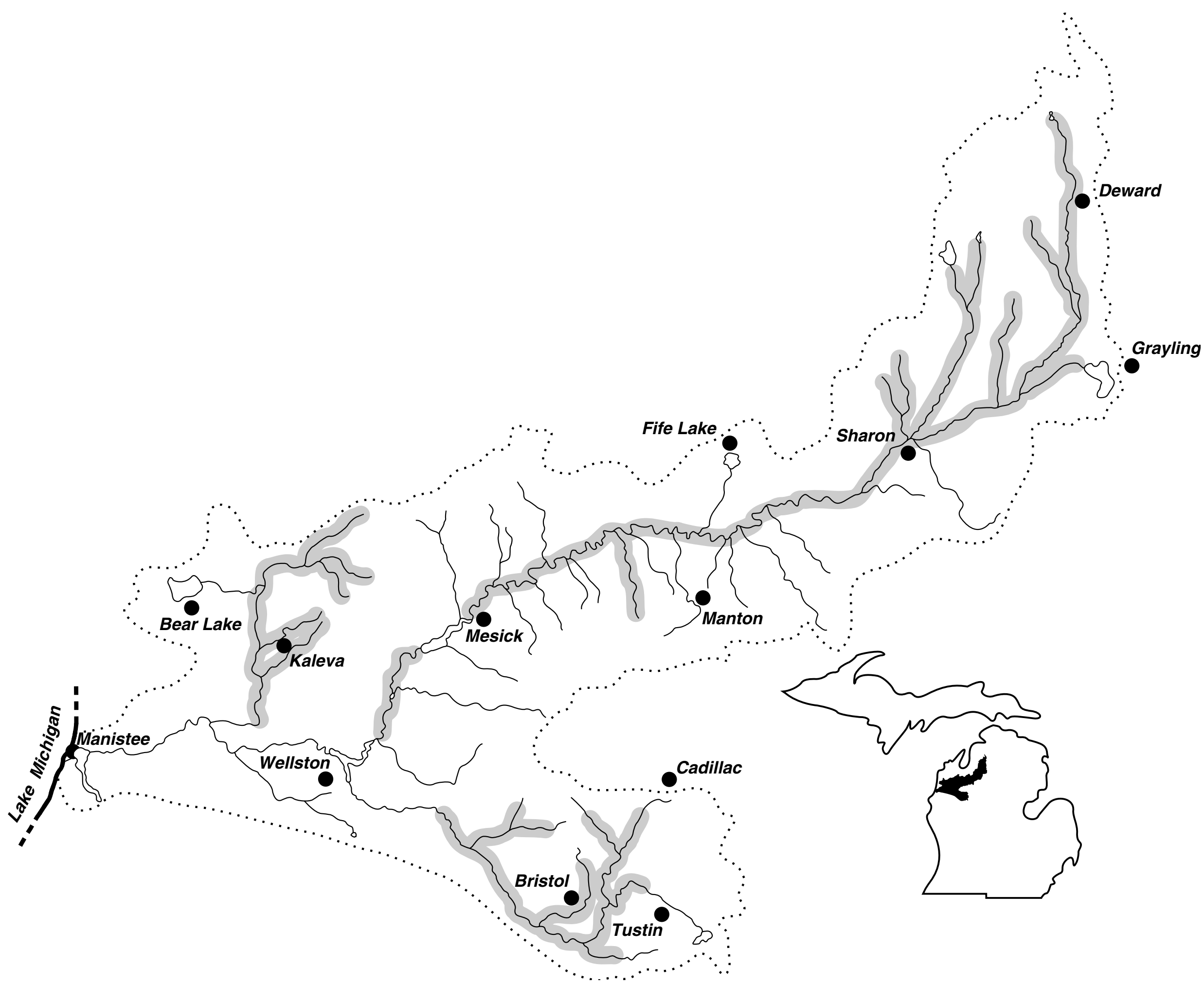
feeding	- moderate to high gradient streams
	- sand and gravel substrate
	- clear cool water in pools with deep holes and undercut banks
	- does not tolerate turbidity and silt well
spawning	- riffles with gravel substrate and fast current
winter refuge	- larger waters



Longnose dace (*Rhinichthys cataractae*)

Habitat:

feeding - lakes and streams
- high gradient
- gravel or boulder substrate



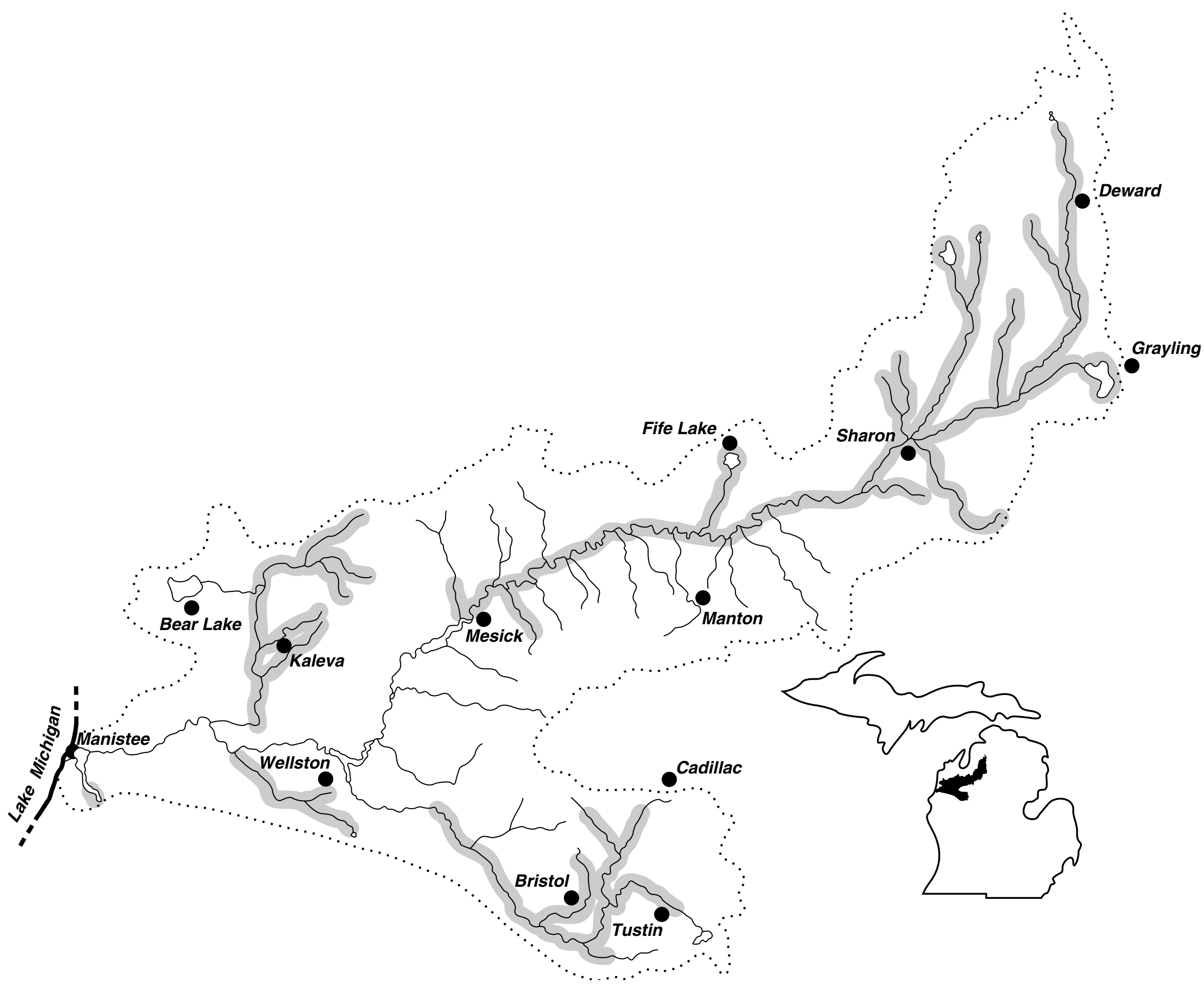
Creek chub (*Semotilus atromaculatus*)

Habitat:

feeding - streams, rivers, or shore waters of lakes and impoundments
- can tolerate intermittent flows
- tolerates moderate turbidity

spawning - gravel nests
- low current

winter refuge - deeper pools and runs

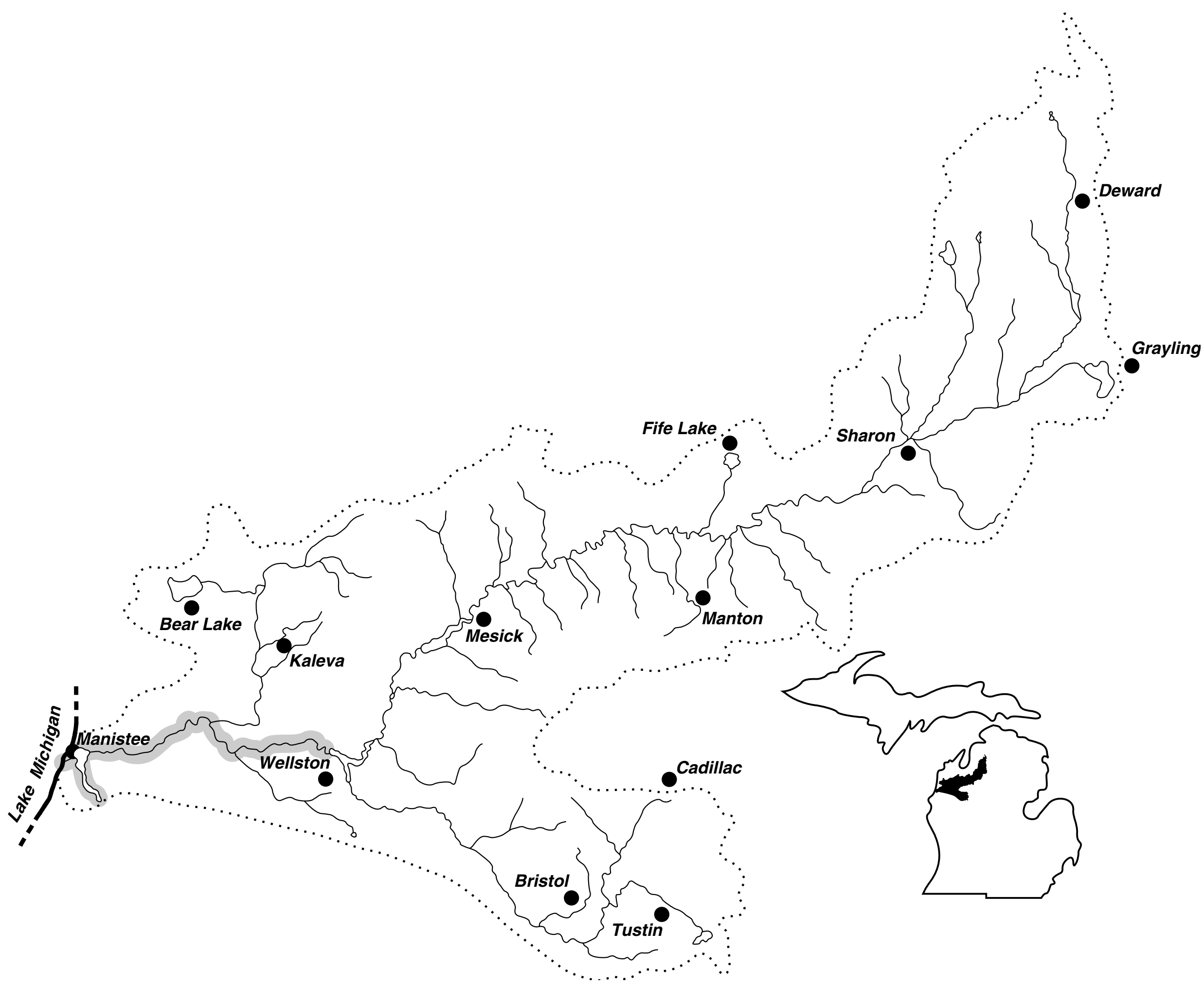


Quillback (*Carpoides cyprinus*)

Habitat:

feeding
- clear to turbid water
- Lake Michigan
- sand, sandy gravel, sandy silt, or clay-silt substrate
- medium- to low-gradient rivers and streams; also lakes and sloughs

spawning
- streams or overflow areas of bends of rivers or bays of lakes
- scatter eggs over sand or mud substrate

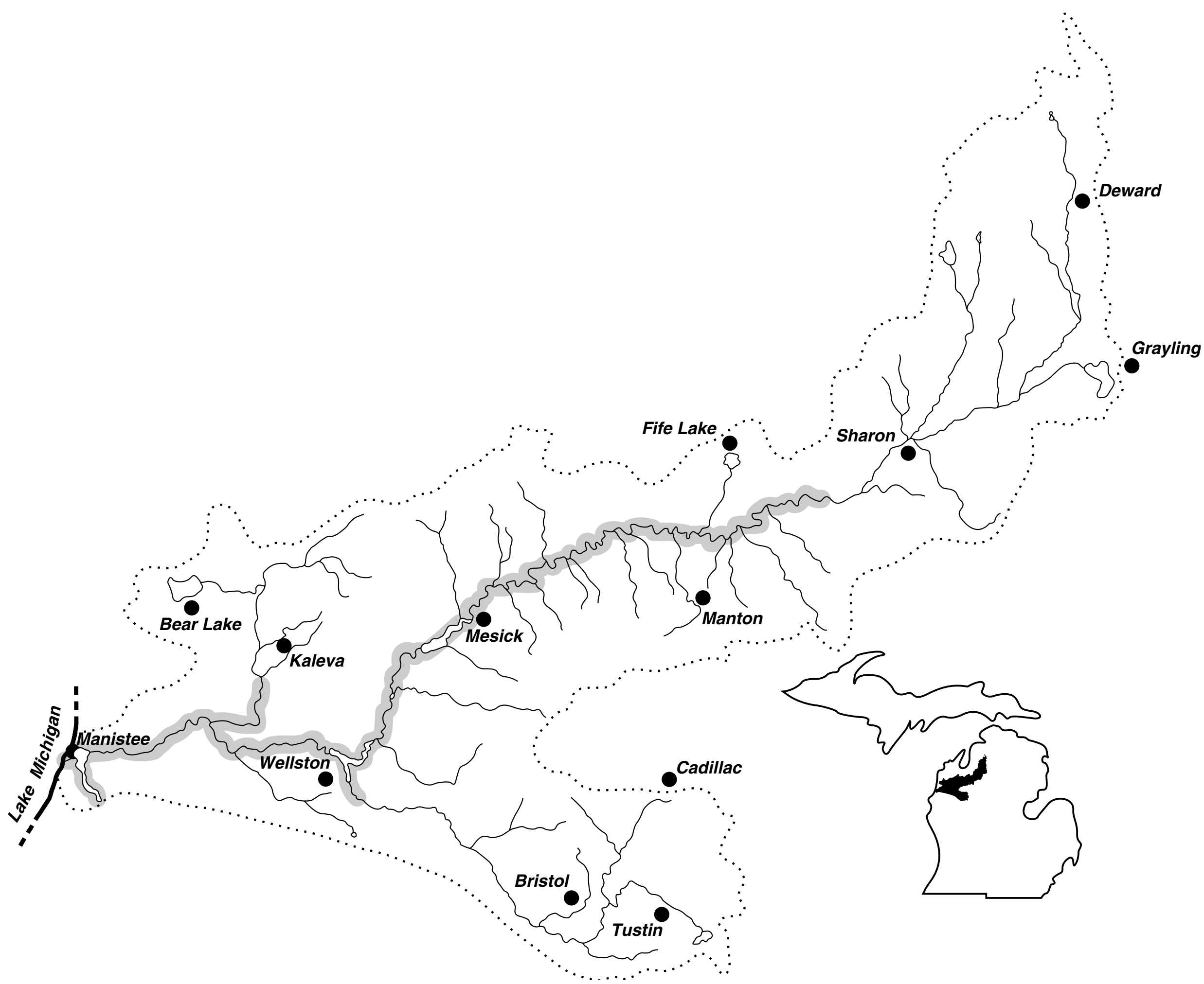


Longnose sucker (*Catostomus catostomus*)

Habitat:

feeding - clear, cold rivers and lakes

spawning - in streams or lake shallows
- current
- gravel substrate

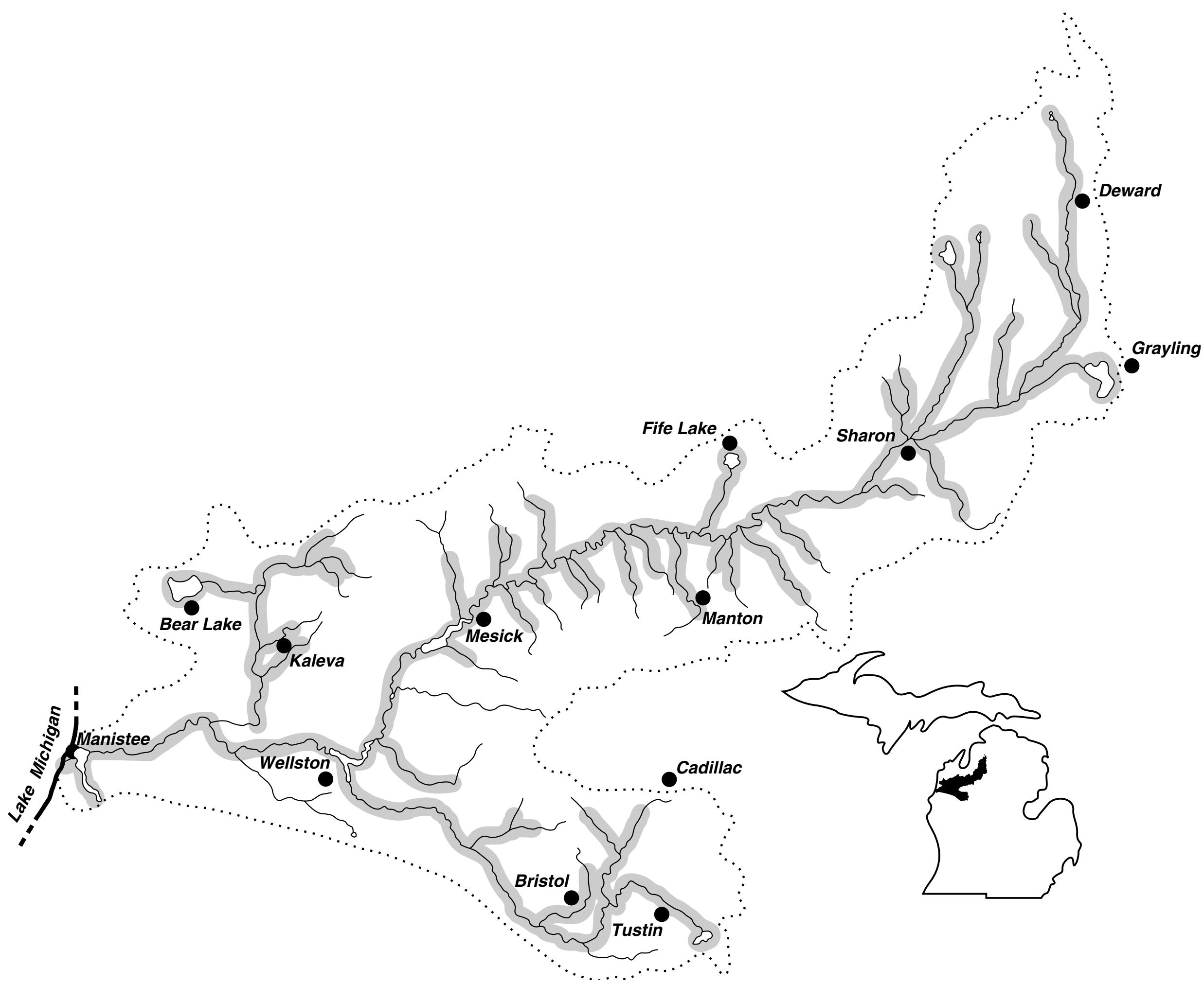


White sucker (*Catostomus commersoni*)

Habitat:

feeding - streams, rivers, lakes, and impoundments
- can inhabit highly turbid and polluted waters

spawning - quiet gravelly shallow areas of streams



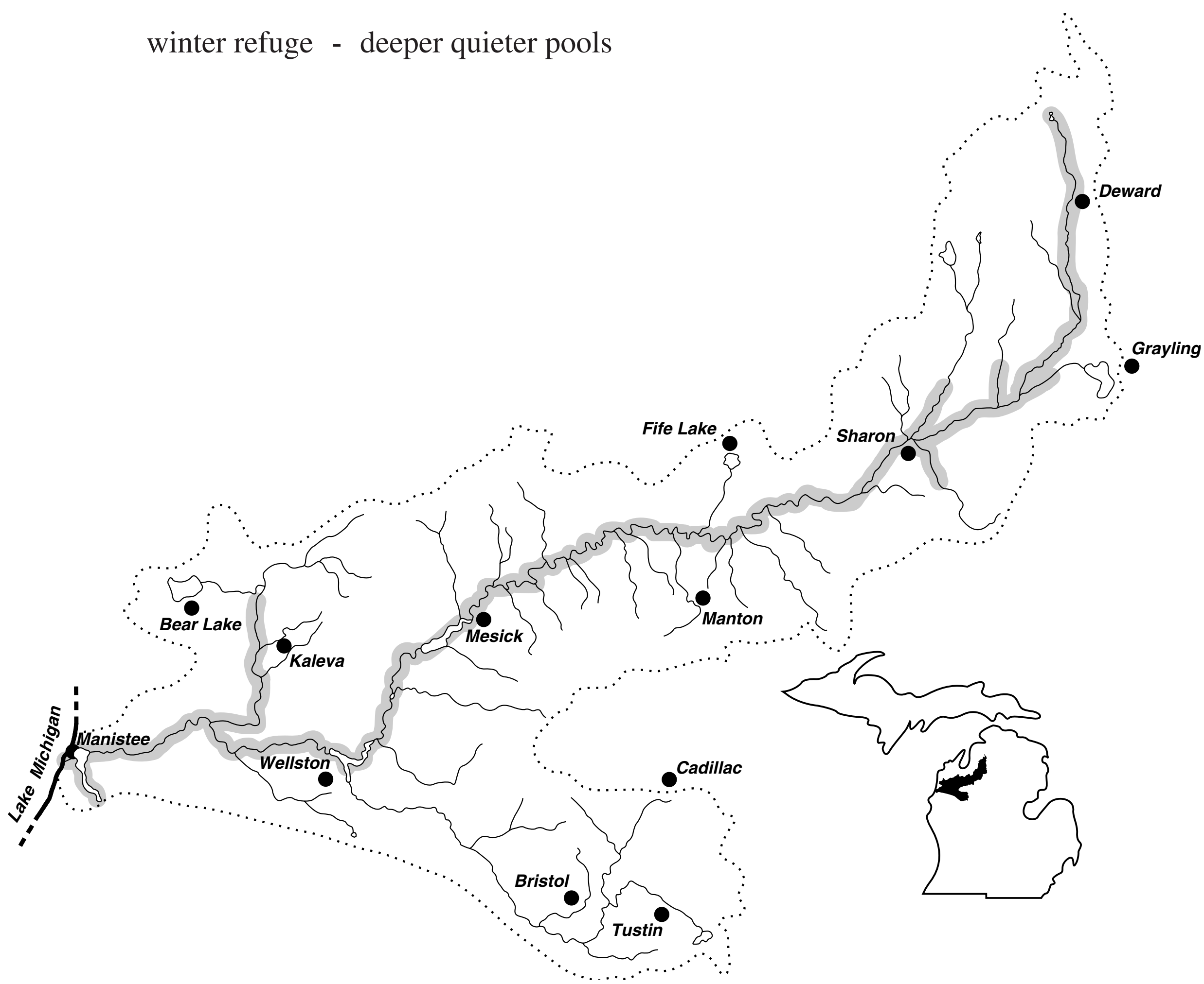
Northern hog sucker (*Hypentelium nigricans*)

Habitat:

feeding - gravel or rubble substrate
- riffles and adjacent pools of warm shallow streams
- clear water
- doesn't like turbidity or siltation
- avoids profuse amounts of aquatic vegetation

spawning - riffles
- shallow gravel substrate
- high gradient

winter refuge - deeper quieter pools

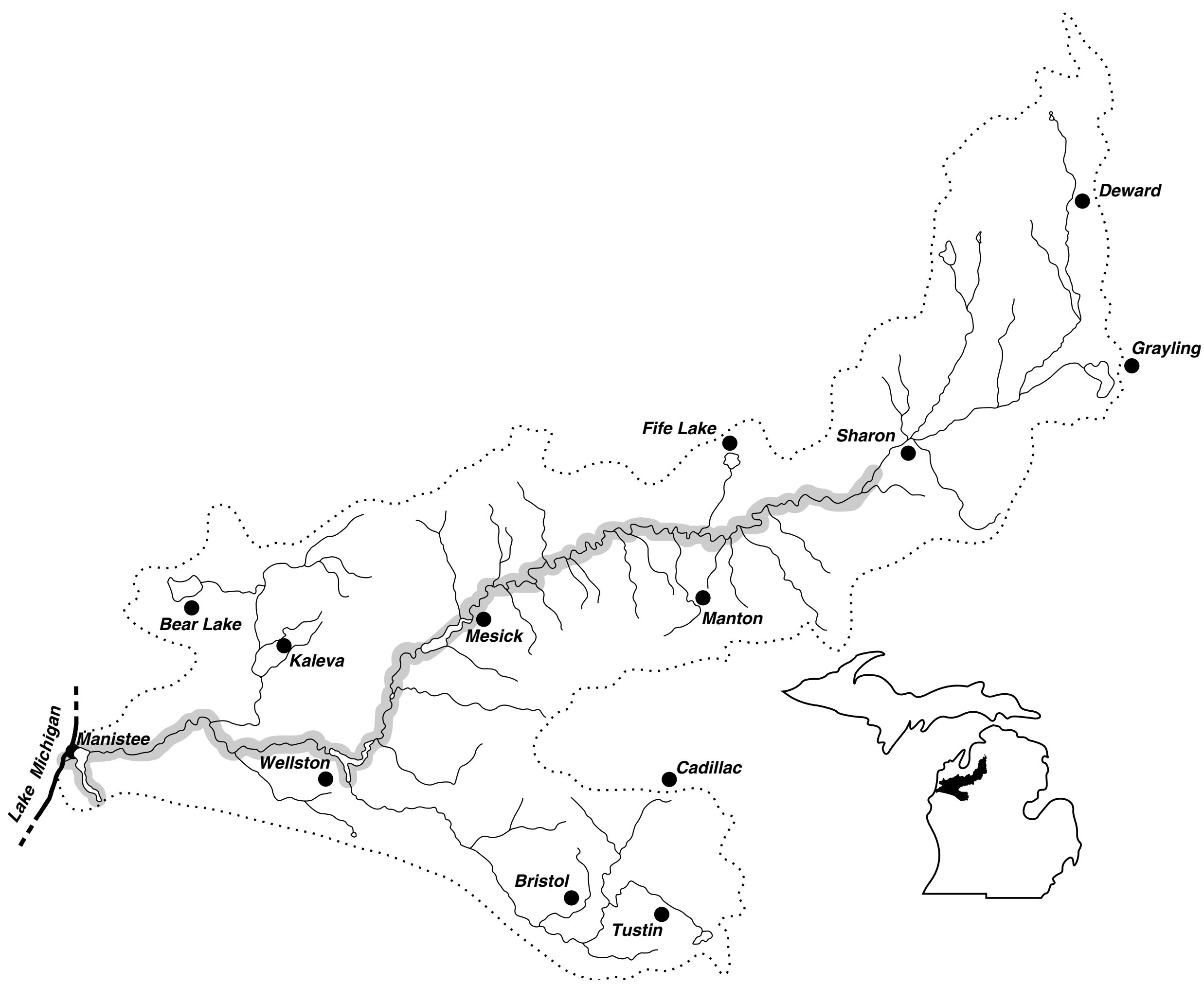


Silver redhorse (*Moxostoma anisurum*)

Habitat:

feeding
- streams, rivers, lakes, and impoundments
- low current
- pollution and turbidity intolerant

spawning
- swift current in rivers, do not spawn in tributaries
- males territorial
- gravel to rubble substrate



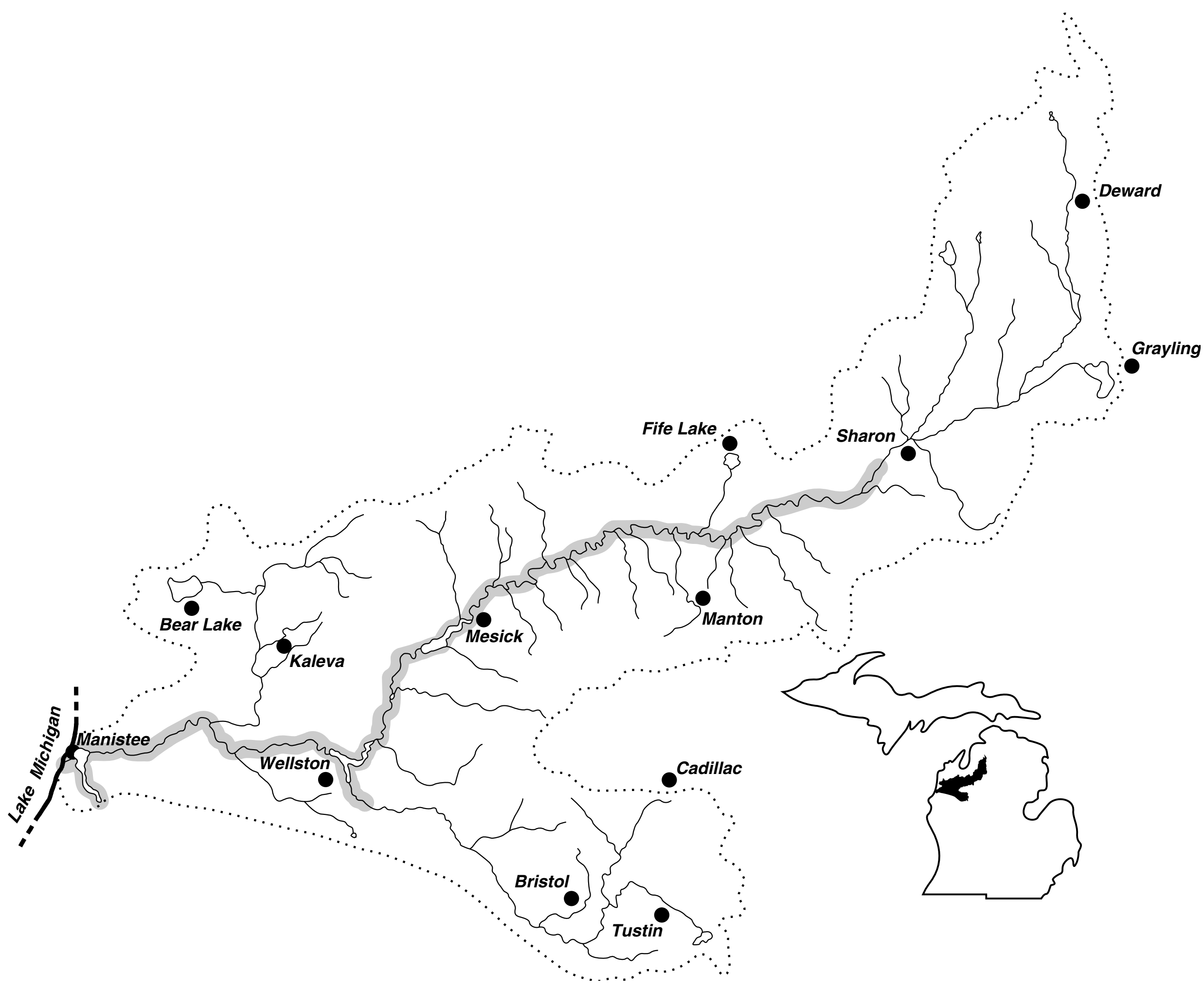
Golden redhorse (*Moxostoma erythrurum*)

Habitat:

feeding - warm medium gradient streams and rivers
- clear riffly streams
- medium size streams and rivers
- tolerates some turbidity and silt

spawning - shallow gravelly riffles

winter refuge - larger streams

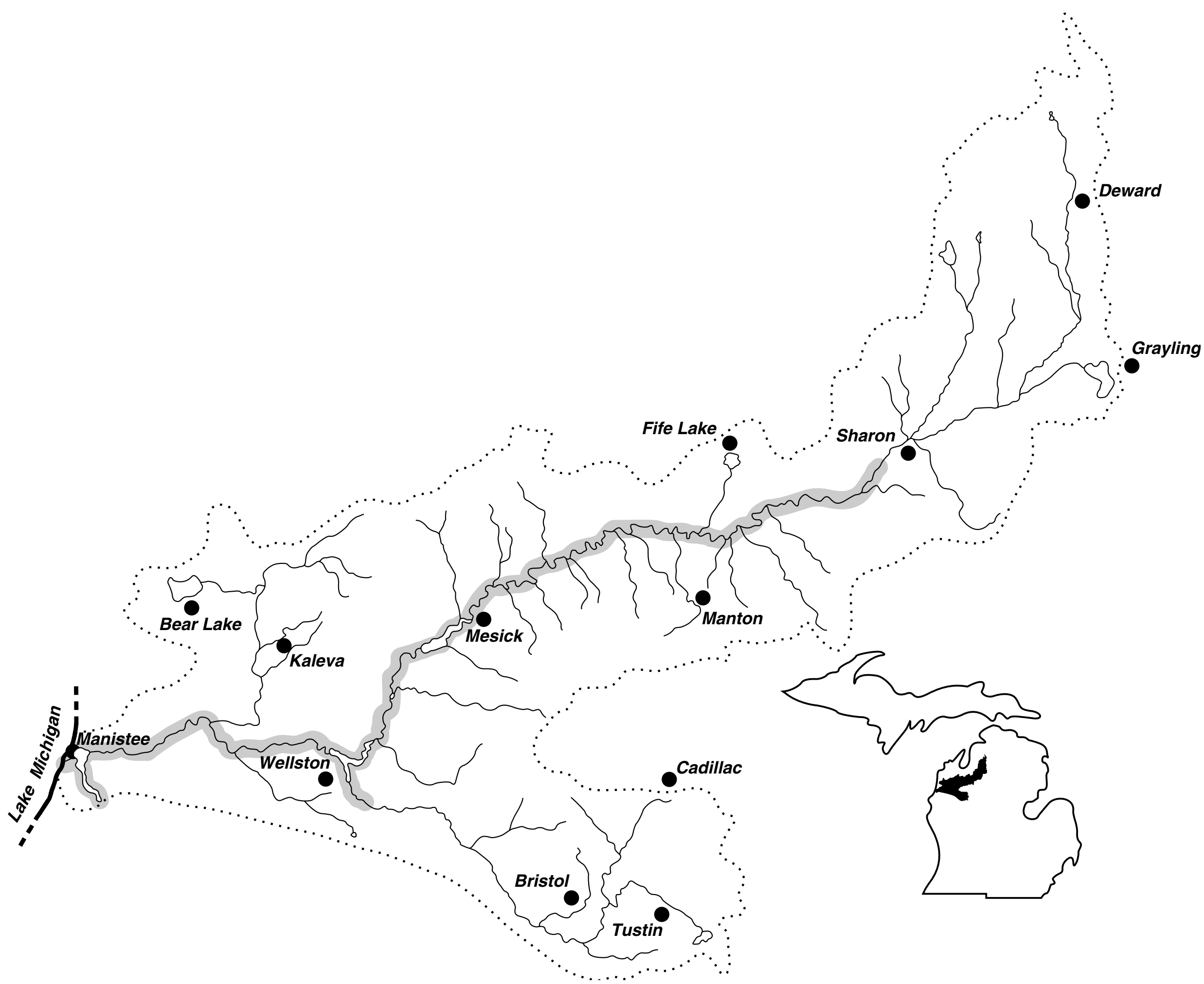


Shorthead redhorse (*Moxostoma macrolepidotum*)

Habitat:

feeding - downstream sections of large rivers, lakes, and impoundments
- rocky substrates
- swift water near riffles
- clear to slightly turbid water

spawning - gravelly riffles in smaller feeder streams

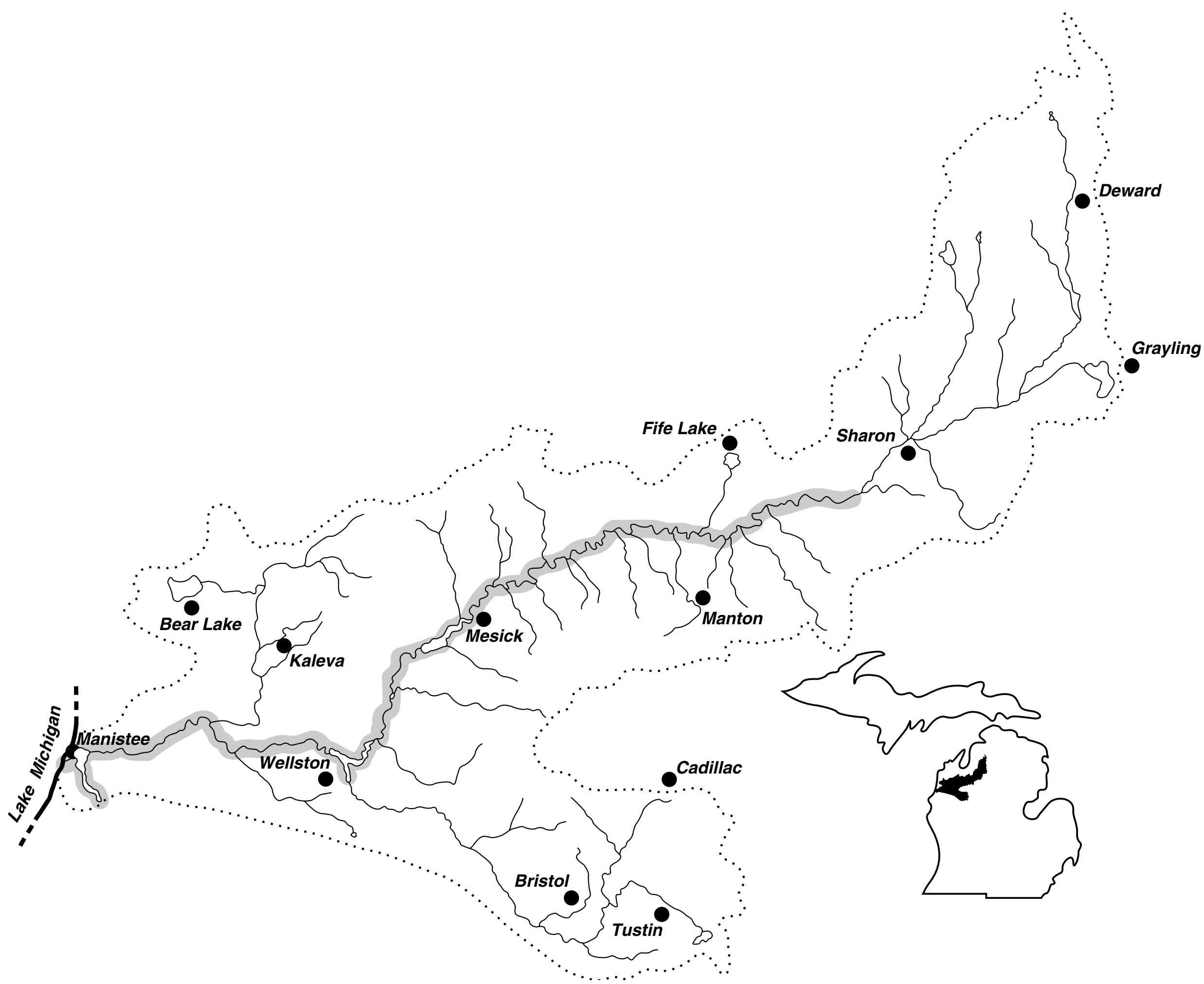


Greater redhorse (*Moxostoma valenciennesi*)

Habitat:

feeding - large clear streams
- clean sand, gravel, or boulder substrate
- intolerant of excessive turbidity and chemical pollutants

spawning - moderately rapid current

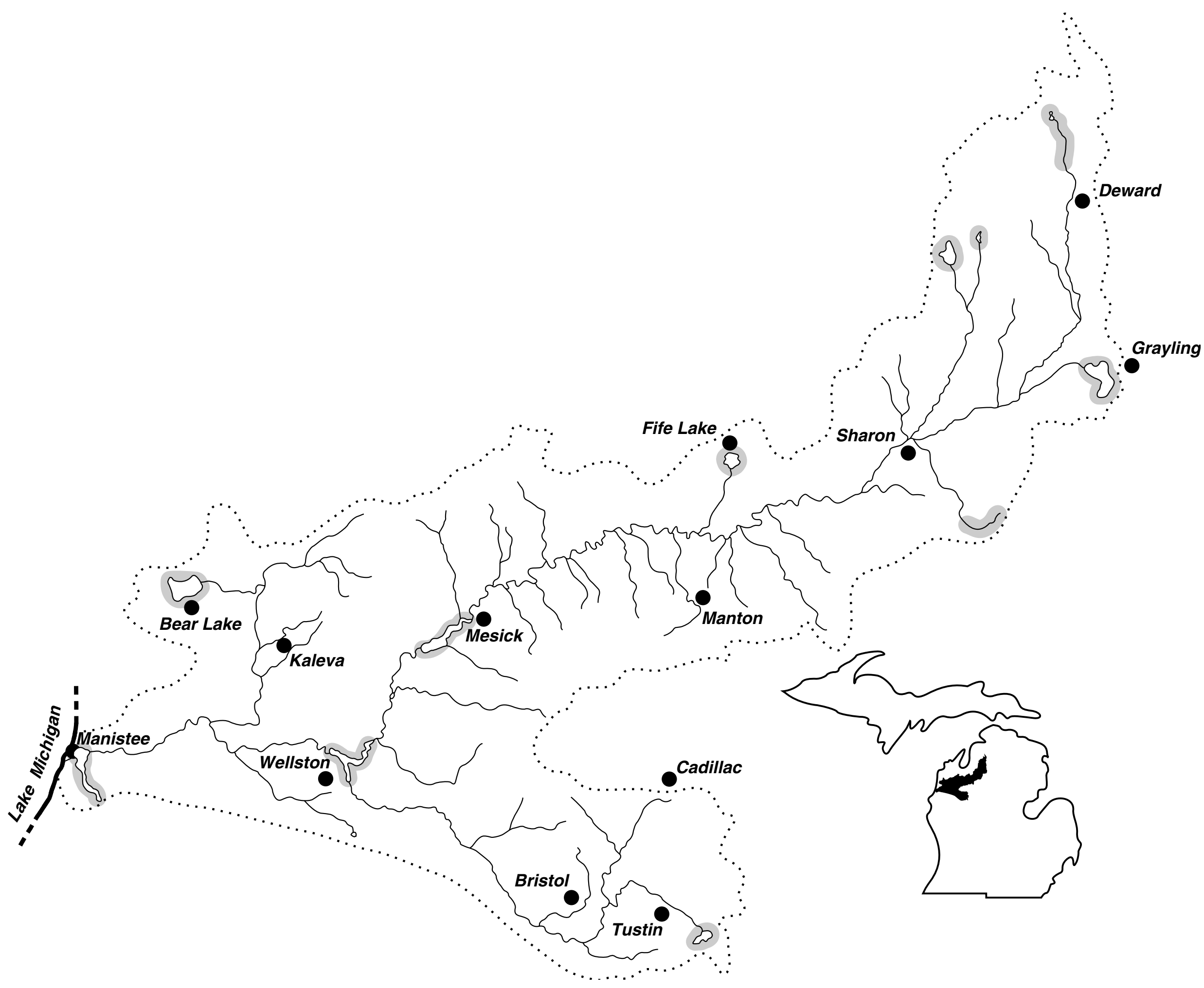


Black bullhead (*Ameiurus melas*)

Habitat:

feeding
- turbid water
- silt bottom
- low gradient small to medium streams, pools, and headwaters of large rivers; also in lakes and impoundments
- can tolerate very warm water and very low dissolved oxygen

spawning
- nest in moderate to heavy vegetation or woody debris and under overhanging banks

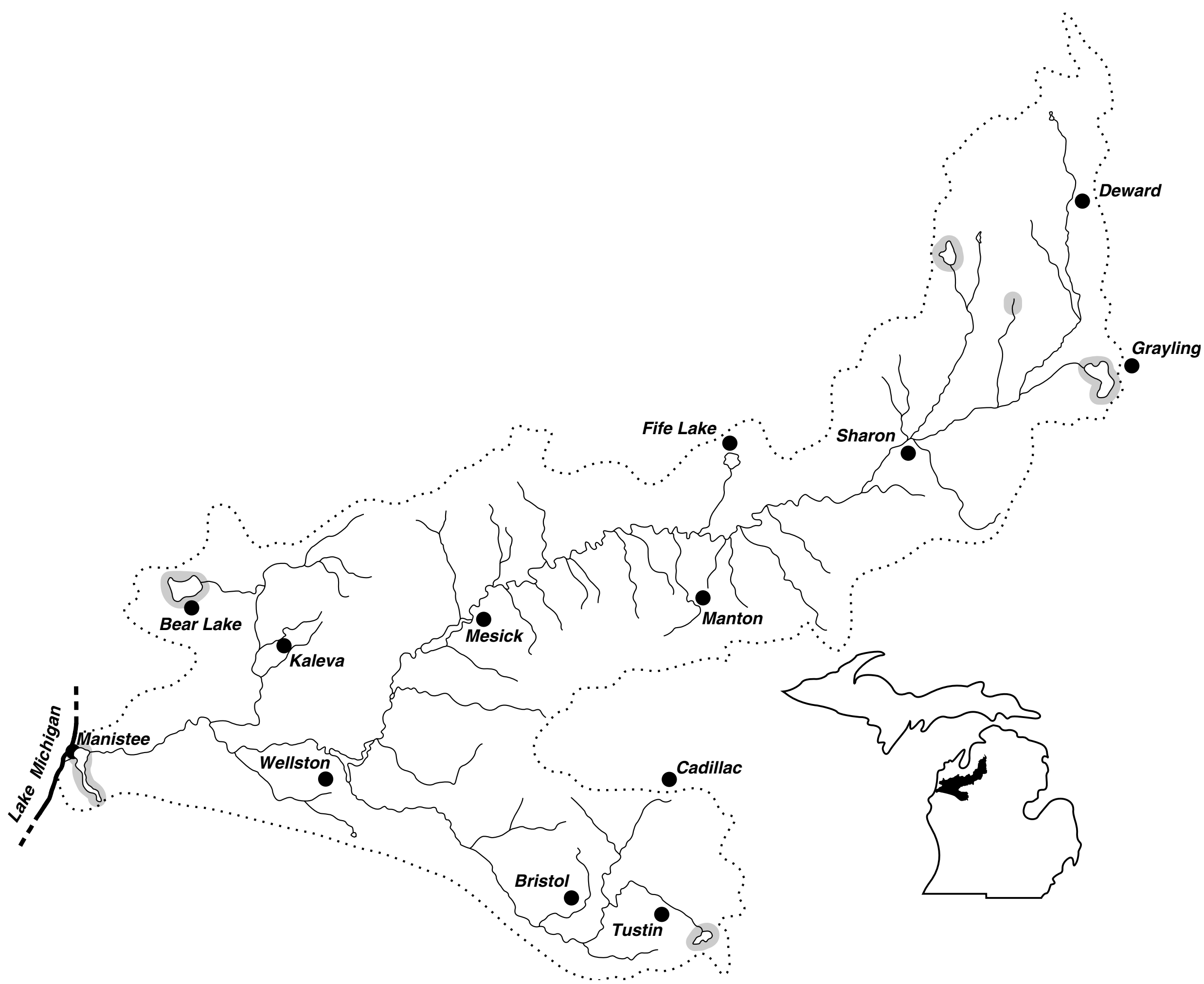


Yellow bullhead (*Ameiurus natalis*)

Habitat:

feeding - clear flowing water
- heavy vegetation
- low gradient streams, lakes, and impoundments
- tolerant of low oxygen

spawning - nest under a stream bank or near stones or stumps



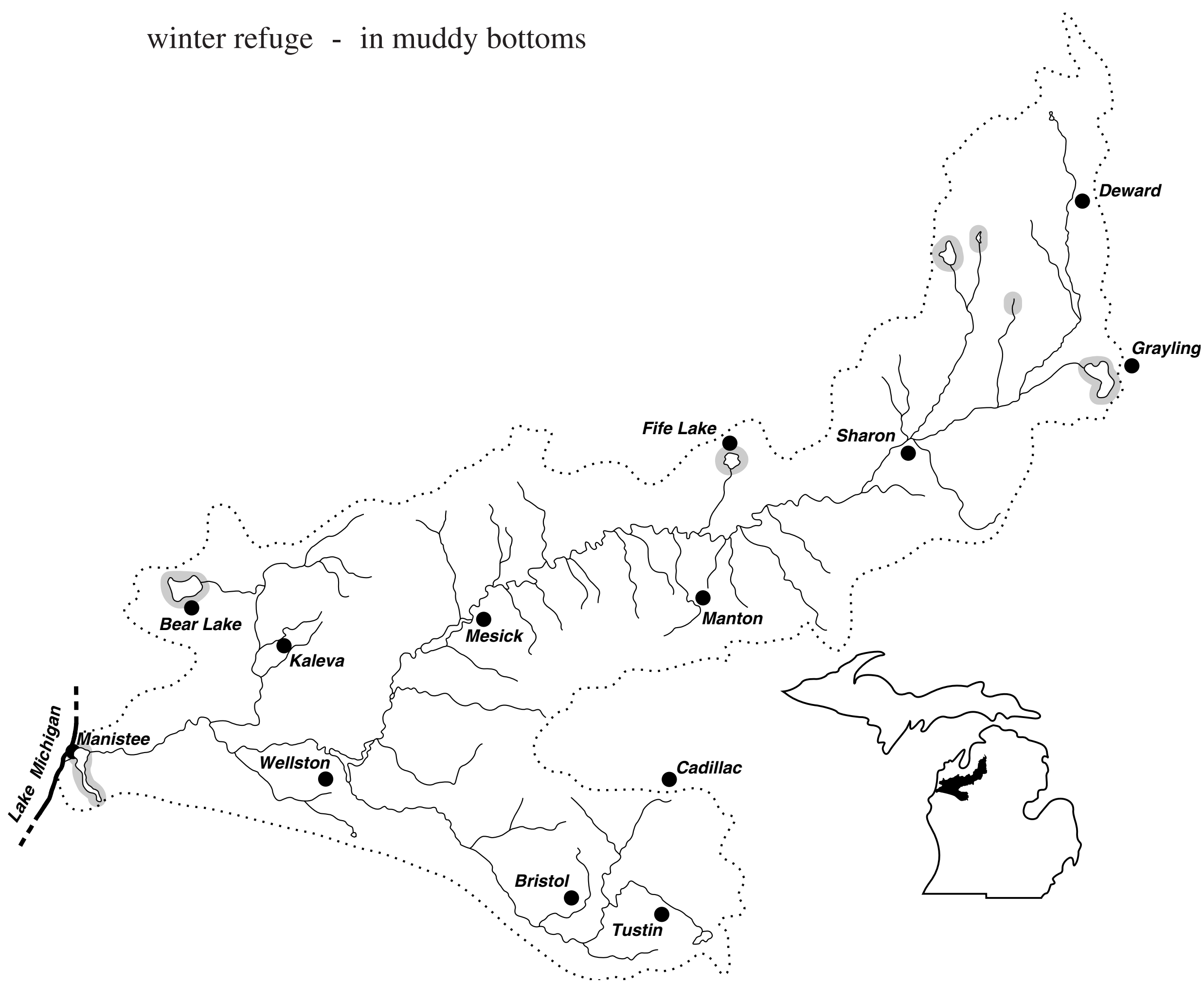
Brown bullhead (*Ameiurus nebulosus*)

Habitat:

feeding - larger streams and rivers, lakes and impoundments
- clear cool water with little clayey silt
- moderate amounts of aquatic vegetation
- sand, gravel, or muck substrate
- not tolerant of turbid water
- tolerant of warm water and low oxygen

spawning - nest in mud or sand substrate among rooted aquatic vegetation usually near a stump, tree, or rock

winter refuge - in muddy bottoms

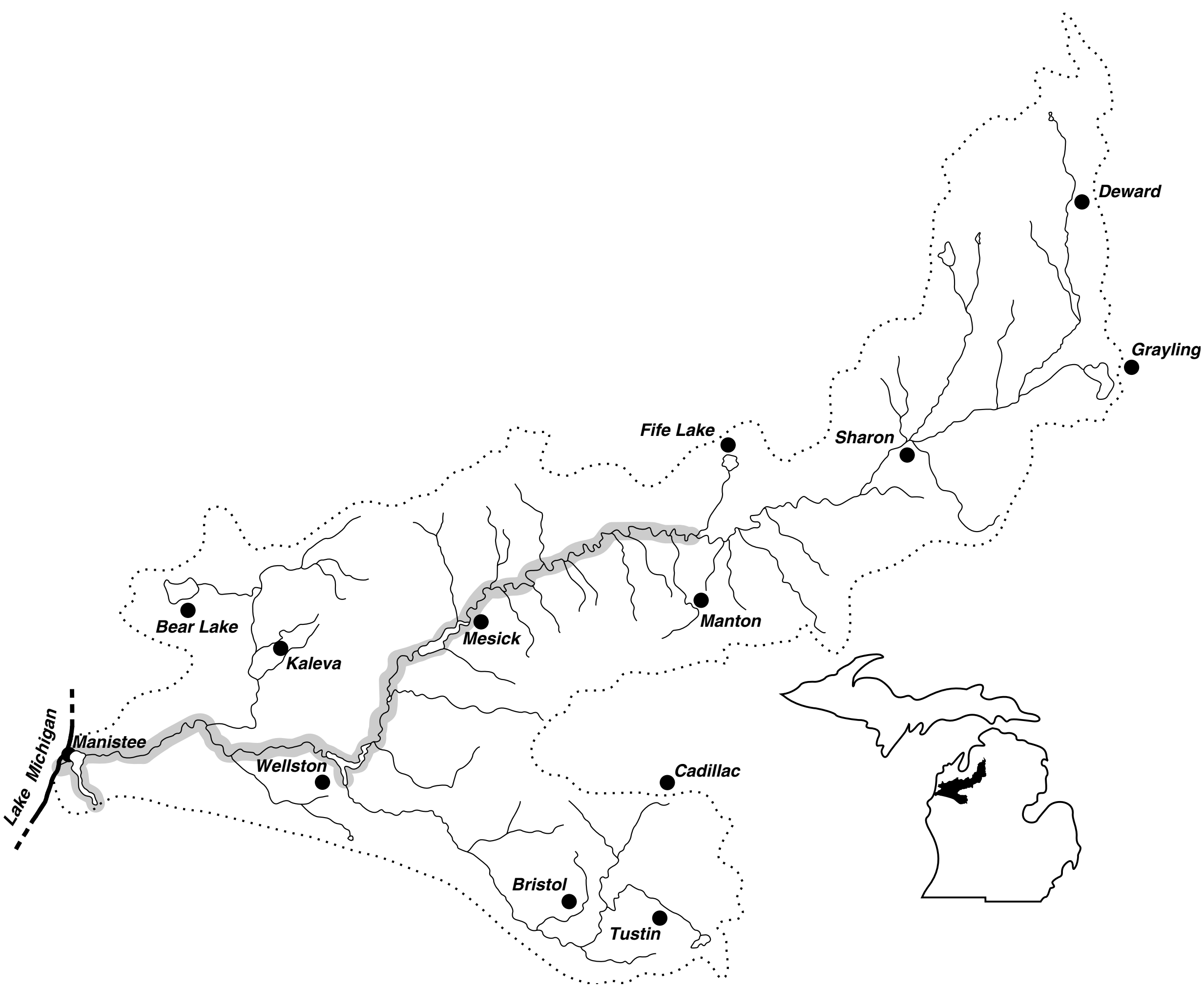


Channel catfish (*Ictalurus punctatus*)

Habitat:

feeding - moderately-clear, deeper waters of rivers, lakes, and impoundments
- sand, gravel, or rubble substrate
- low to moderate gradient

spawning - secluded semi-dark areas such as holes, under banks, log jams, or rocks

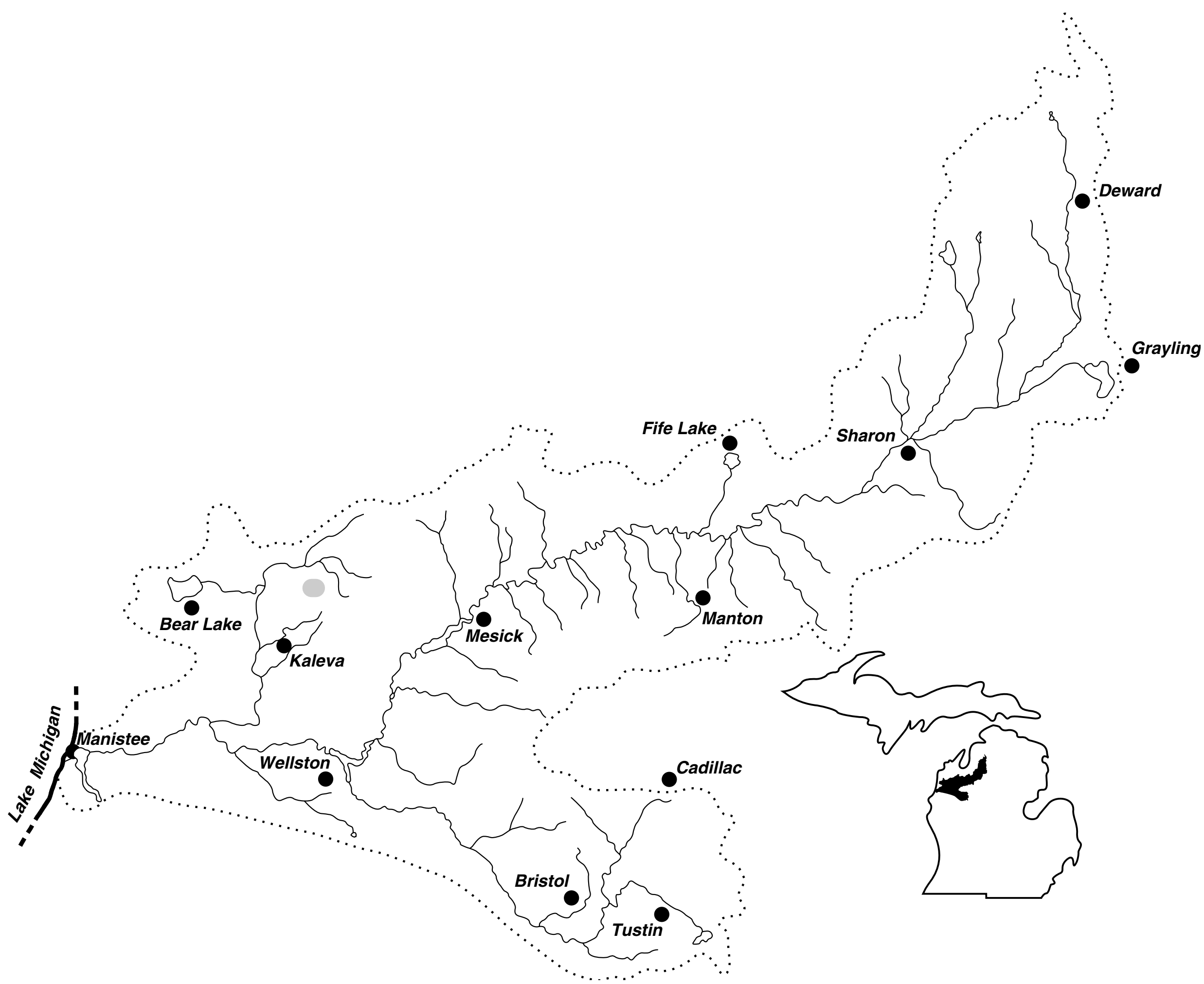


Tadpole madtom (*Noturus gyrinus*)

Habitat:

feeding
- vegetative cover in low-moderate current waters
- muddy substrate with extensive vegetation
- clear waters of streams, rivers, and lakes

spawning
- mostly in rivers, sometimes shallows of lakes
- nests in dark cavities (ex: beneath boards, logs, crayfish burrows)

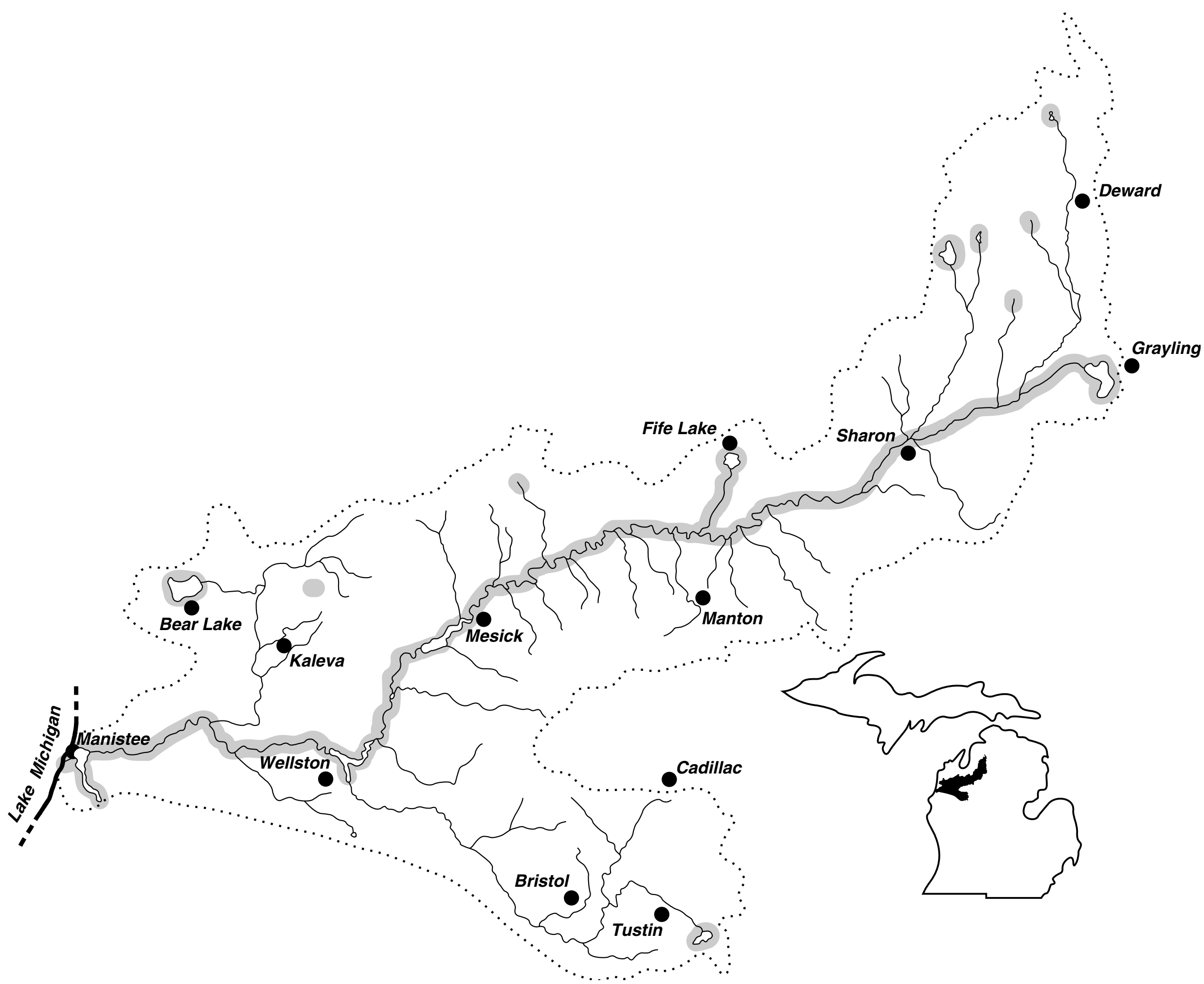


Northern pike (*Esox lucius*)

Habitat:

feeding - cool to moderately warm streams, rivers, lakes, and impoundments
- vegetation in slow to moderate current

spawning - submerged vegetation with slow current in shallow water

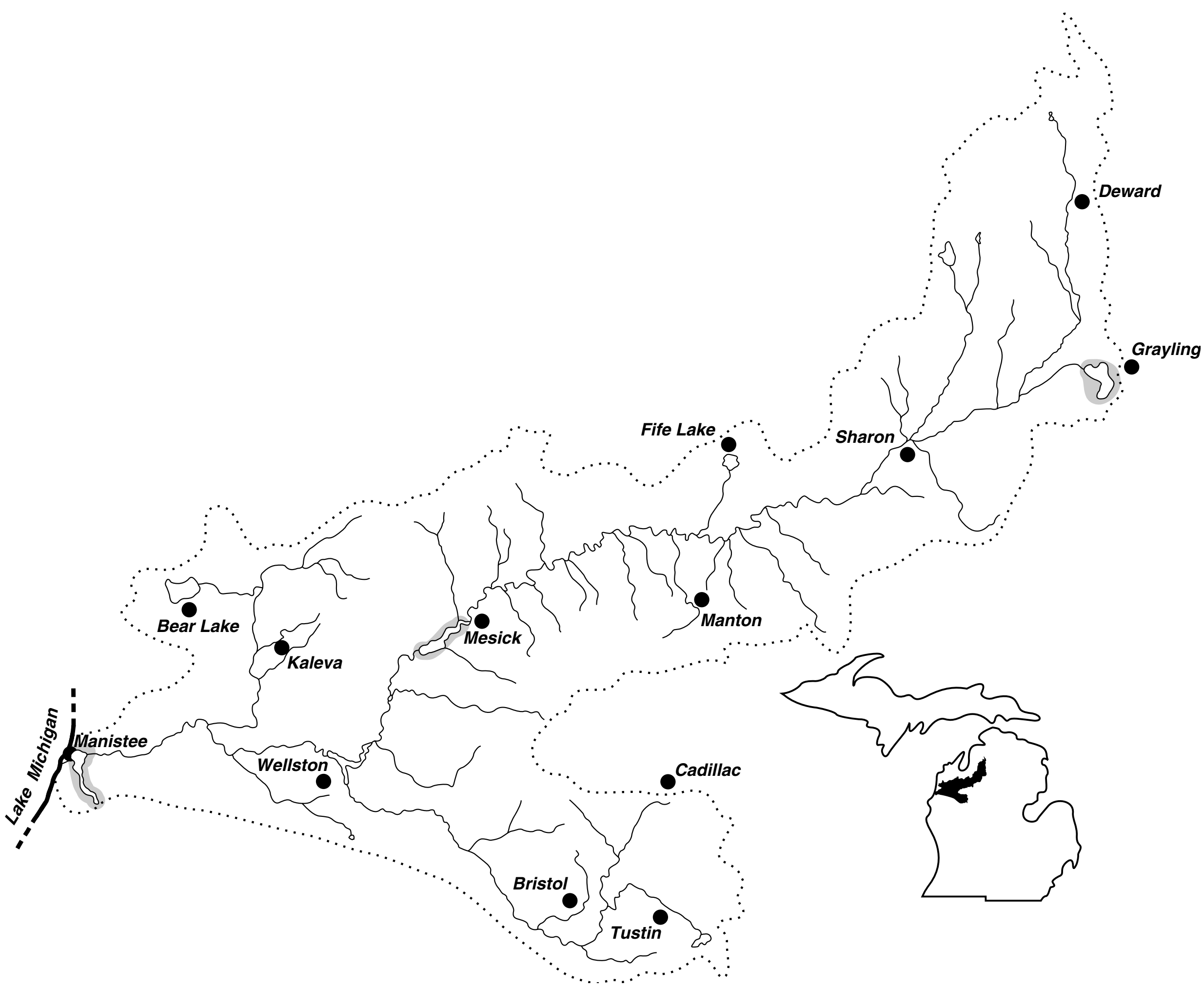


Tiger muskellunge (*Esox masquinongy* x *E. lucius*)

Habitat:

feeding - intermediate between muskellunge and northern pike

spawning - hybrid species; muskellunge x northern pike
- occasionally produced in wild, but most often from hatcheries
- males are sterile, females may be fertile

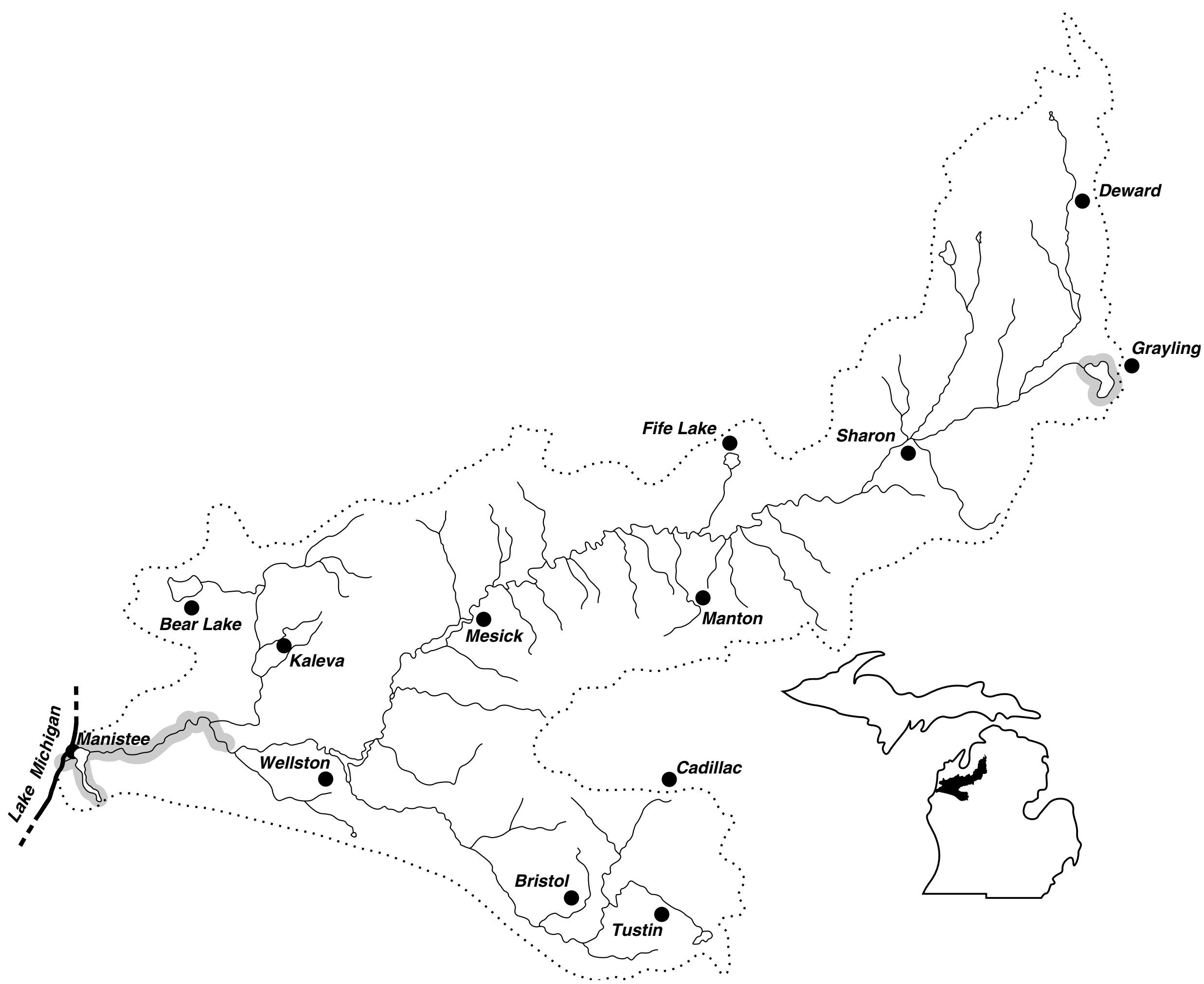


Muskellunge (*Esox masquinongy*)

Habitat:

feeding - warm, heavily vegetated lakes, stumpy weedy bays, and slow heavily vegetated medium to large rivers
- shallow cool water
- tolerant of low oxygen

spawning - clear shallow waters (15-20”) in heavily vegetated areas

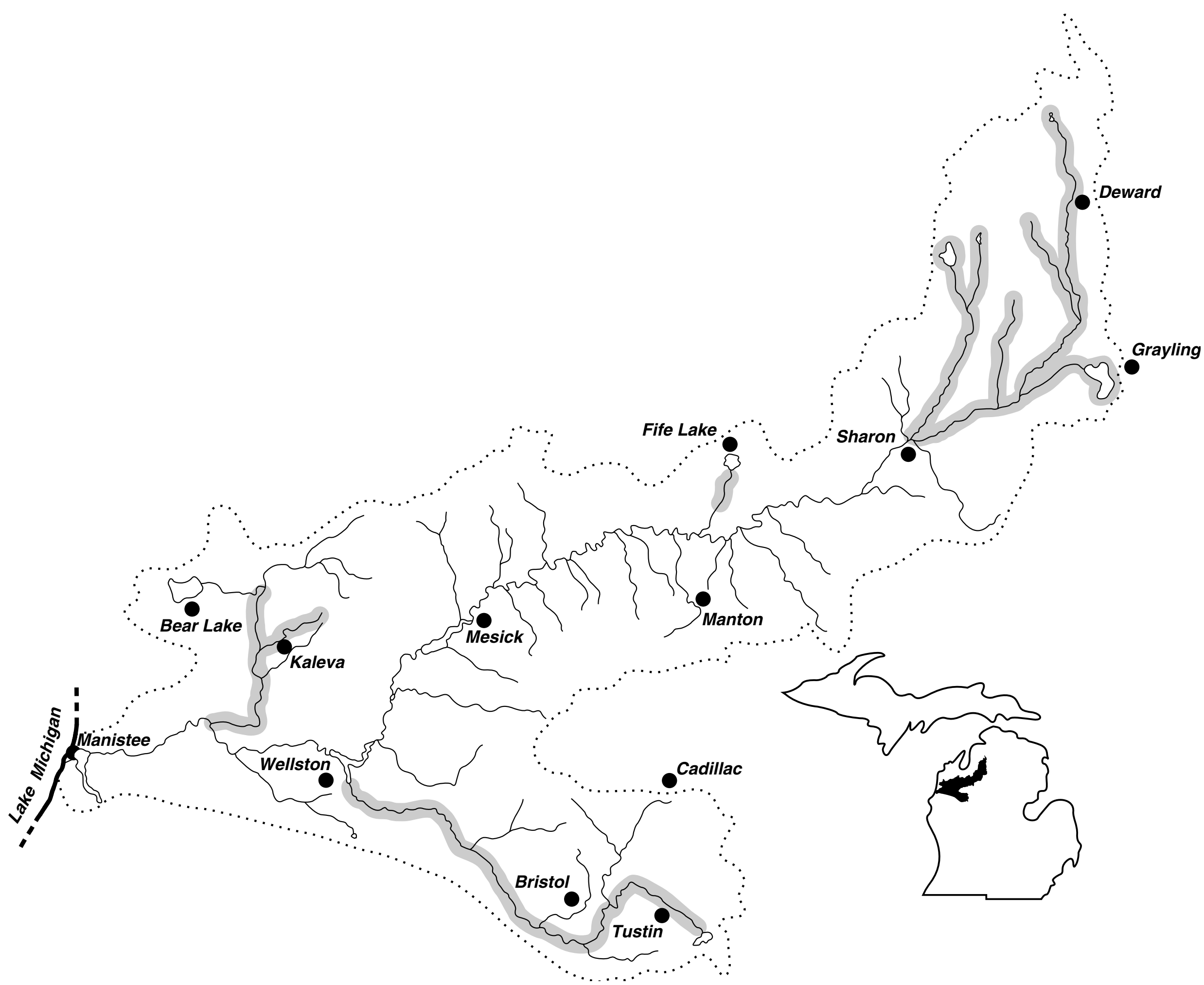


Central mudminnow (*Umbra limi*)

Habitat:

feeding - undisturbed clear, low-gradient streams or rivers and lakes and impoundments
- organic debris, muck, or peat substrates
- aquatic vegetation

spawning - floodplain areas, on vegetation

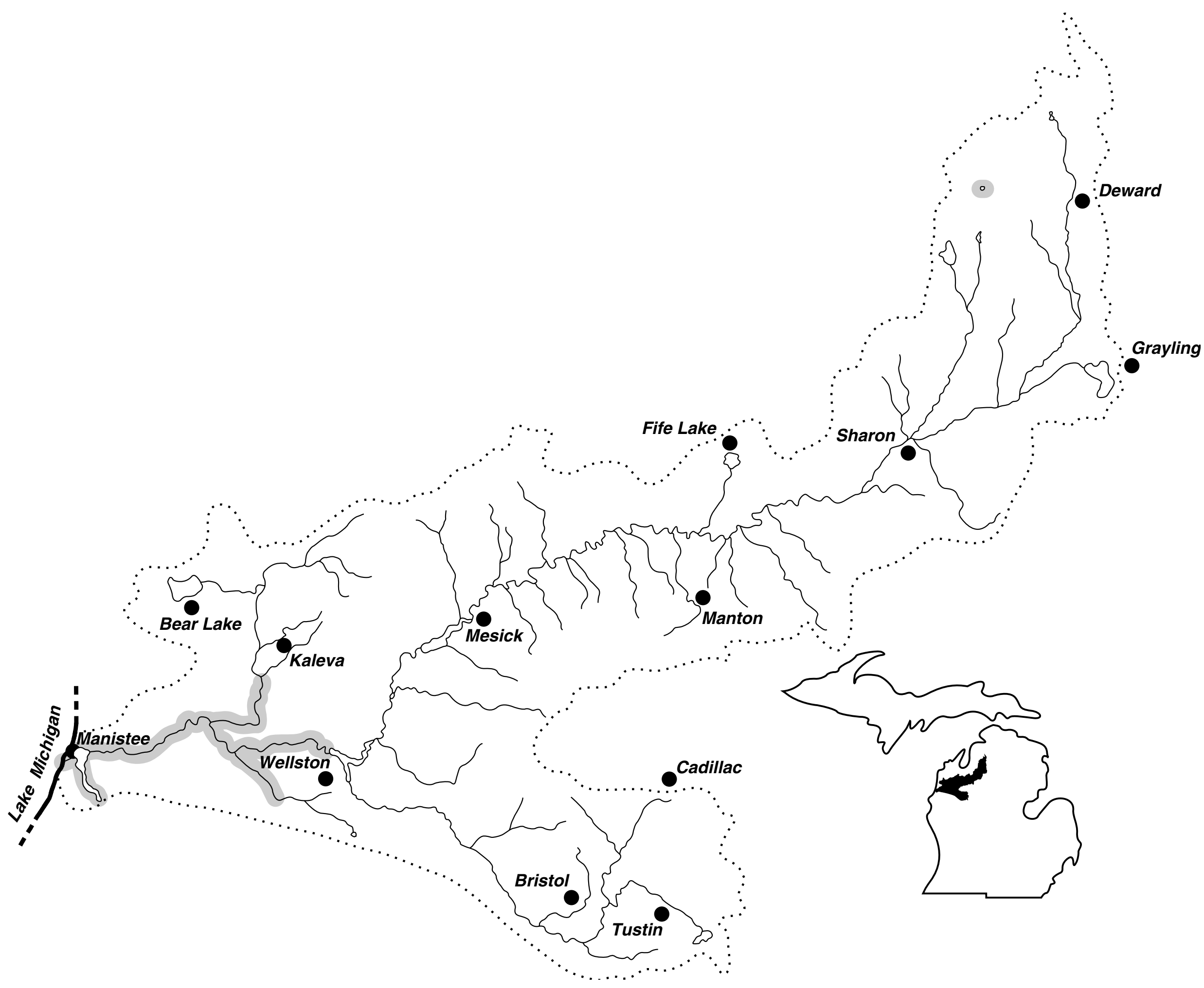


Rainbow Smelt (*Osmerus mordax*)

Habitat:

feeding - midwater of lakes; 42-192 ft. in Lake Michigan

spawning - in streams or off-shore shoals in Lake Michigan
- gravel substrate
- swift current

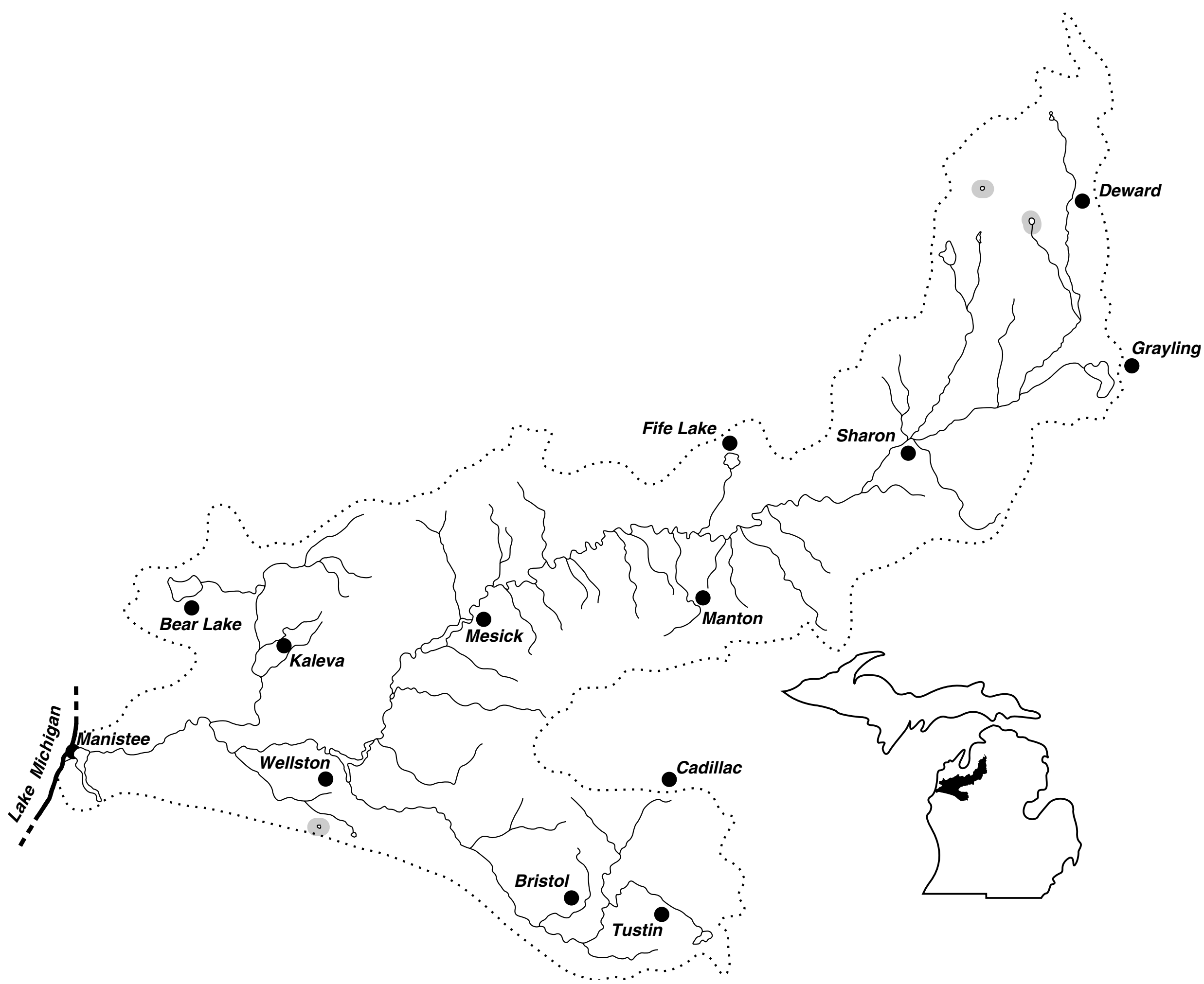


Cisco {Lake herring} (*Coregonus artedi*)

Habitat:

feeding - deep cool lakes, preferably oligotrophic

spawning - usually in lakes
- 3 to 6 feet of water with no vegetation
- often over gravel or stony substrate

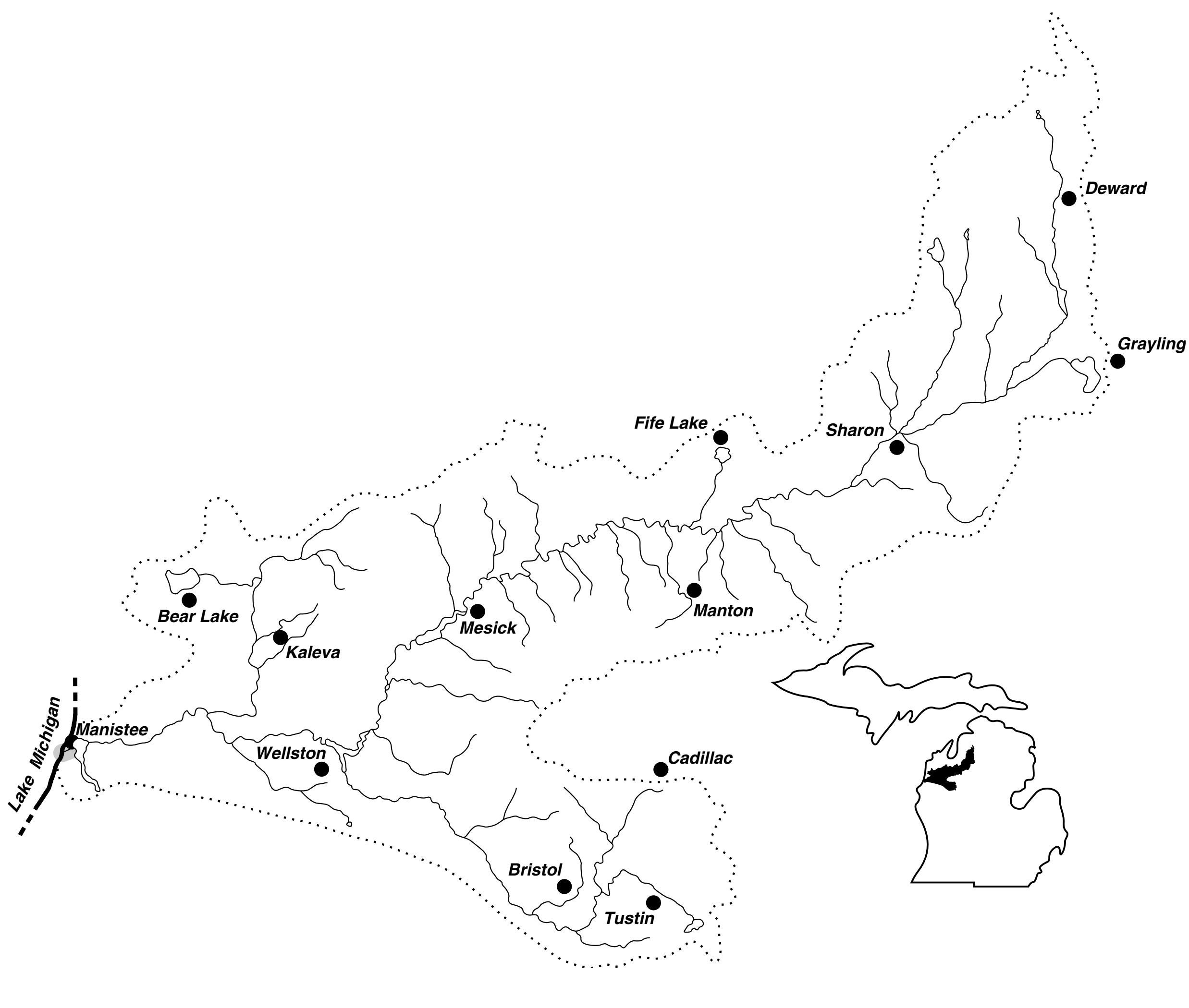


Lake Whitefish (*Coregonus clupeaformis*)

Habitat:

feeding - large cool water; Lake Michigan
- shallow water (for coregonids; 55-105 ft.)

spawning - cold shallow water (<25 ft.)
- hard, stony, or sand substrate

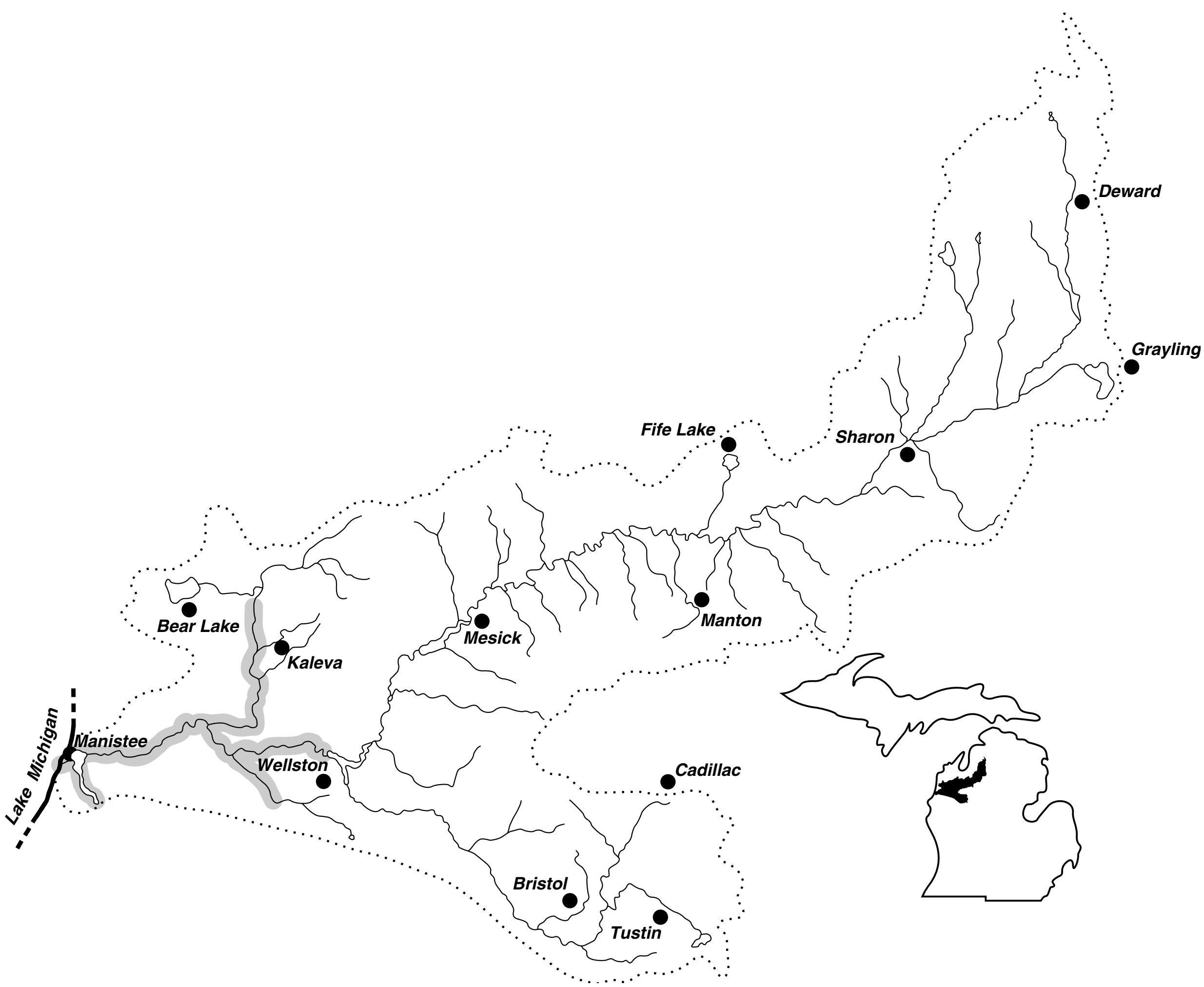


Pink salmon (*Oncorhynchus gorbuscha*)

Habitat:

feeding - large cold deep lakes - Lake Michigan

spawning - gravel substrate in rivers
- female prepares and guards nest until death

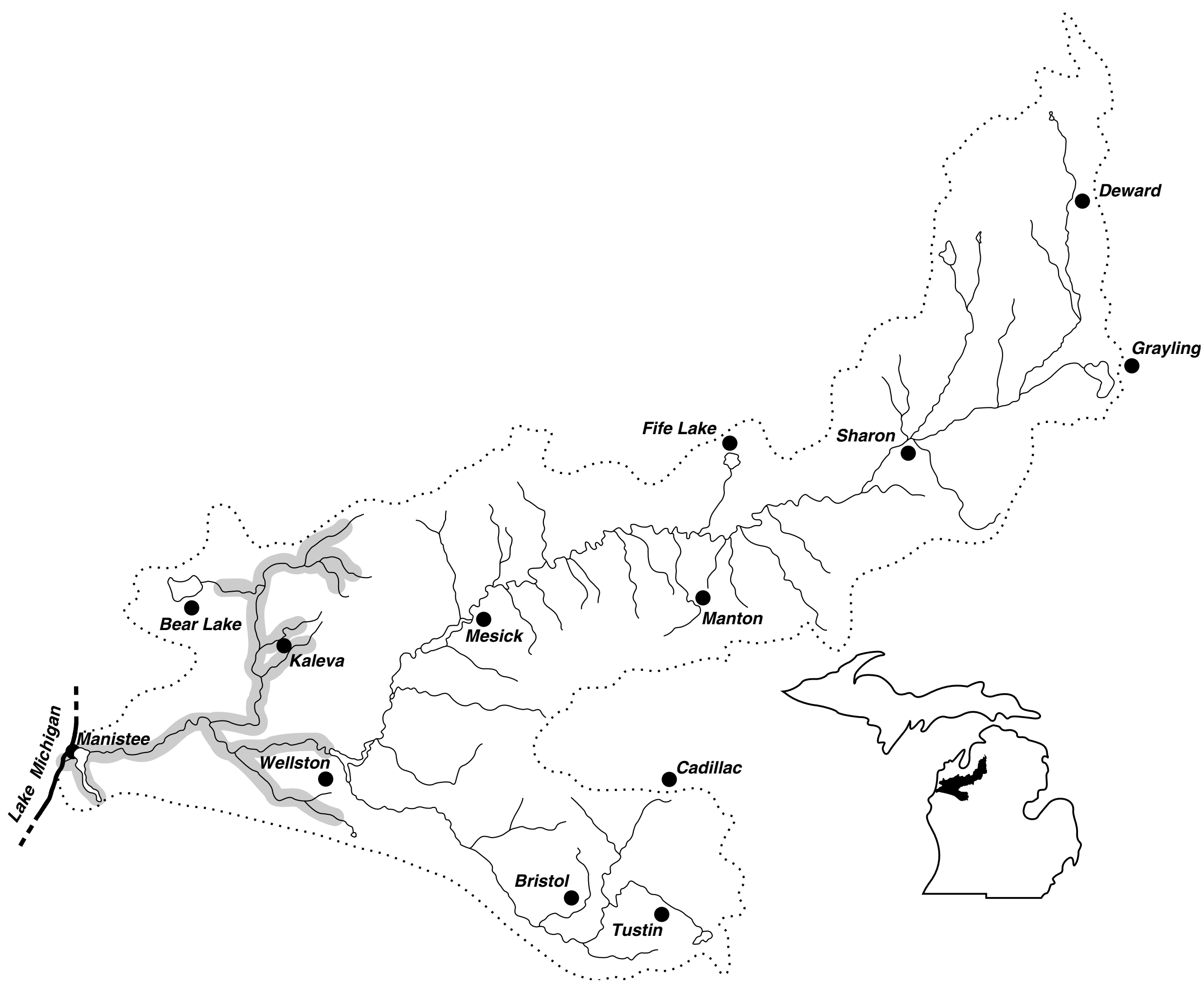


Coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*)

Habitat:

feeding - adults: Lake Michigan
- young: shallow gravel substrate in cold streams, later into pools

spawning - cold streams and rivers
- swifter water of shallow gravelly substrate

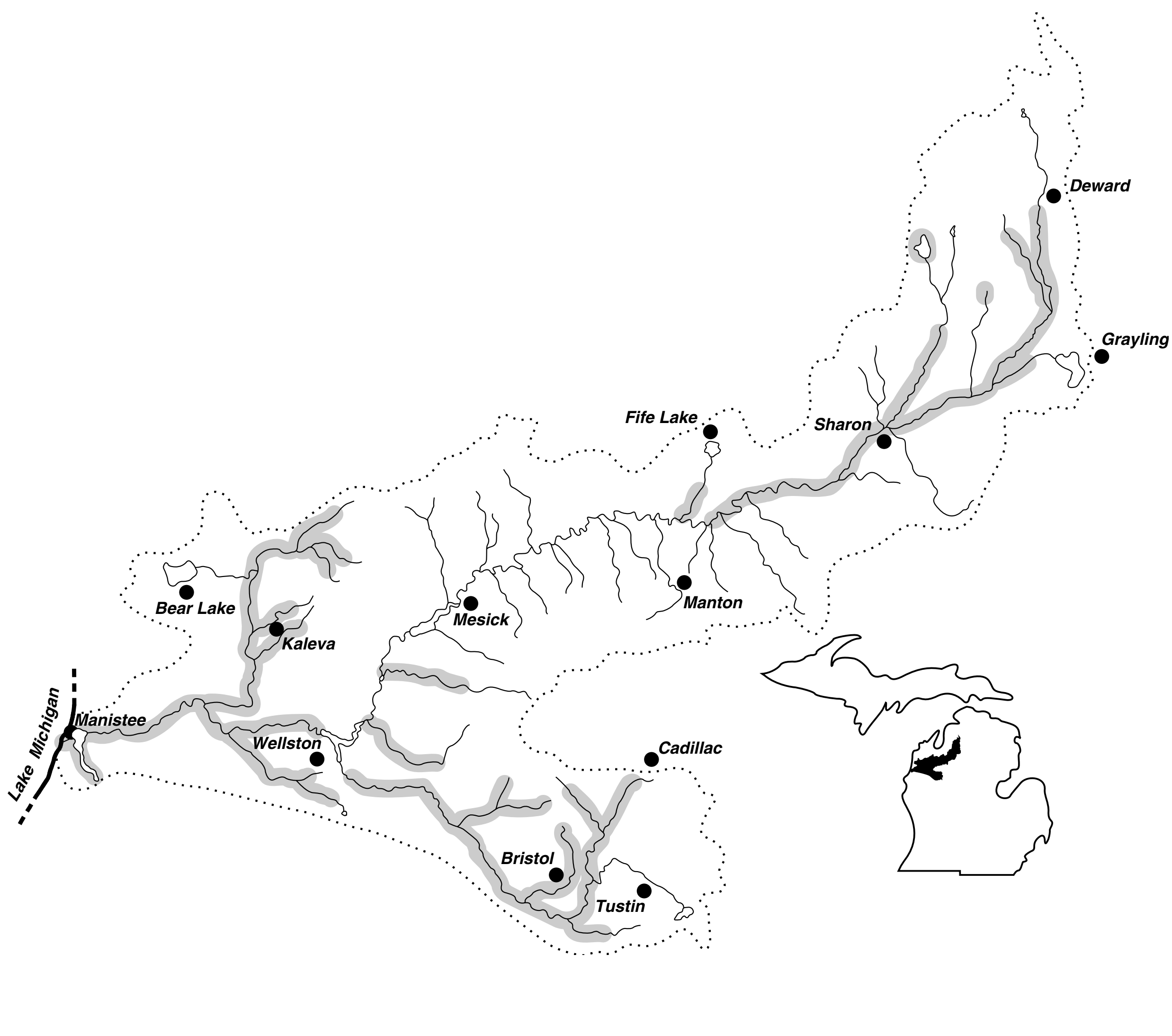


Rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*)

Habitat:

feeding - cold clear water of rivers and Lake Michigan
- moderate current

spawning - gravelly riffles above a pool
- smaller tributaries

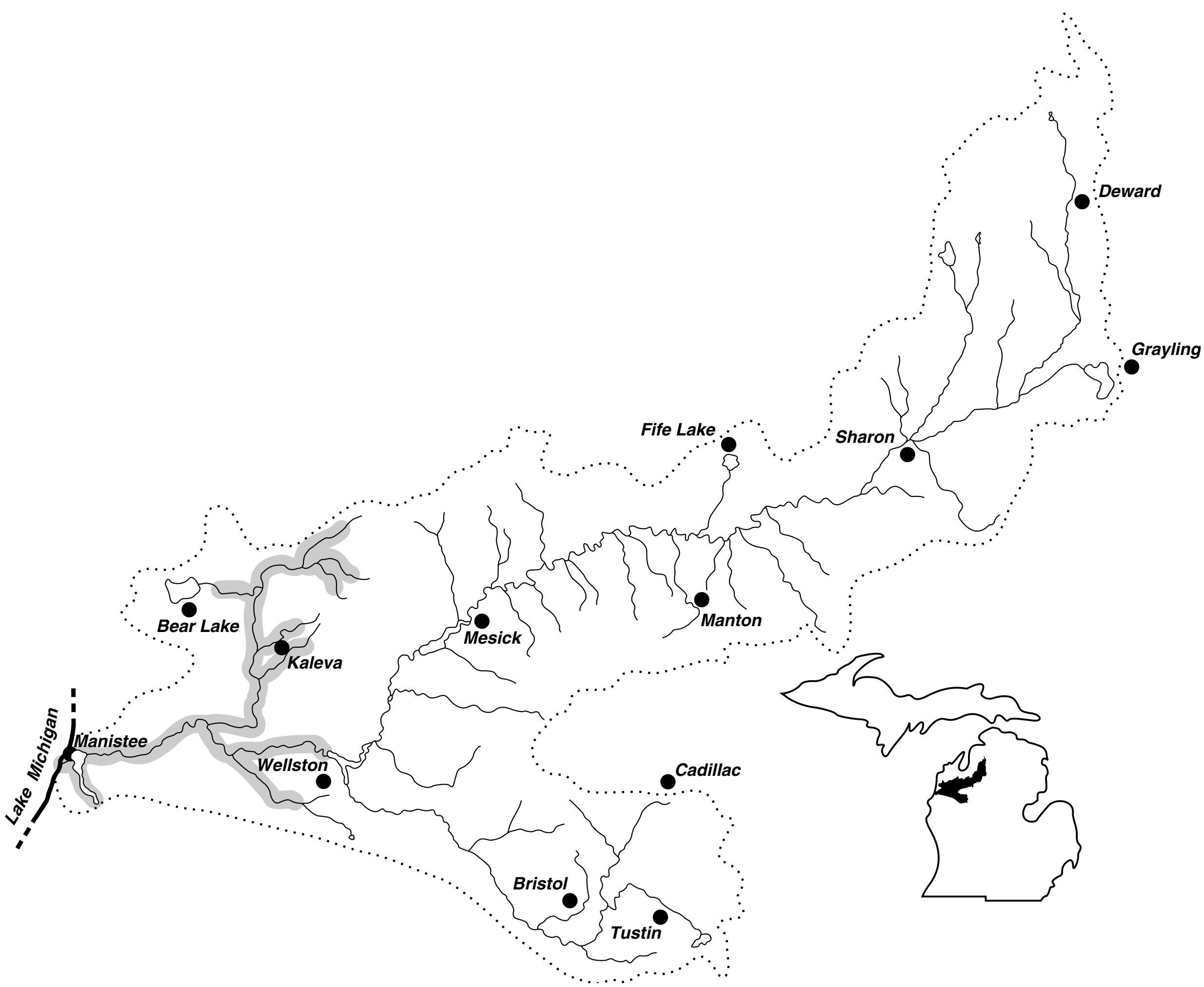


Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawyscha*)

Habitat:

feeding - adults: Lake Michigan
- young: shallow gravel substrate in cool streams, later into pools

spawning - gravelly substrate in cool streams

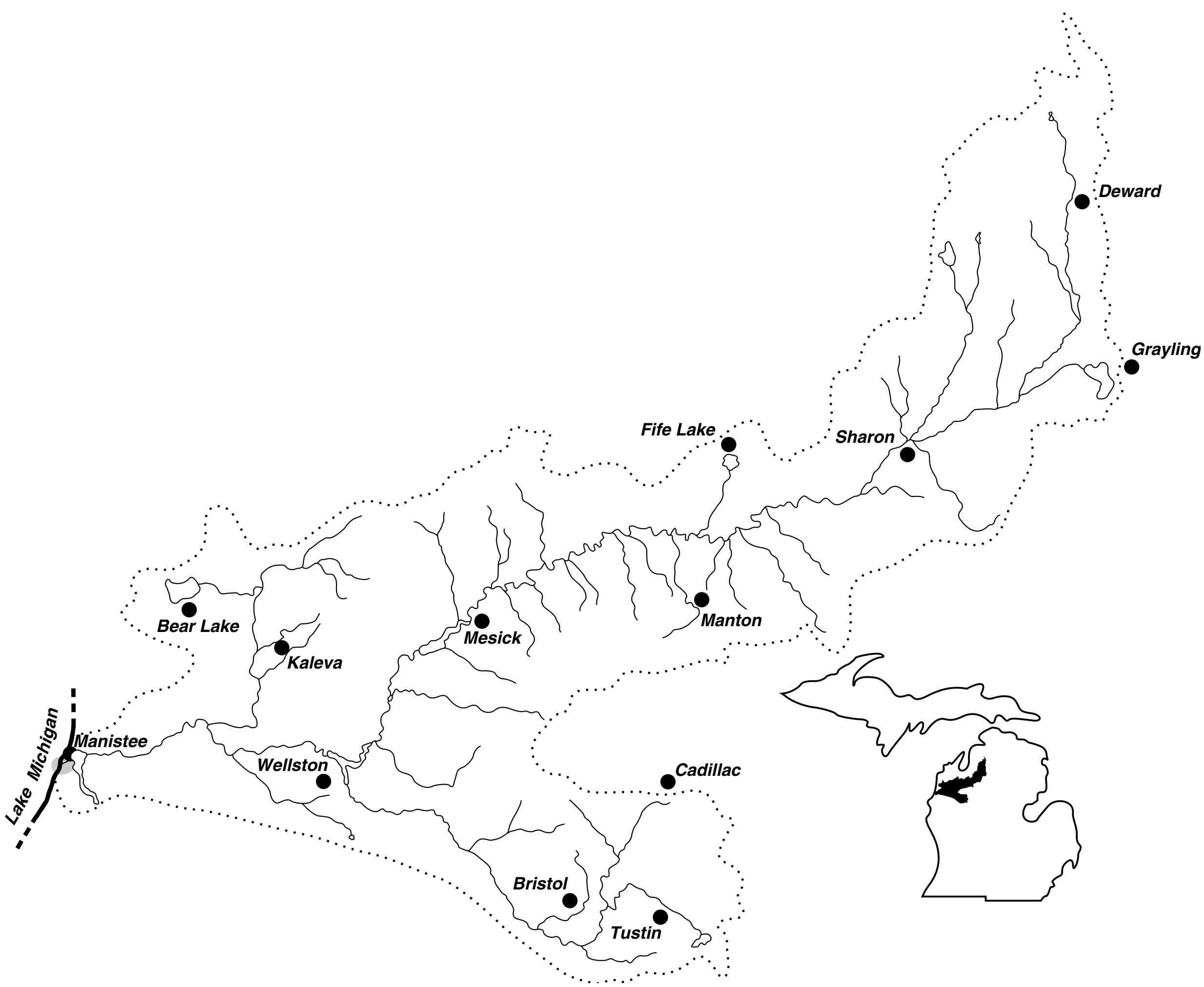


Round whitefish (*Prosopium cylindraceum*)

Habitat:

feeding - lakes, rivers, and streams

spawning - shallows of lakes and rivers
- gravel or rock substrate

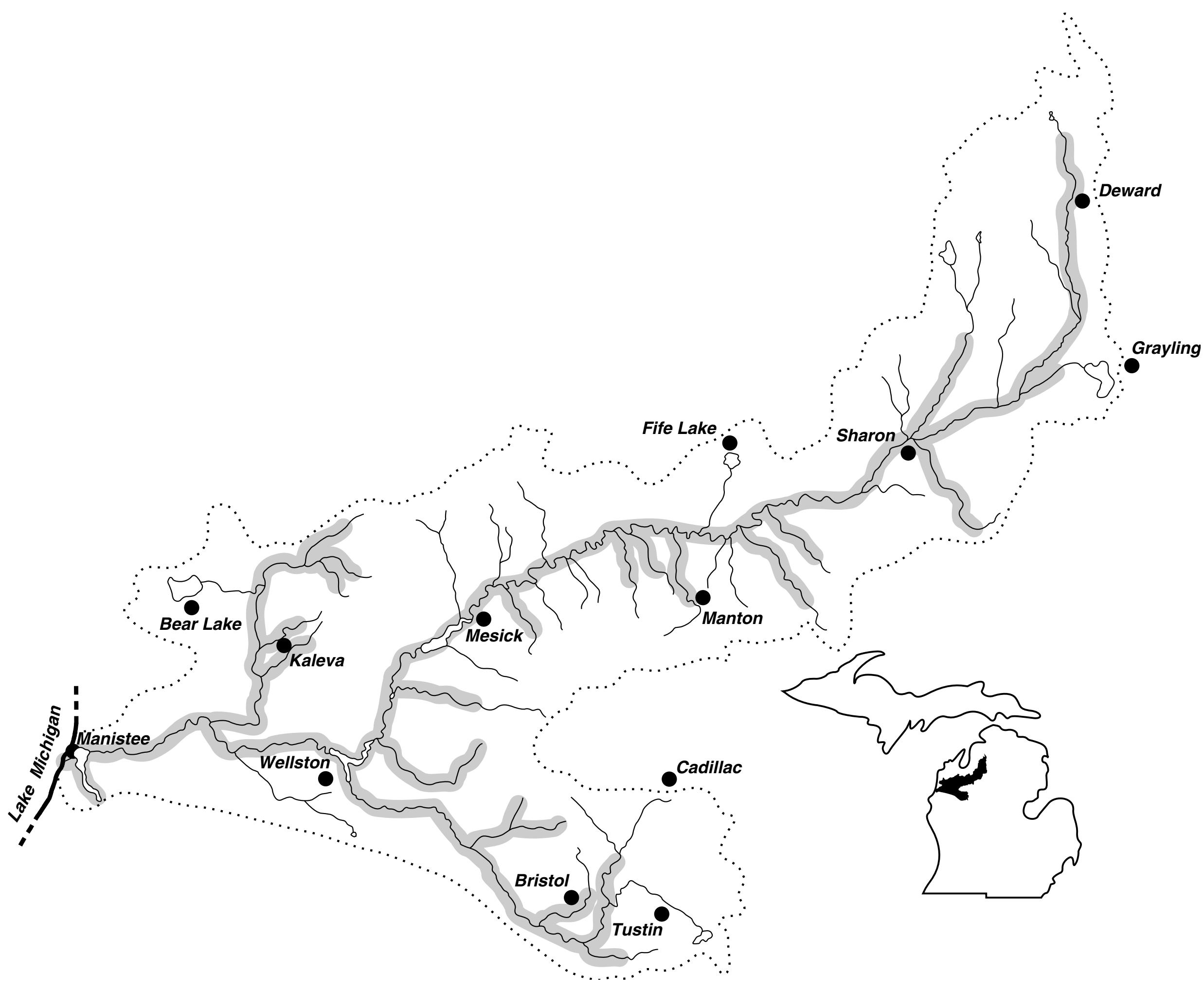


Brown trout (*Salmo trutta*)

Habitat:

feeding - cold, clear streams, rivers, and lakes (not >72˚F)
- medium to swift current in streams
- does not tolerate silt well
- prefers few individuals and species around
- abundance of aquatic and land insects

spawning - gravelly riffles; shallow headwater areas

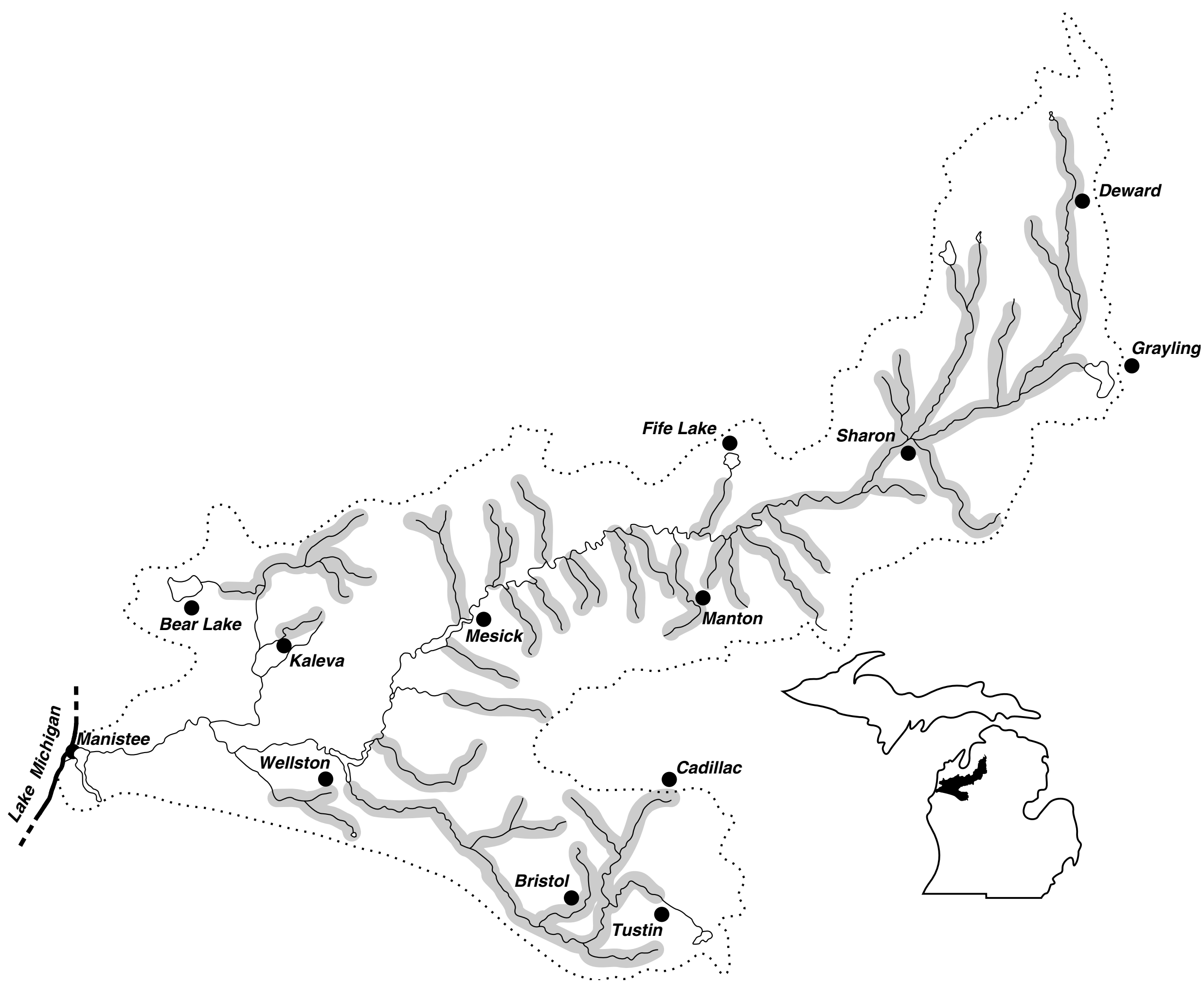


Brook trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*)

Habitat:

feeding - cold, clear streams, rivers, and lakes (not >72˚F)
- low current
- well oxygenated water

spawning - gravelly riffles; shallow or headwater streams

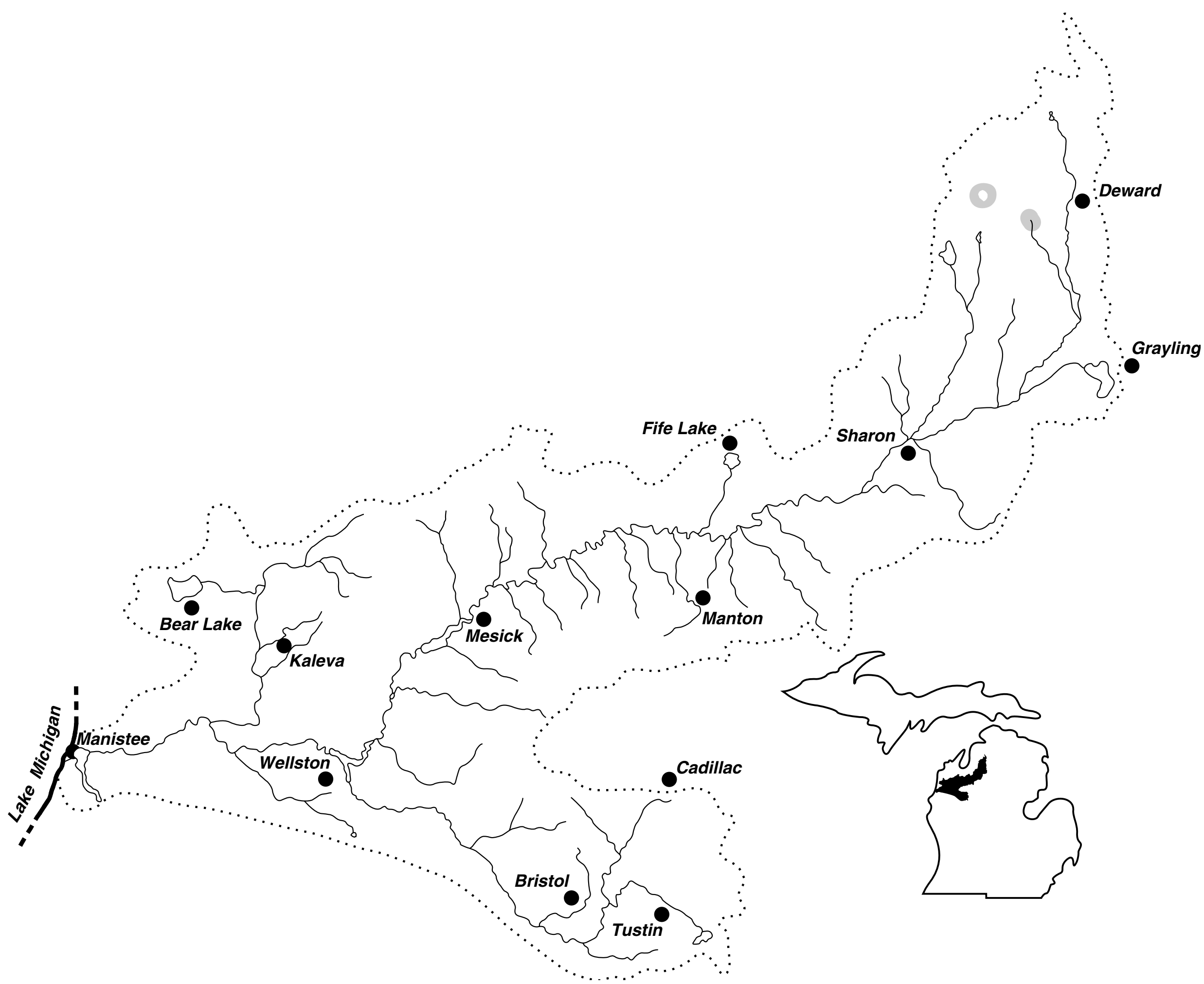


Splake (*Salvelinus fontinalis* x *Salvelinus namaycush*)

Habitat:

feeding - littoral habitat
- cool water lakes; also Lake Michigan

spawning - hatchery produced cross of brook and lake trout
- offspring usually fertile, but with lower fecundity than either parent species

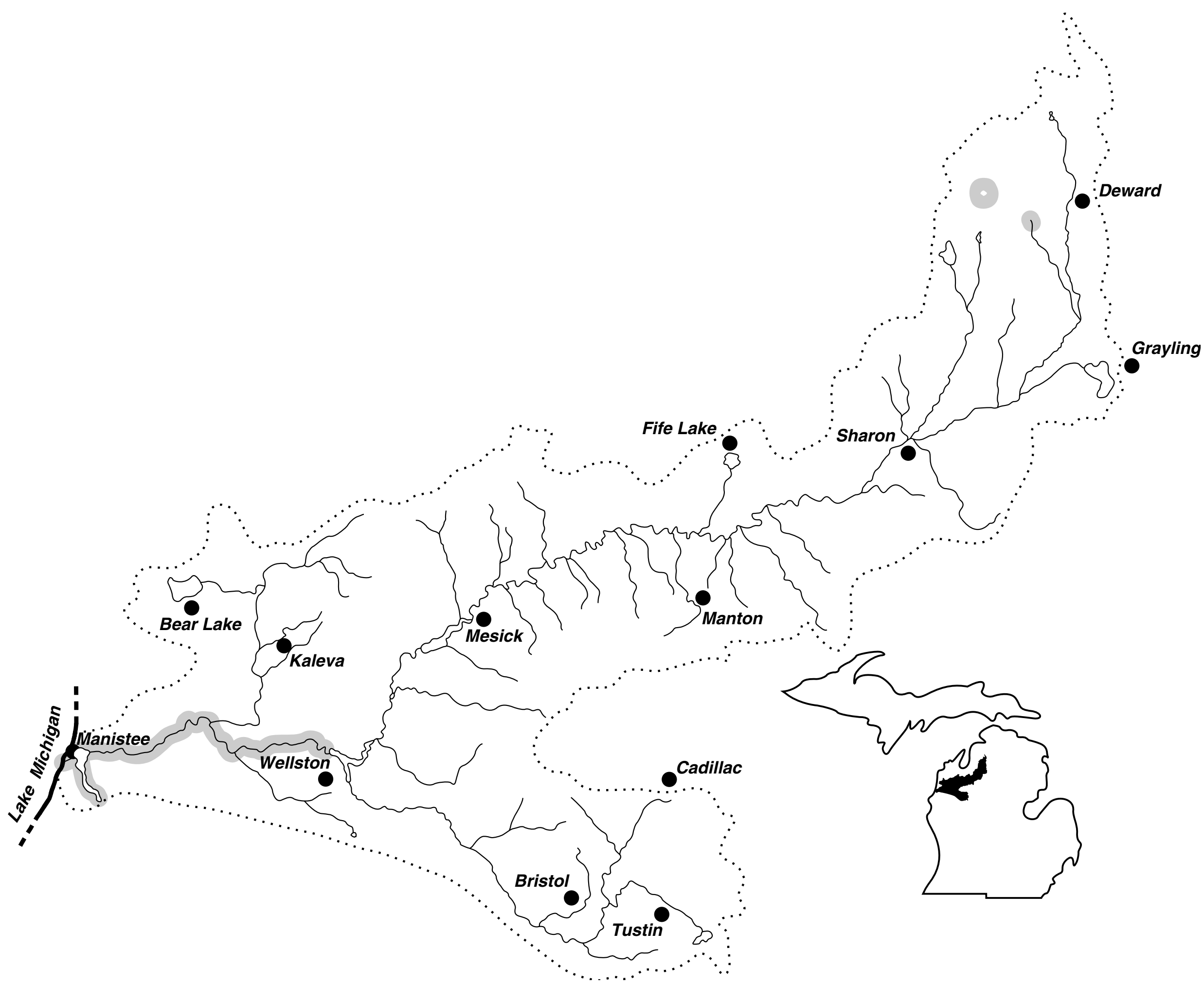


Lake trout (*Salvelinus namaycush*)

Habitat:

feeding - cold lakes and rivers

spawning - large boulder or rubble substrate
- shallow water of lakes and rivers

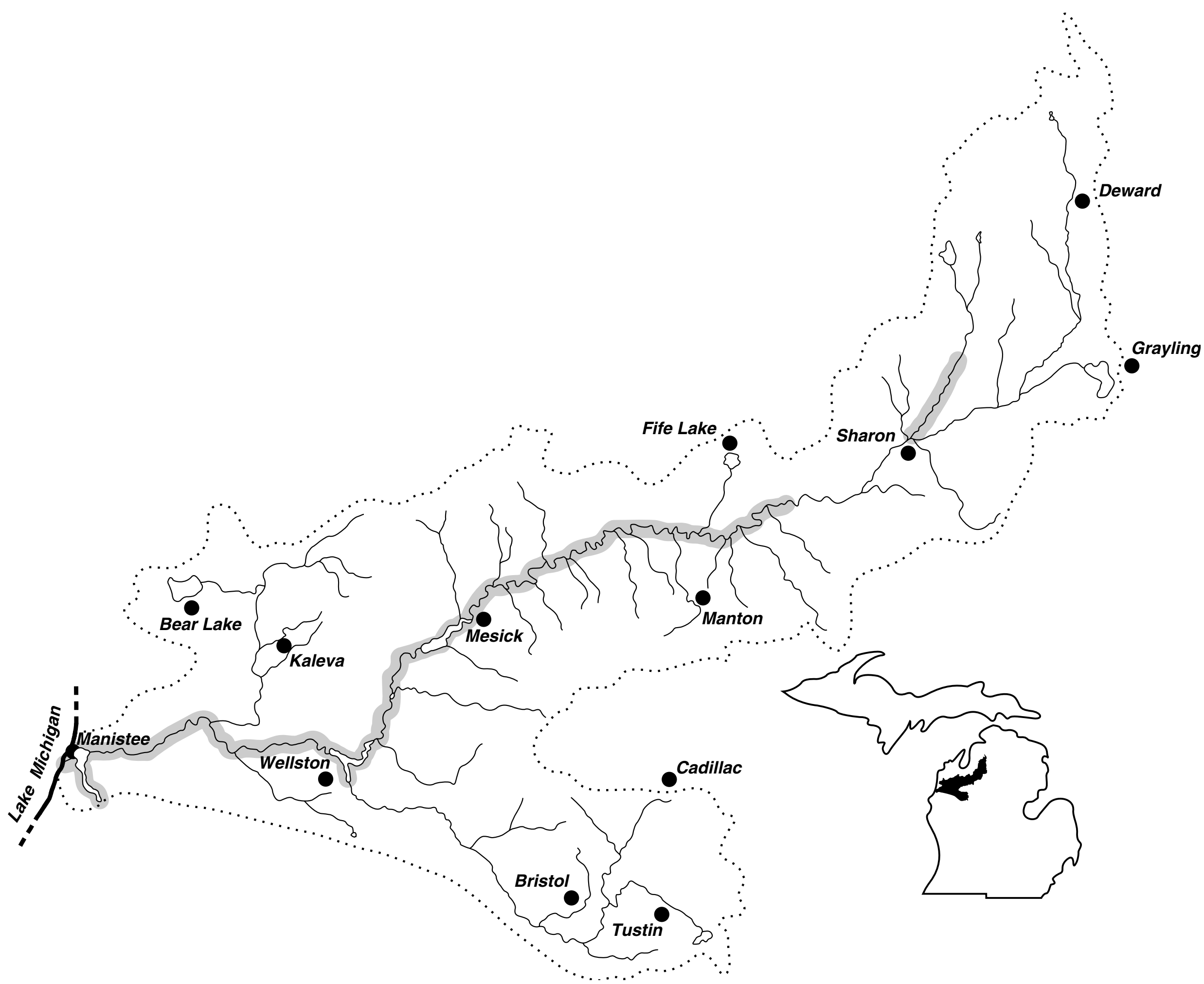


Trout-perch (*Percopsis omiscomaycus*)

Habitat:

feeding
- clean sand or fine gravel substrate
- long deep pools in low gradient streams and Lake Michigan
- highly intolerant of clayey silts
- avoids rooted aquatic vegetation

spawning
- over rocks in shallows
- over sand and gravel substrates in Lake Michigan

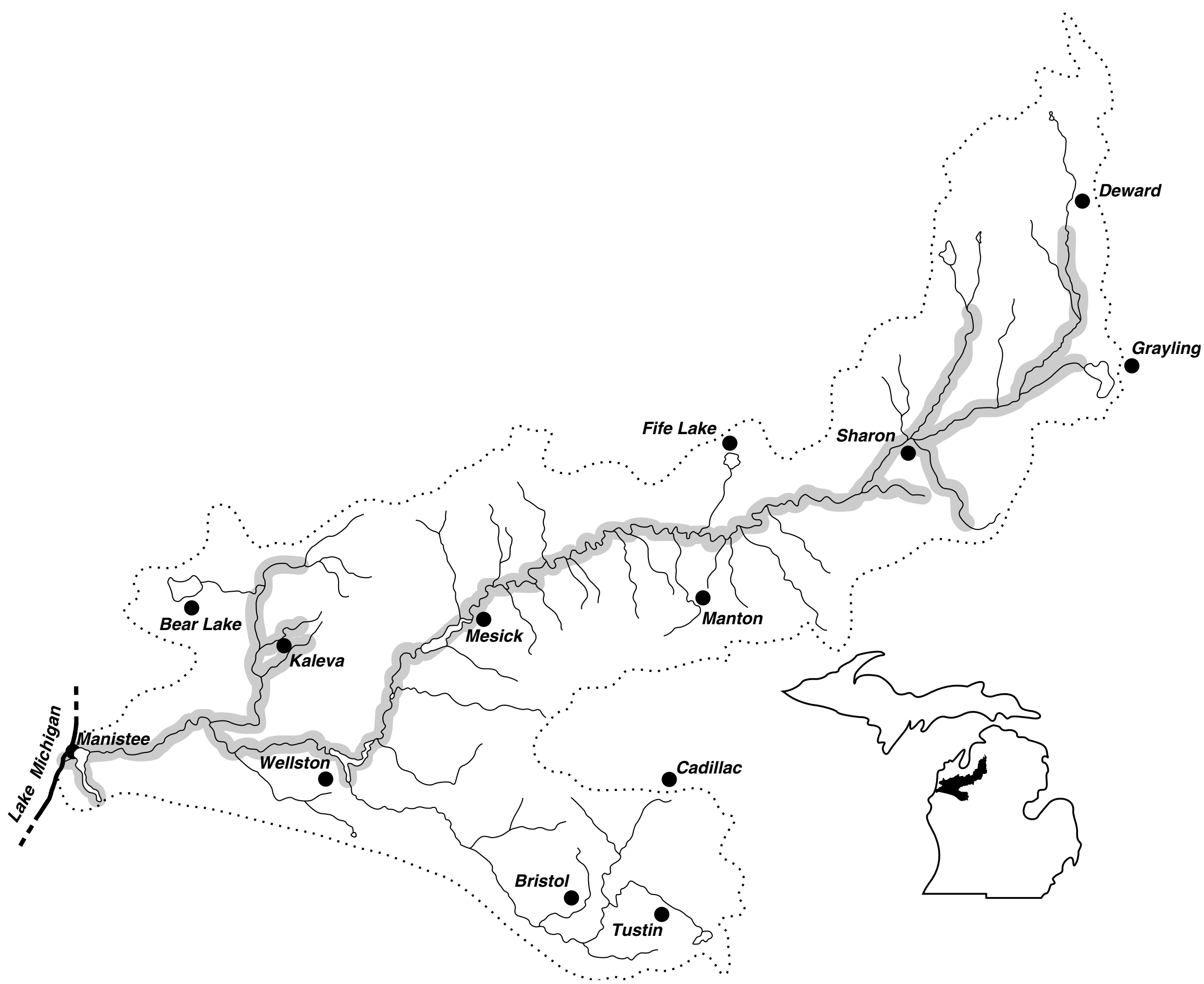


Burbot (*Lota lota*)

Habitat:

feeding - deep cold lakes and large cool rivers
- mud, sand, rubble, boulder, silt, and gravel substrates

spawning - in 1 to 4 feet of water in shallow bays or on shoals 5-10 feet deep usually in lakes, sometimes rivers
- over sand or gravel substrate
- under ice

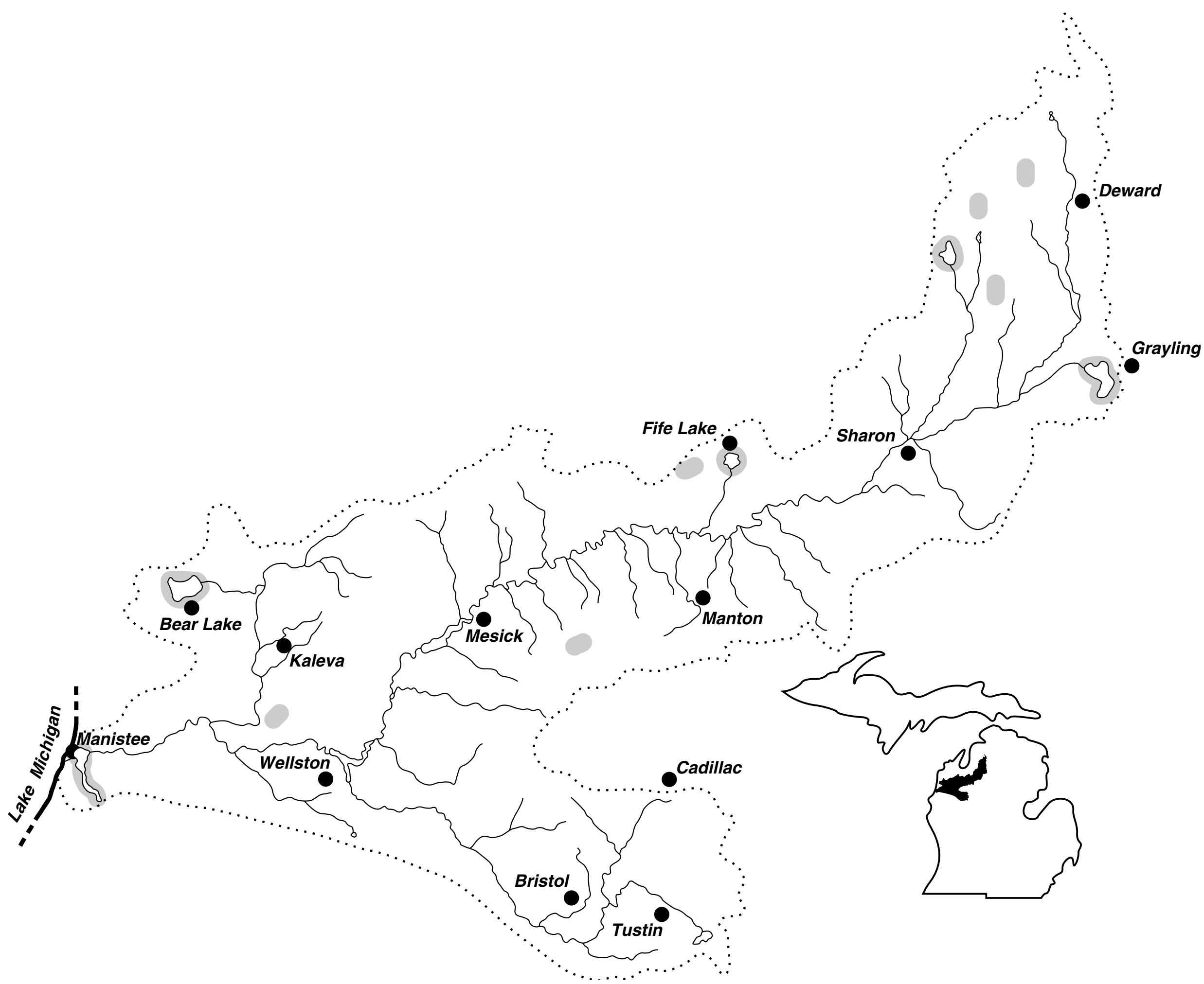


Banded killifish (*Fundulus diaphanus*)

Habitat:

feeding - quiet backwaters at the mouths of streams and lakes
- substrate of sand, gravel, and a few boulders
- also found over detritus substrate where patches of submerged aquatic vegetation are present

spawning - quiet areas of weedy pools

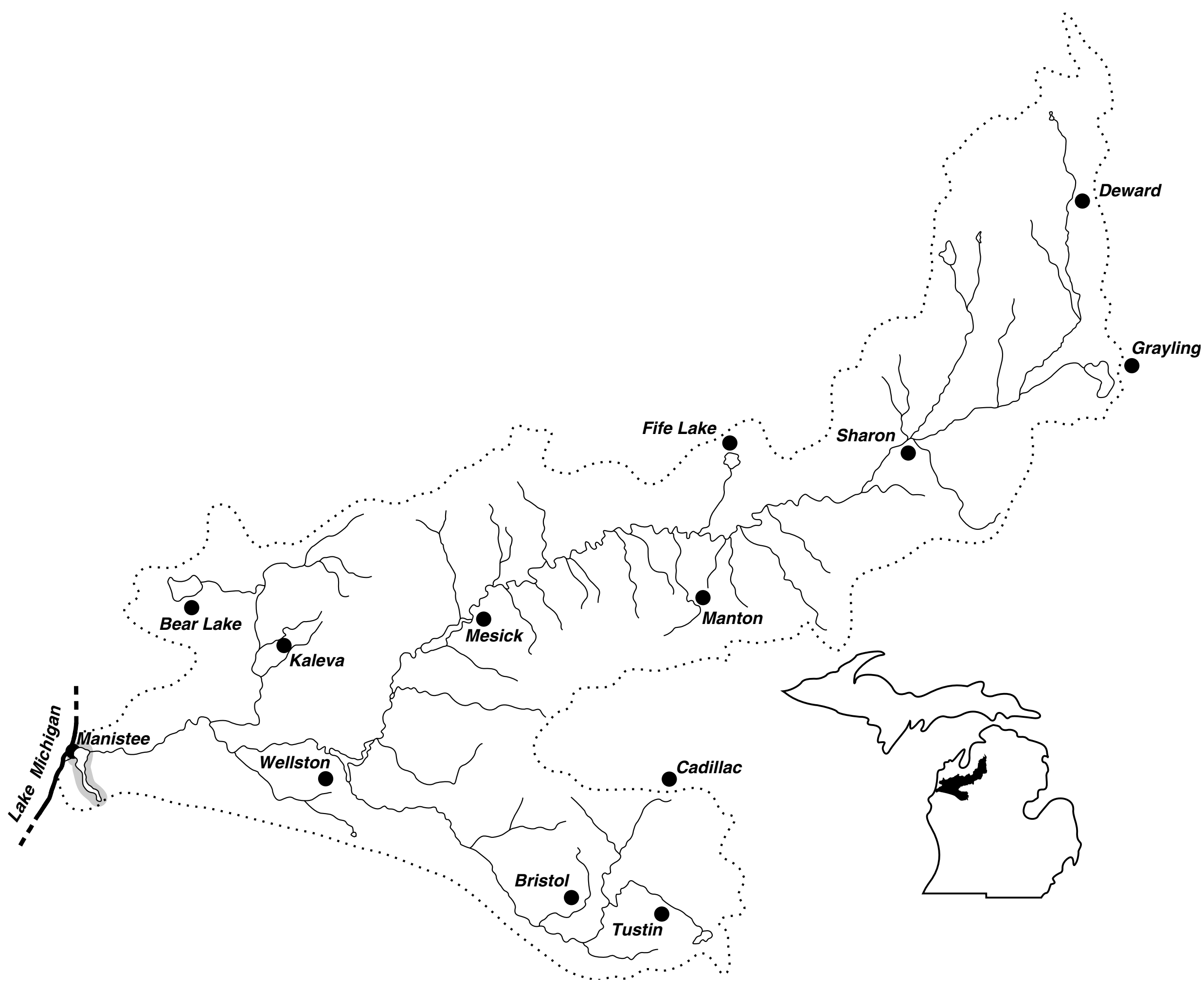


Brook silverside (*Labidesthes sicculus*)

Habitat:

feeding - clear, warm pools in streams and rivers; also lakes
- does not tolerate turbidity
- most frequently at surface

spawning - in and around aquatic vegetation or over gravel substrate with a moderate current

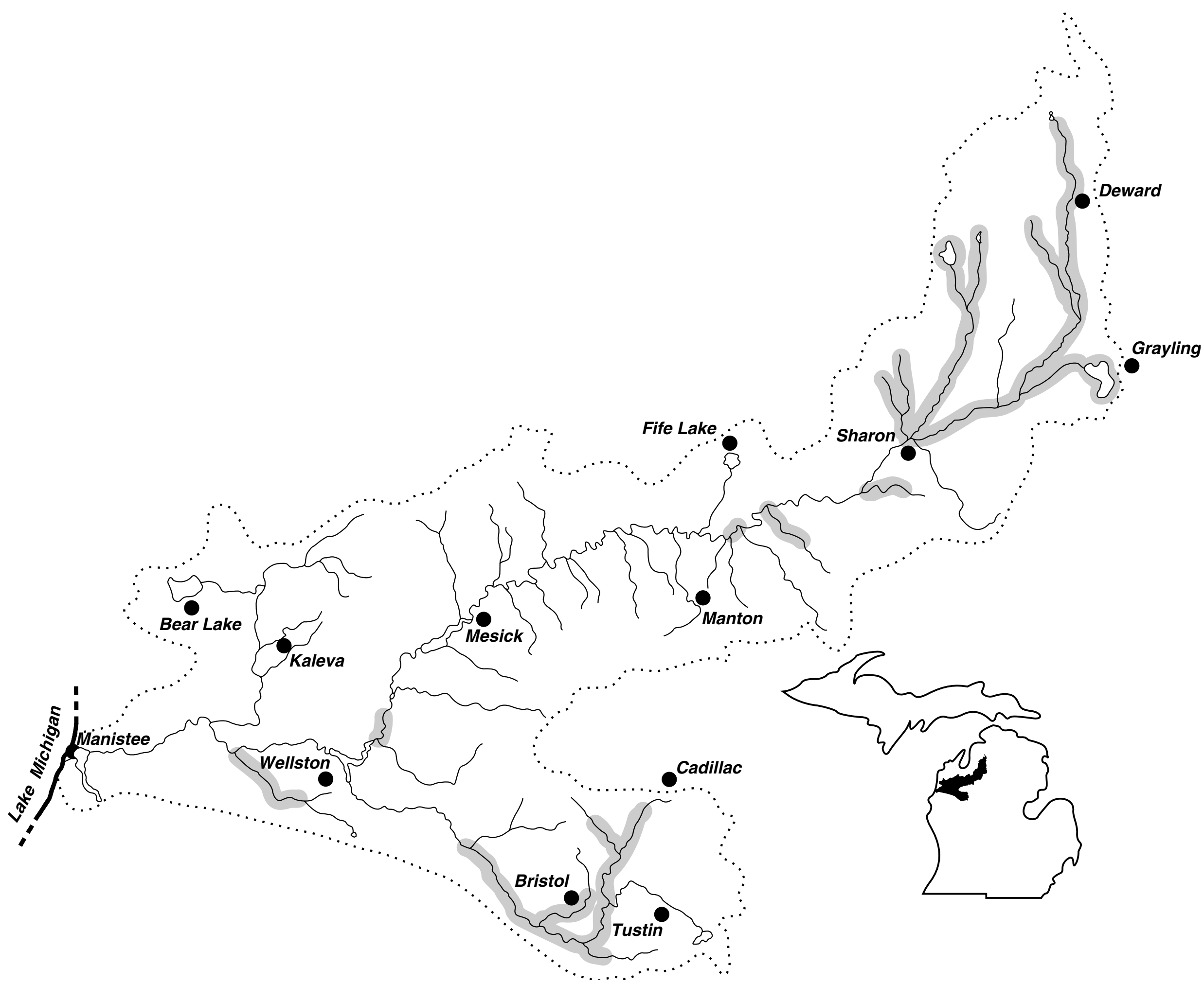


Brook stickleback (*Culaea inconstans*)

Habitat:

feeding - clear, cold, densely vegetated streams, and swampy margins of lakes
- low gradient
- muck, peat, or marl substrate
- not tolerant of turbidity

spawning - shallow cool (<66˚F) water
- aquatic reeds or grasses necessary

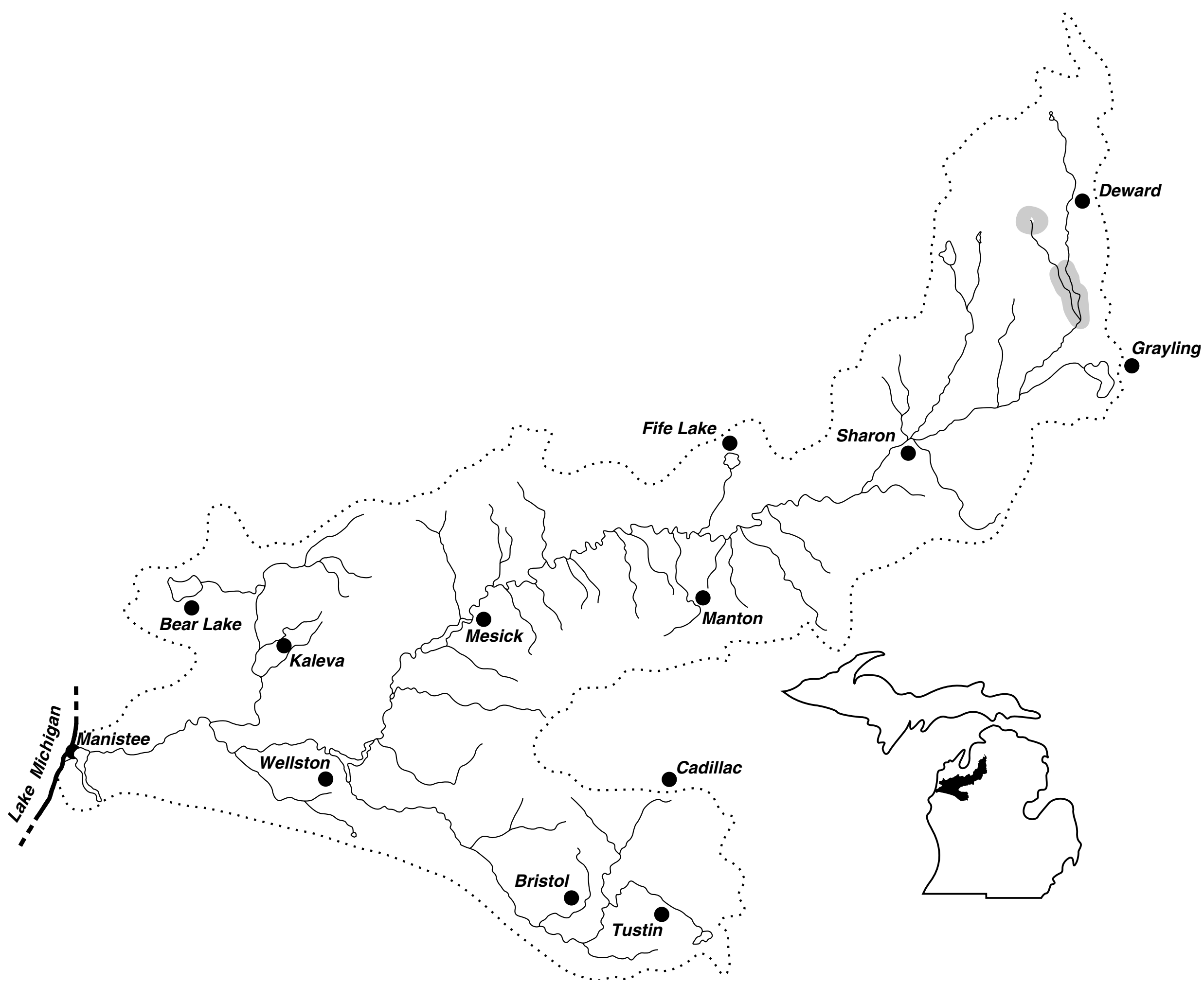


Ninespine stickleback (*Pungitius pungitius*)

Habitat:

feeding - open water of lakes; also Lake Michigan
- cool quiet waters

spawning - builds nests among aquatic vegetation in creeks and streams

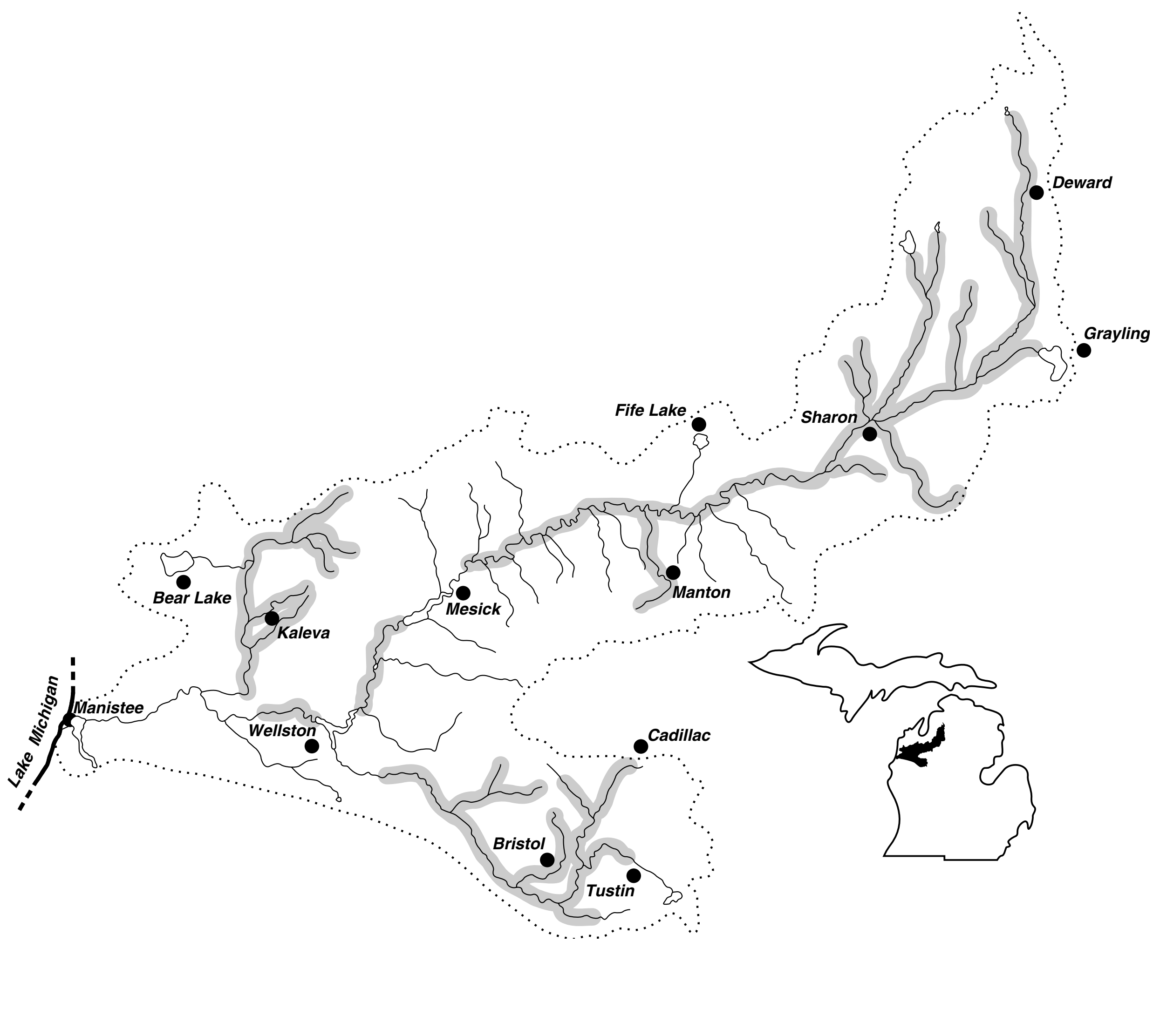


Mottled sculpin (*Cottus bairdi*)

Habitat:

feeding - cool to cold streams
- riffle and rock substrates preferred
- clear to slightly turbid shallow water

spawning - nests under logs or rock

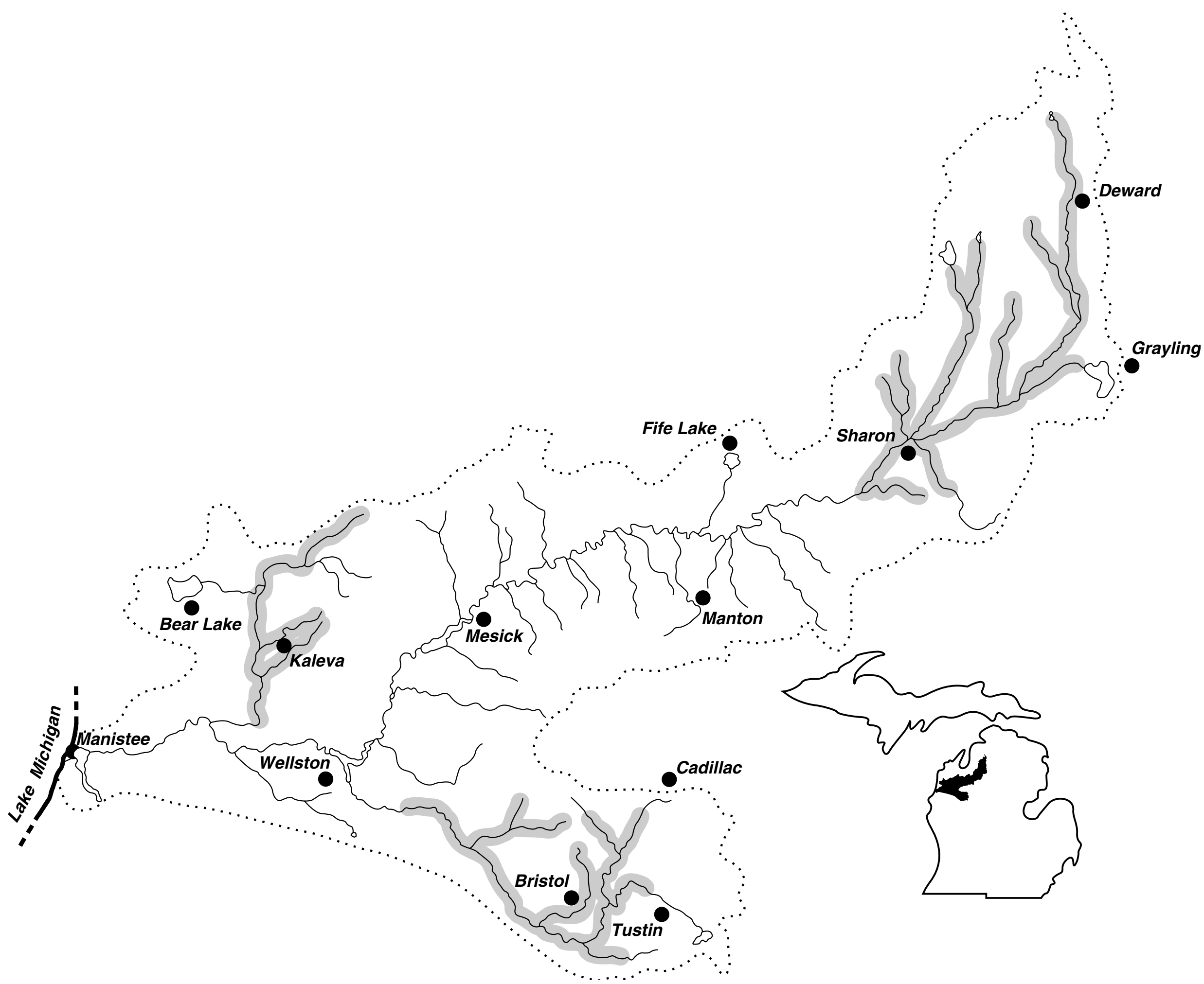


Slimy sculpin (*Cottus cognatus*)

Habitat:

feeding - cool lakes, impoundments, rivers, and streams
- gravel or rock substrate

spawning - nest in shallow areas of lakes
- gravel substrate or rock ledge
- male parental care

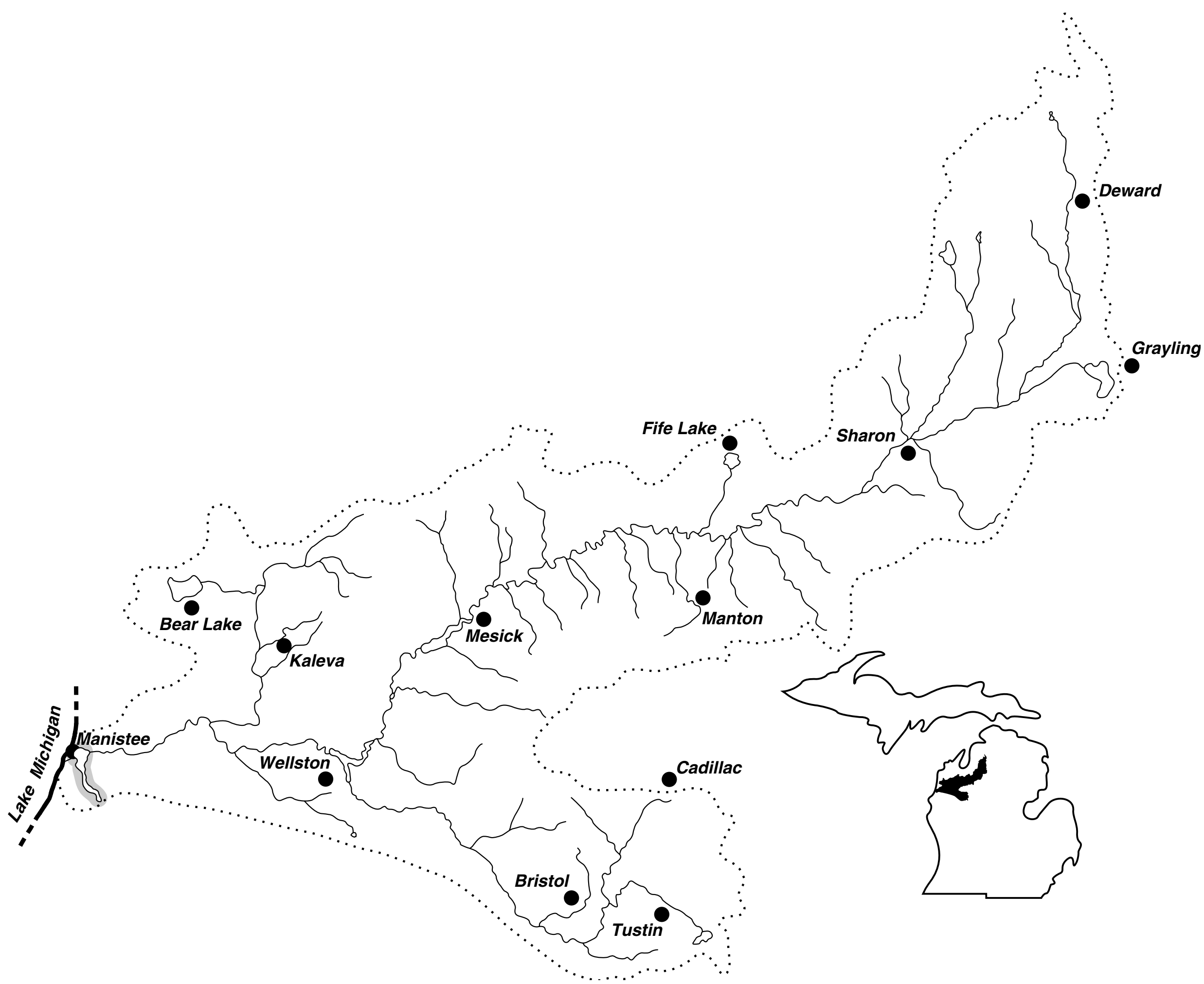


White bass (*Morone chrysops*)

Habitat:

feeding - large lakes, impoundments, and Lake Michigan
- clear water of 30 feet or less depth
- firm substrate

spawning - tributary streams or shallow water of lakes
- over firm substrate



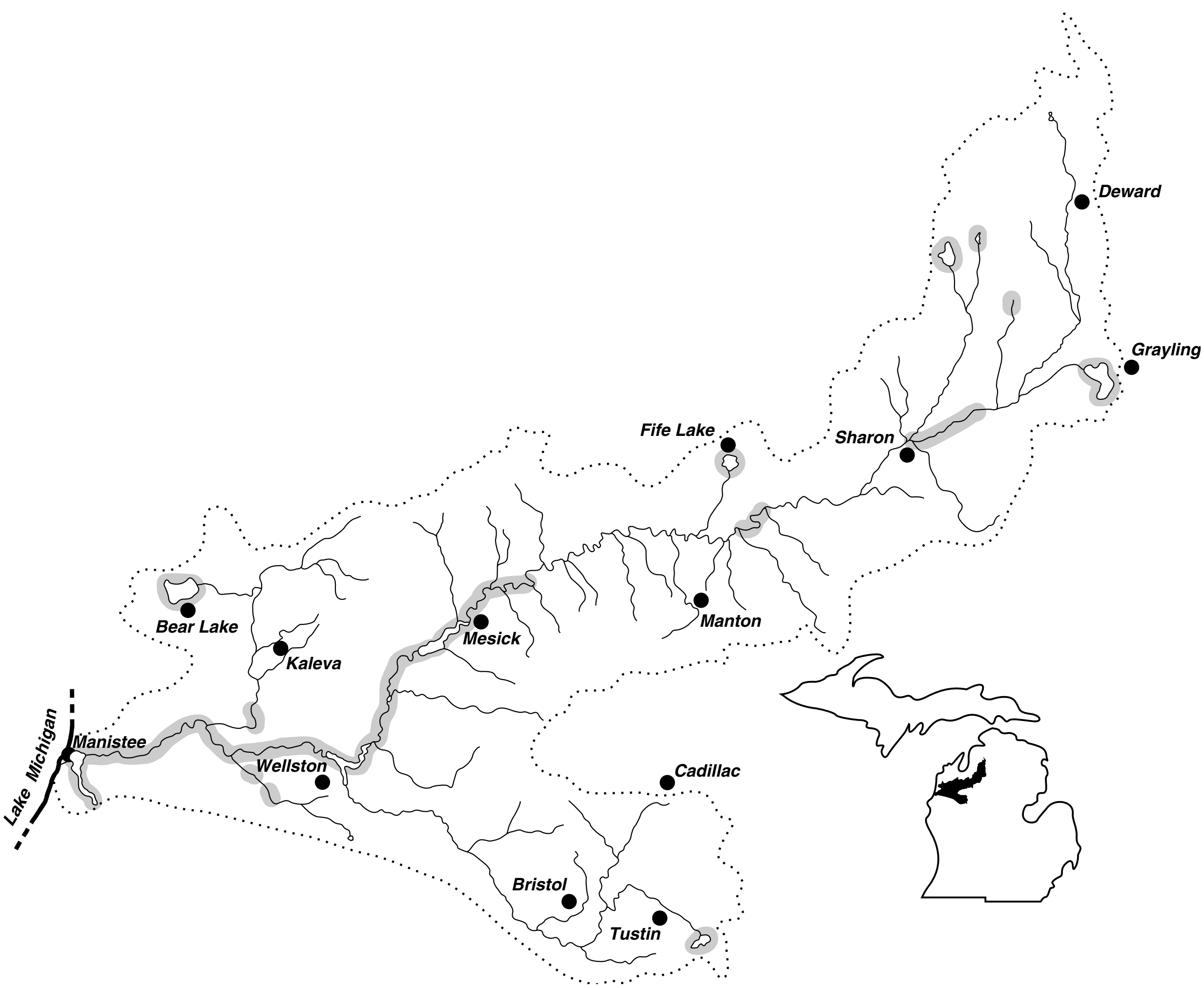
Rock bass (*Ambloplites rupestris*)

Habitat:

feeding - clear, cool streams, rivers, and lakes
- rocky to sand substrate
- woody or vegetative cover

spawning - sand or gravel nests
- shallow water

winter refuge - deep water

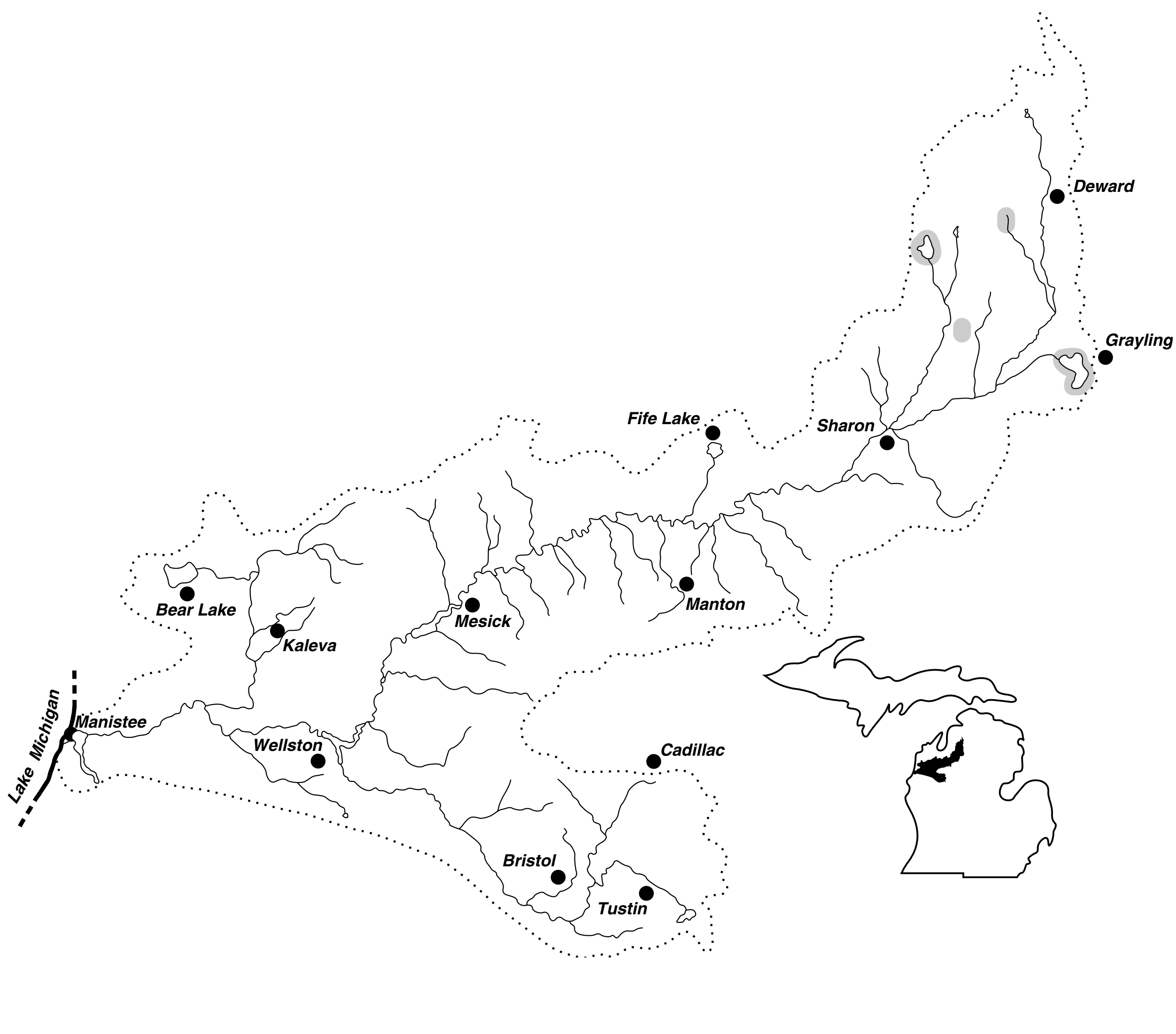


Green sunfish (*Lepomis cyanellus*)

Habitat:

feeding - impoundments and lakes, and low-current streams and rivers
- no substrate preference

spawning - nests in shallow areas sheltered by rocks, logs, or aquatic vegetation

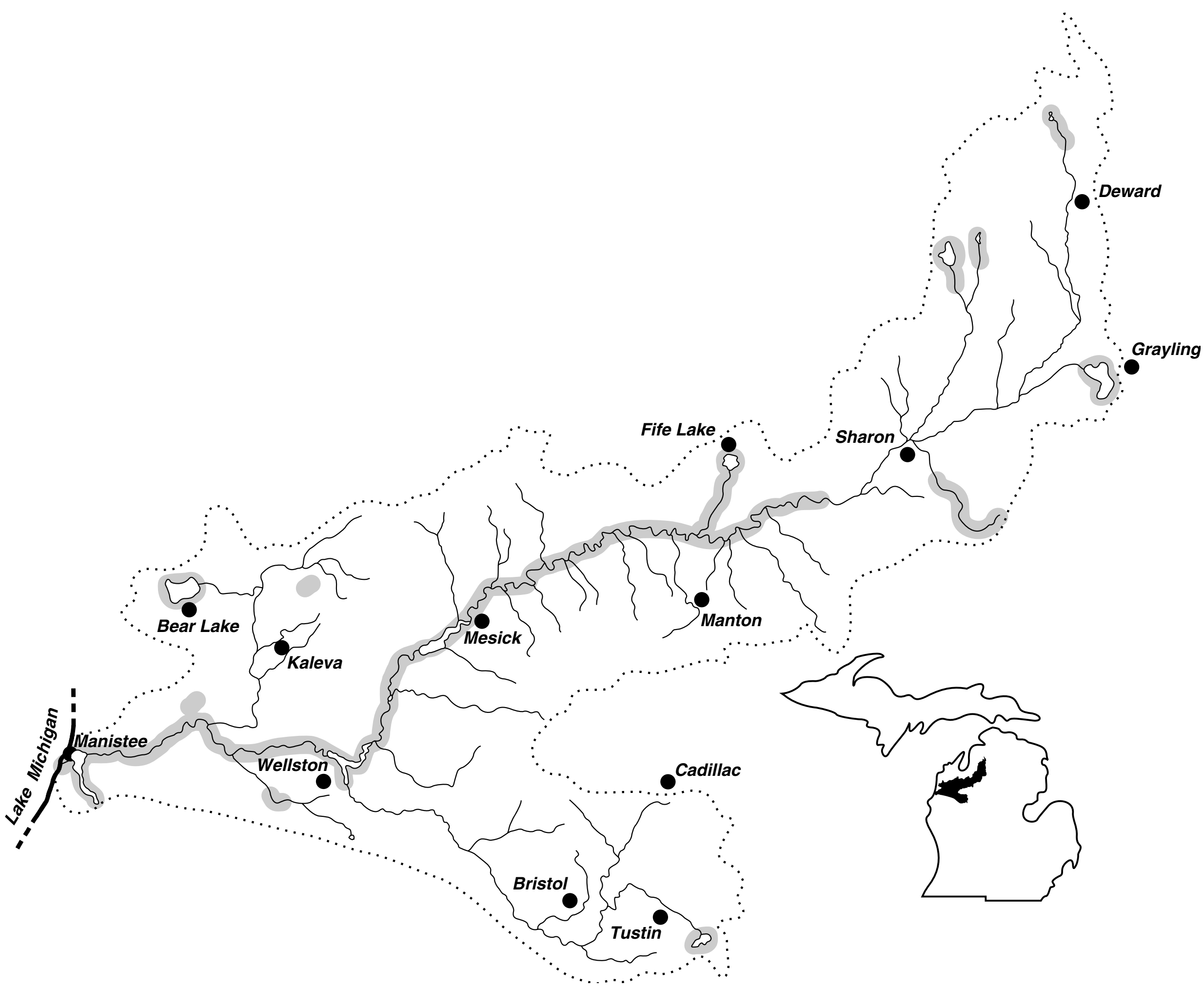


Pumpkinseed sunfish (*Lepomis gibbosus*)

Habitat:

feeding
- non-flowing clear water in streams and rivers; also lakes and impoundments
- muck or sand partly covered with organic debris substrate
- dense beds of submerged aquatic vegetation

spawning
- nest in sand, gravel, or rock substrate
- in shallow water near submerged vegetation



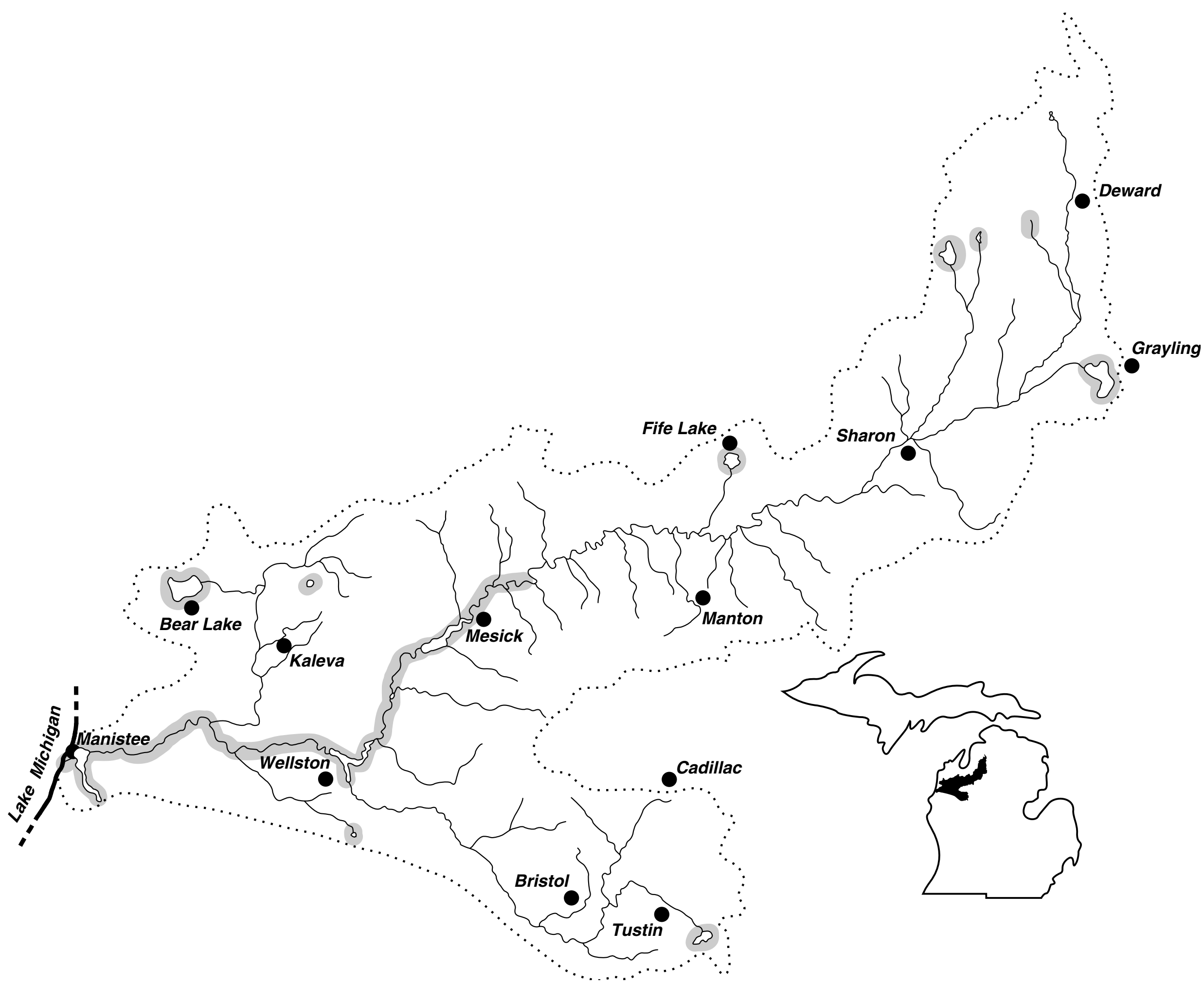
Bluegill (*Lepomis macochrius*)

Habitat:

feeding - non-flowing clear streams and rivers; also lakes and impoundments
- sand, gravel, or muck containing organic debris substrate
- scattered beds of aquatic vegetation
- cannot tolerate low oxygen or continuous high turbidity and siltation

spawning - nests in firm substrate of gravel, sand, or mud

winter refuge - deep water

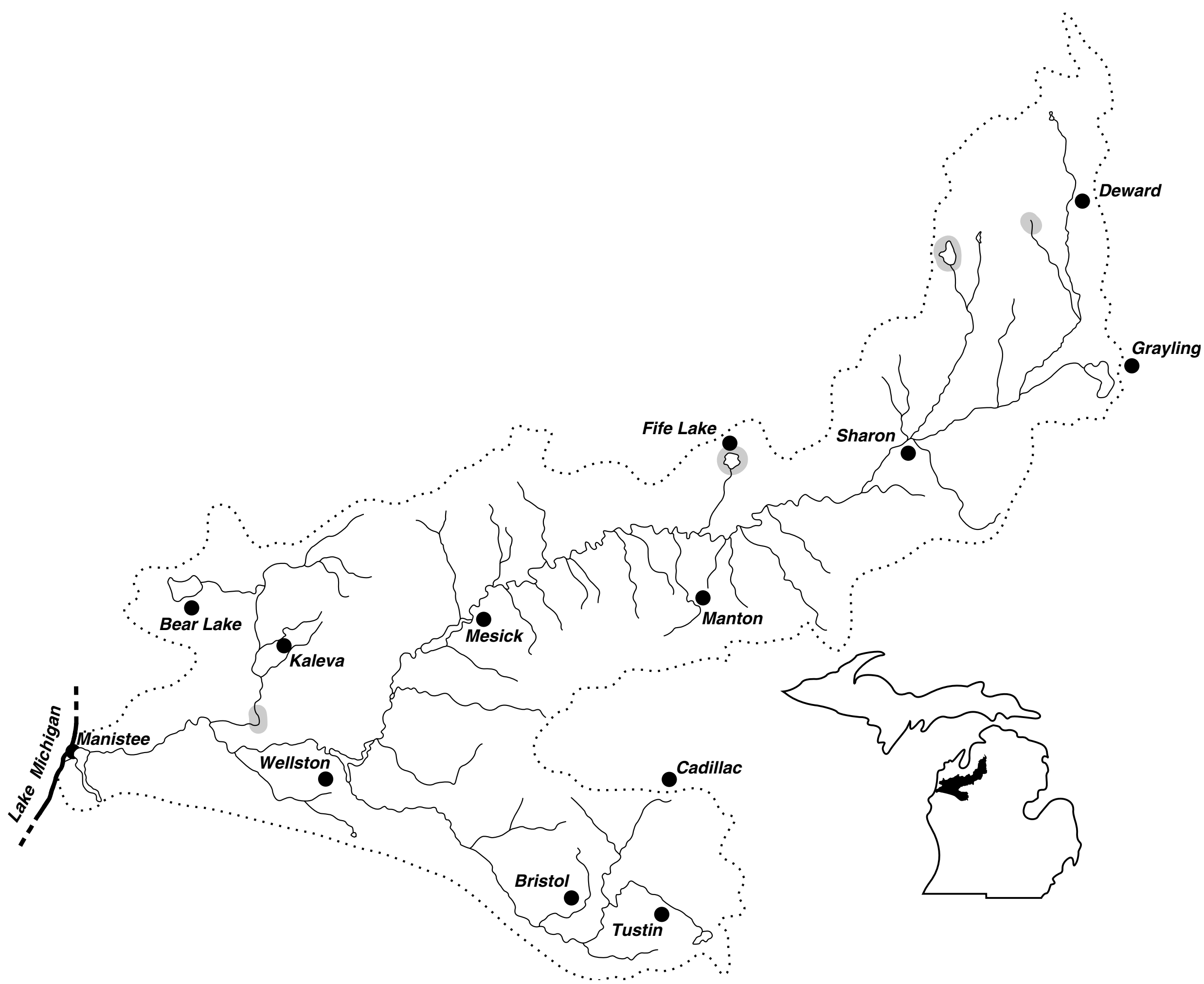


Longear sunfish (*Lepomis megalotis*)

Habitat:

feeding - clear moderate-sized shallow streams with moderate vegetation
- rocky substrates
- little to no current

spawning - nests in gravel, sand, or hard rock substrate



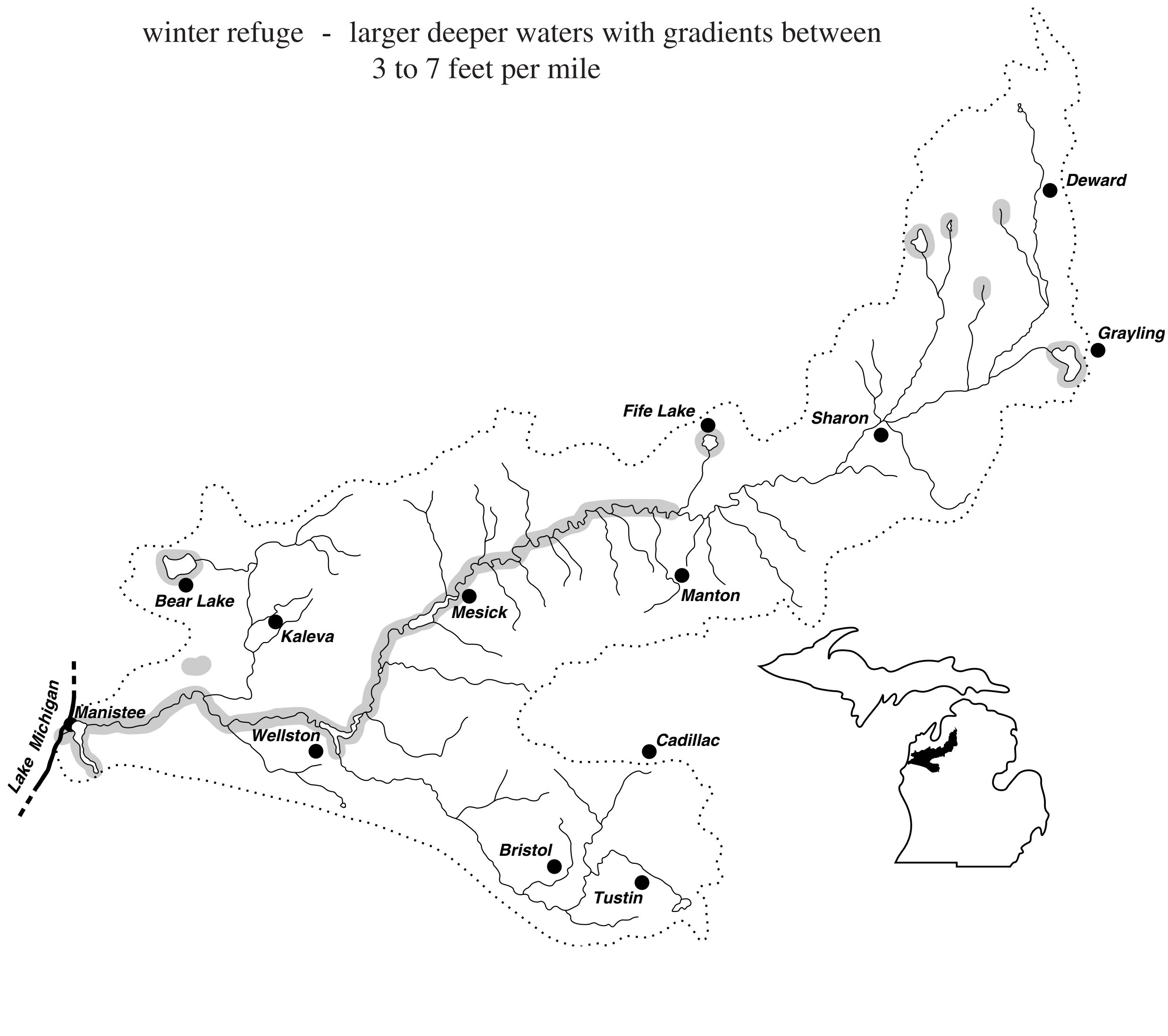
Smallmouth bass (*Micropterus dolomieu*)

Habitat:

feeding - clear, cool, deep lakes and rivers
- streams where 40% consists of riffles over clean gravel, boulder, or bedrock substrate
- in pools with a current and >4 feet of depth
- gradients between 4 and 25 feet per mile

spawning - nest in sandy, gravel, or rocky substrate
- gradients 7 to 25 feet per mile
- streams 20 to 100 feet wide

winter refuge - larger deeper waters with gradients between 3 to 7 feet per mile

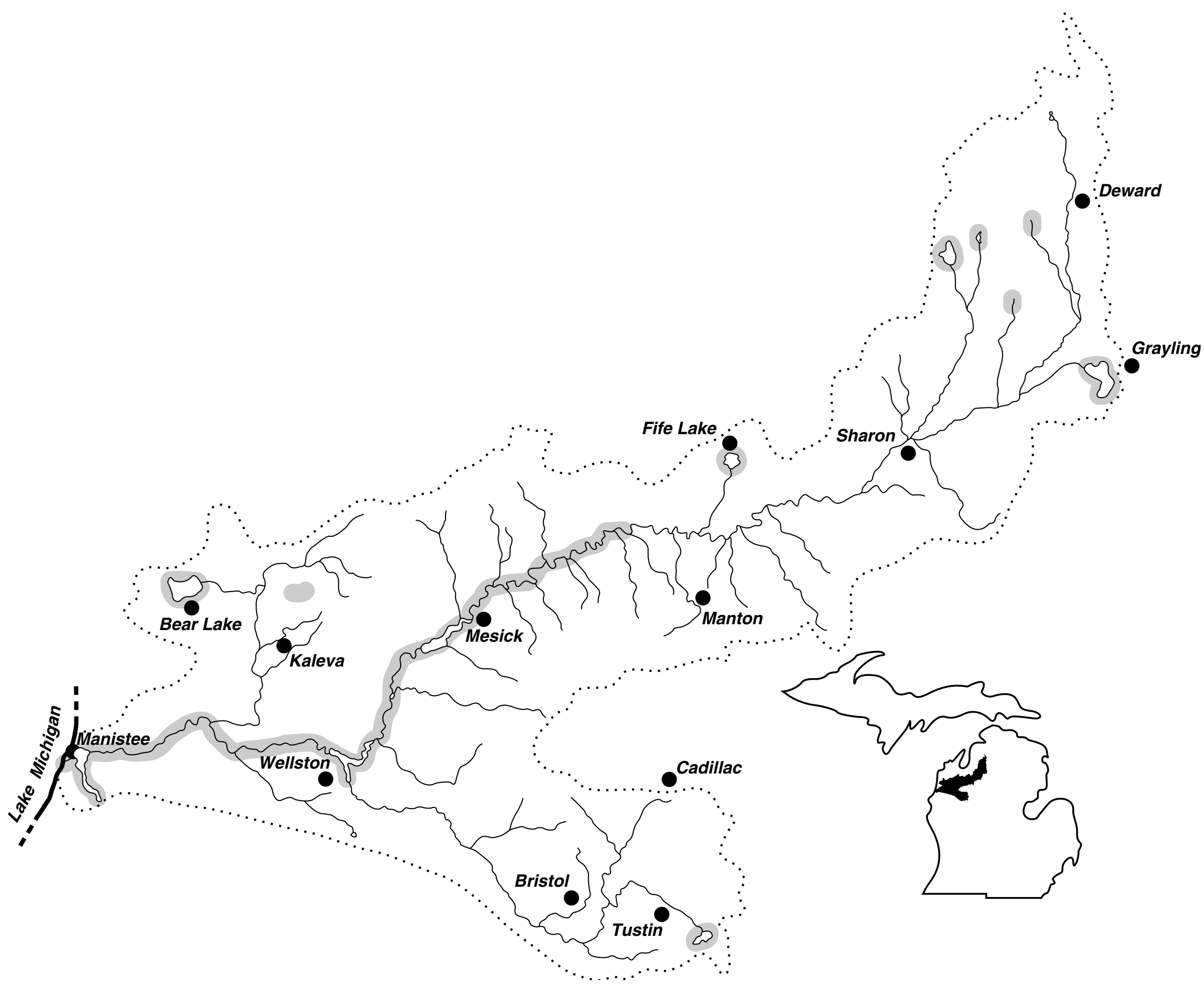


Largemouth bass (*Micropterus salmoides*)

Habitat:

feeding
- non-flowing clear waters - lakes, impoundments, and pools of streams
- abundant aquatic vegetation
- soft muck, organic debris, gravel, sand, and hard non-flocculent clay substrates

spawning
- nest in gravelly sand to marl and soft mud substrates
- emergent vegetation
- quiet shallow bays; no current

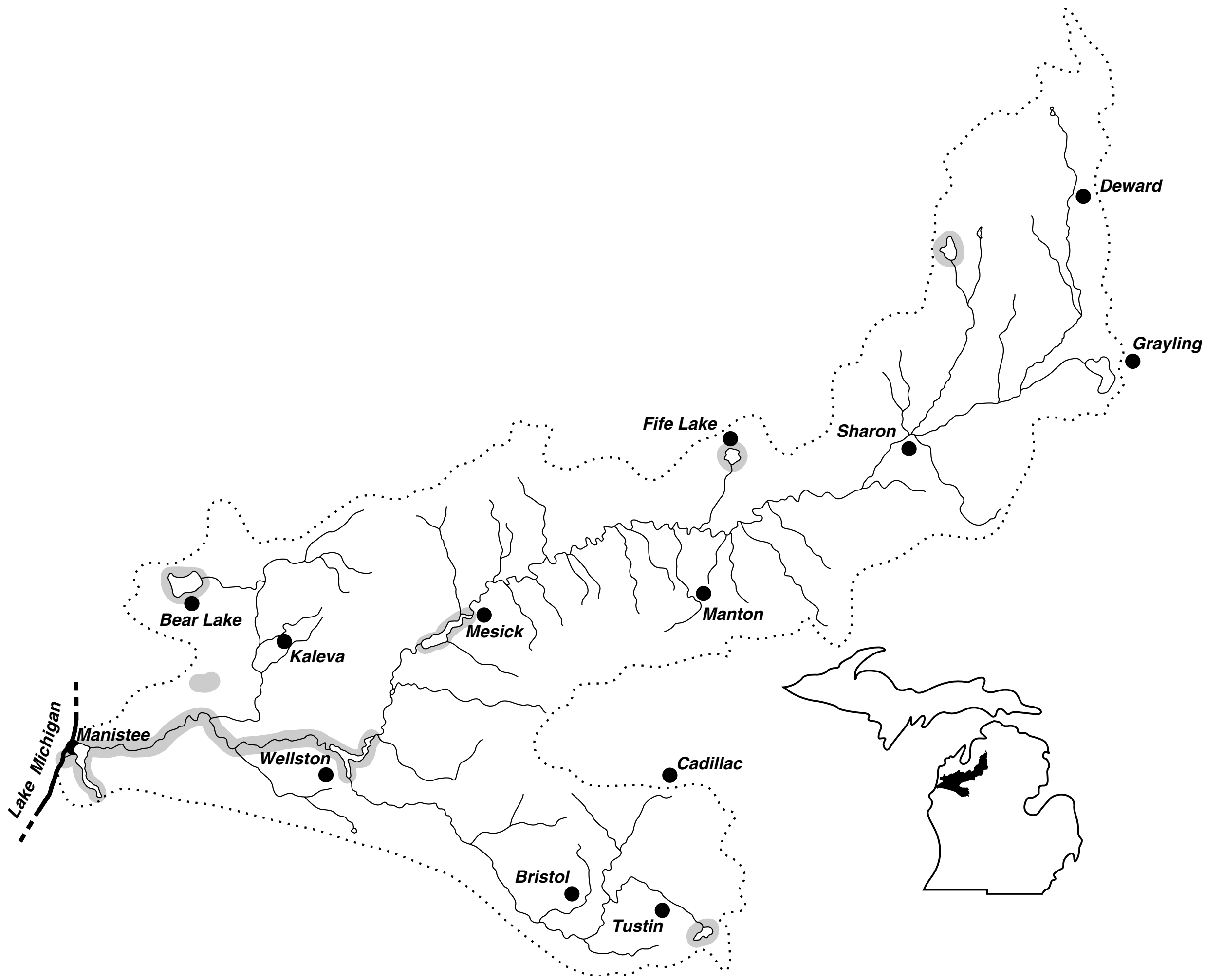


Black crappie (*Pomoxis nigromaculatus*)

Habitat:

feeding
- larger clear non-silty low-gradient rivers; also in lakes and impoundments
- clean hard sand or muck substrate
- associated with submerged aquatic vegetation
- does not tolerate silt or turbidity well

spawning
- nests in gravel, sand, or mud substrate
- some vegetation must be present
- sometimes nests under banks

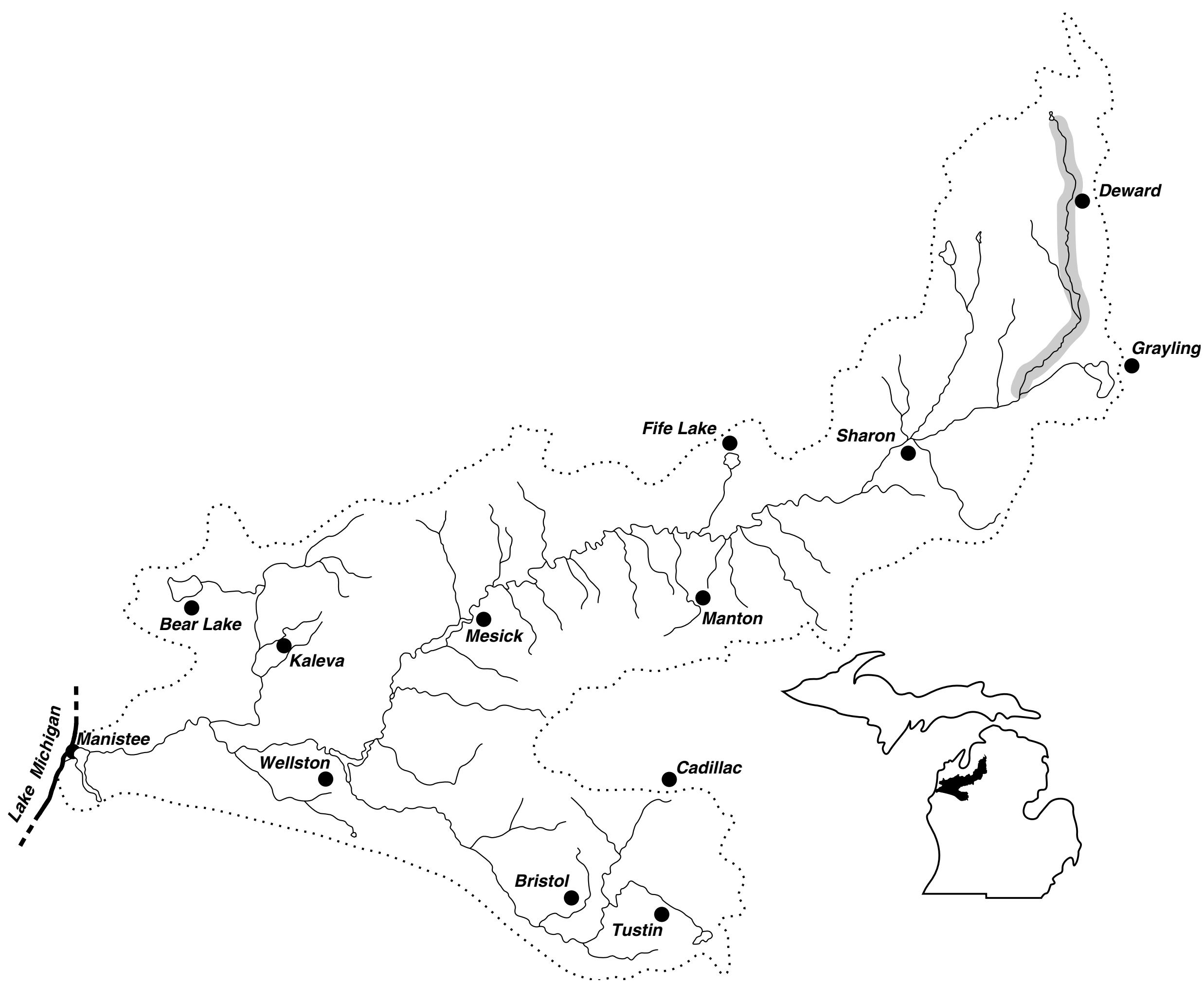


Rainbow darter (*Etheostoma caeruleum*)

Habitat:

feeding - gravelly high gradient riffles
- clear, moderate to large streams
- in shallows (average 1 foot)

spawning - gravel or rubble riffles

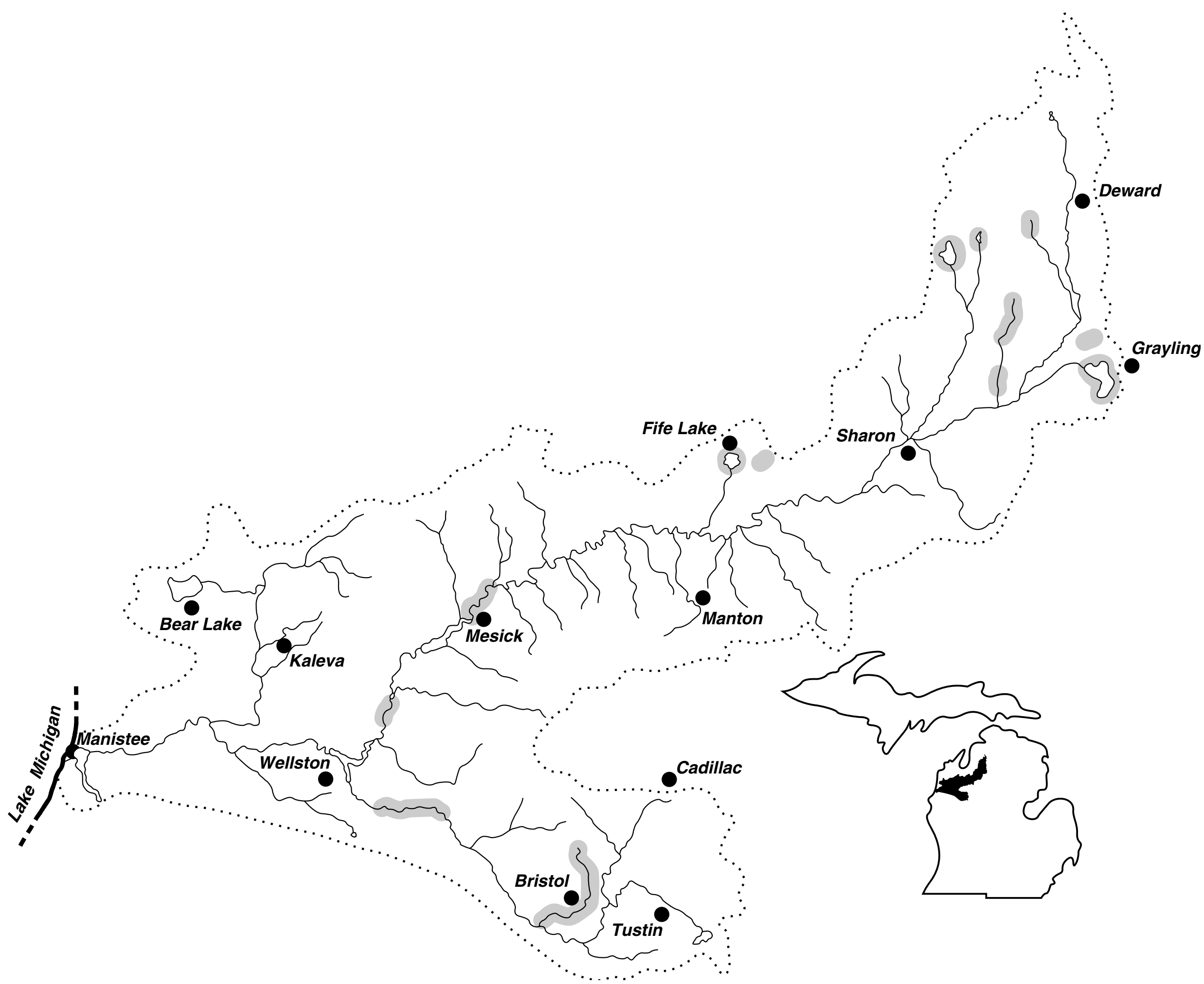


Iowa darter (*Etheostoma exile*)

Habitat:

feeding - clear, slow moving streams and lakes
- sandy to muddy substrates
- intolerant of turbid water
- lives in rooted aquatic vegetation

spawning - in pond-like extensions of streams on organic matter or roots
- in shallows

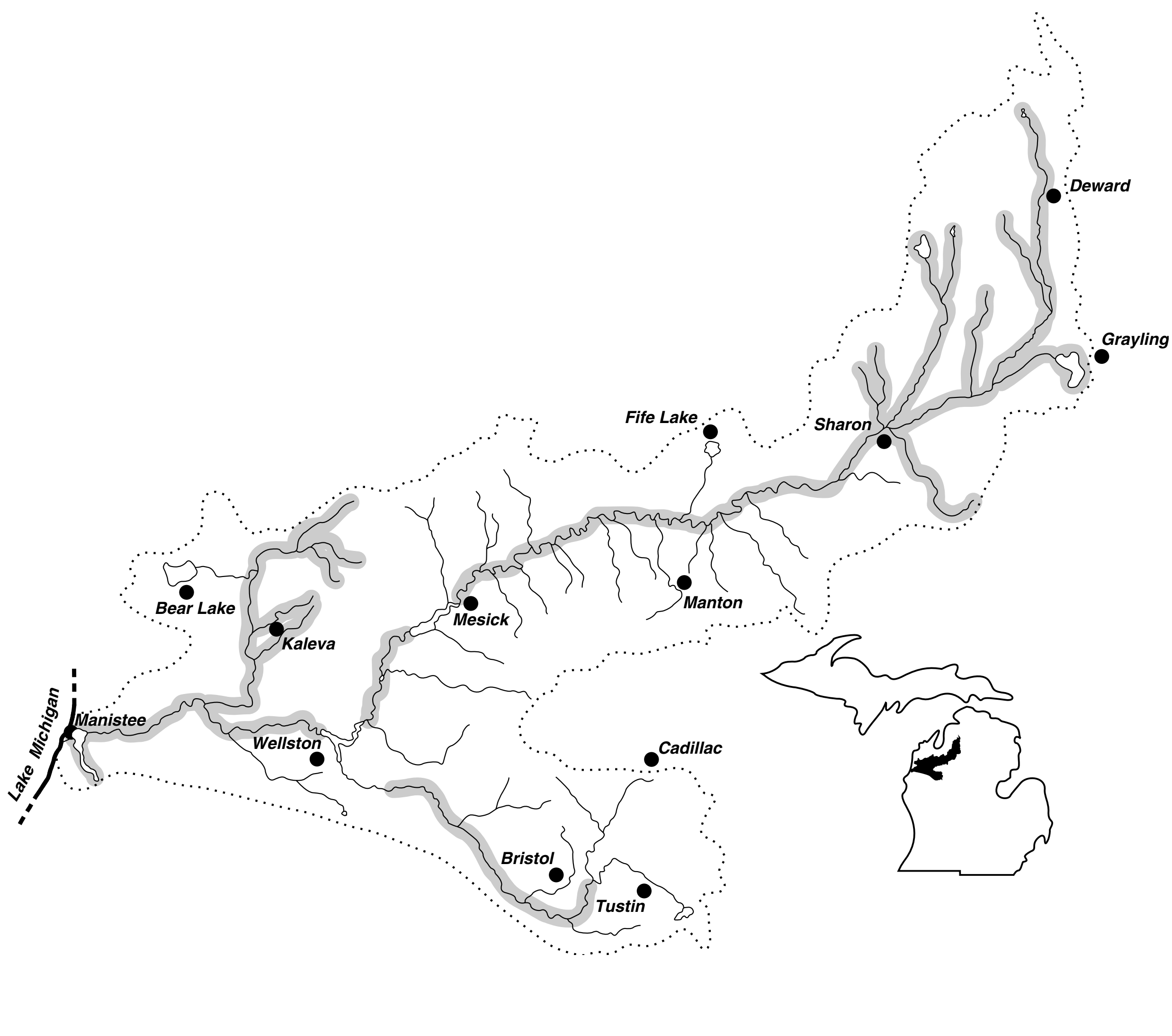


Johnny darter (*Etheostoma nigrum*)

Habitat:

feeding
- sand and silt substrate
- little to moderate current
- shallow areas of streams, rivers, lakes, and impoundments
- tolerant of many organic and inorganic pollutants and turbidity

spawning
- underneath rocks
- in stream pools or protected shallows of lakes

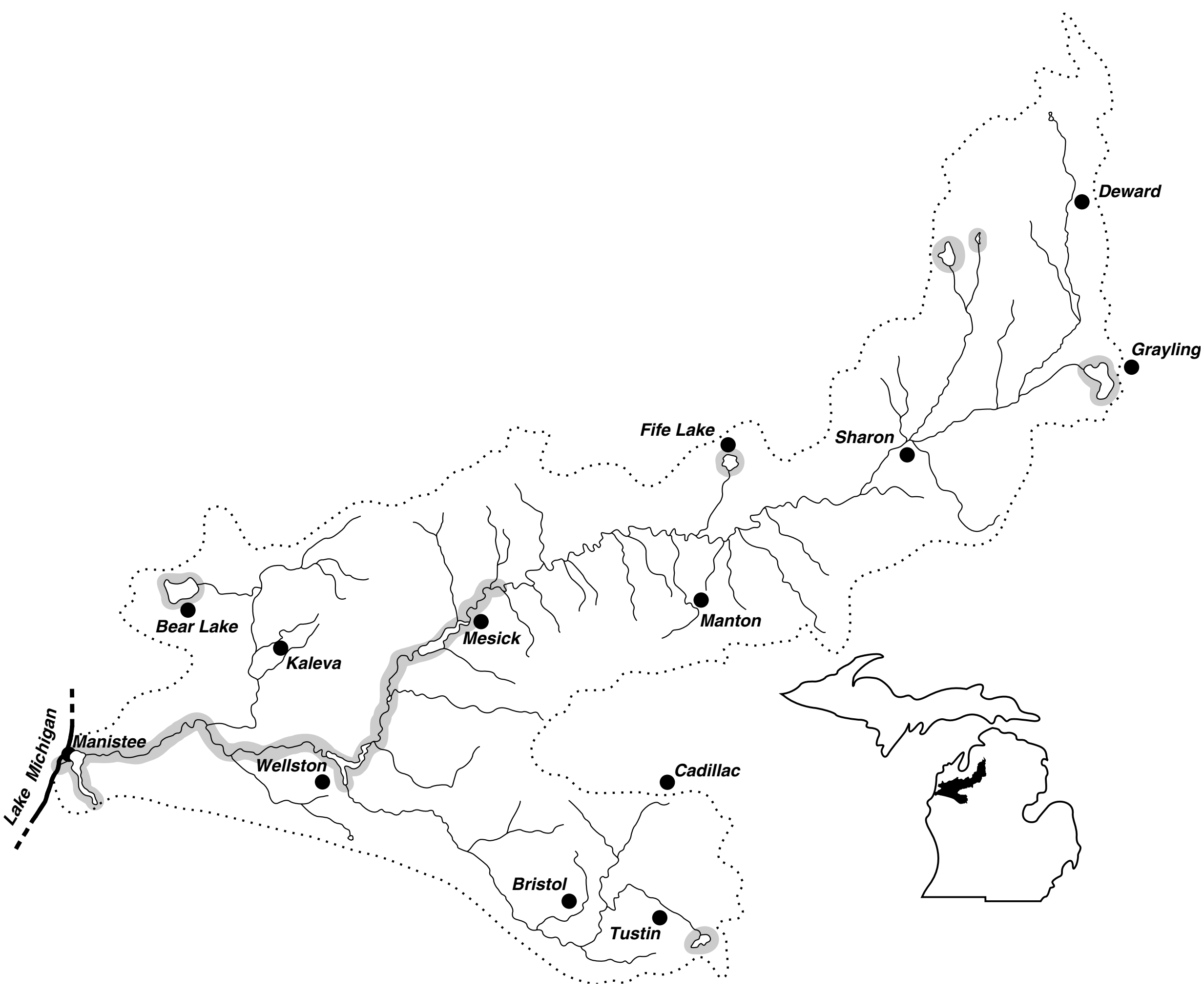


Yellow perch (*Perca flavescens*)

Habitat:

feeding
- clear lakes and impoundments; also Lake Michigan
- low gradient rivers
- abundance of rooted aquatics
- muck, organic debris, sand, or gravel substrate
- does not tolerate turbidity and siltation

spawning
- shallows of lakes, tributaries of streams
- occurs over rooted vegetation, submerged brush, fallen trees
- may occur over sand or gravel

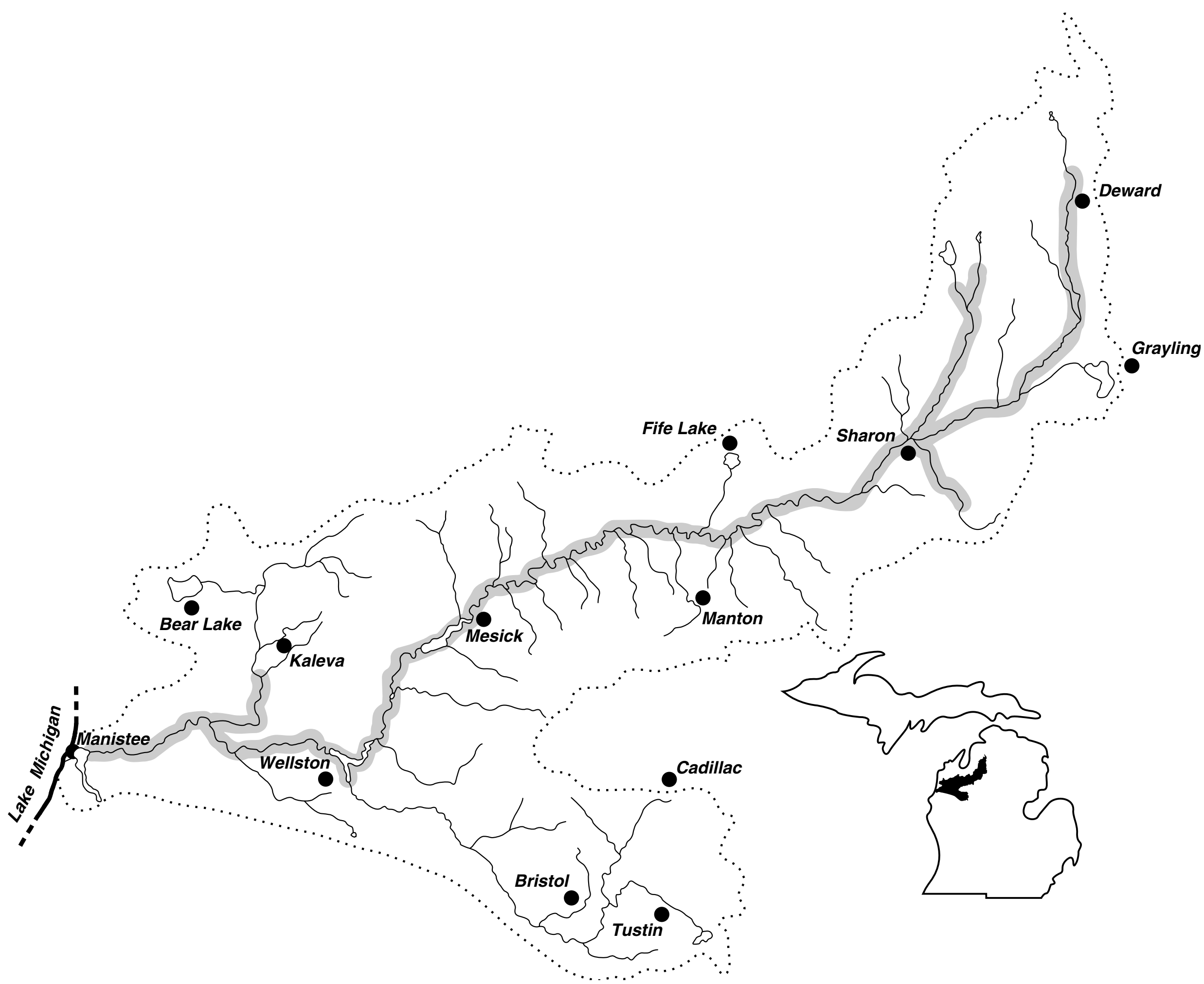


Logperch (*Percina caprodes*)

Habitat:

feeding - gravel riffles, deeper slower sections of rivers
- medium size streams; also lakes, impoundments, and Lake Michigan
- sand, gravel, or rock substrate
- avoids turbidity and silt

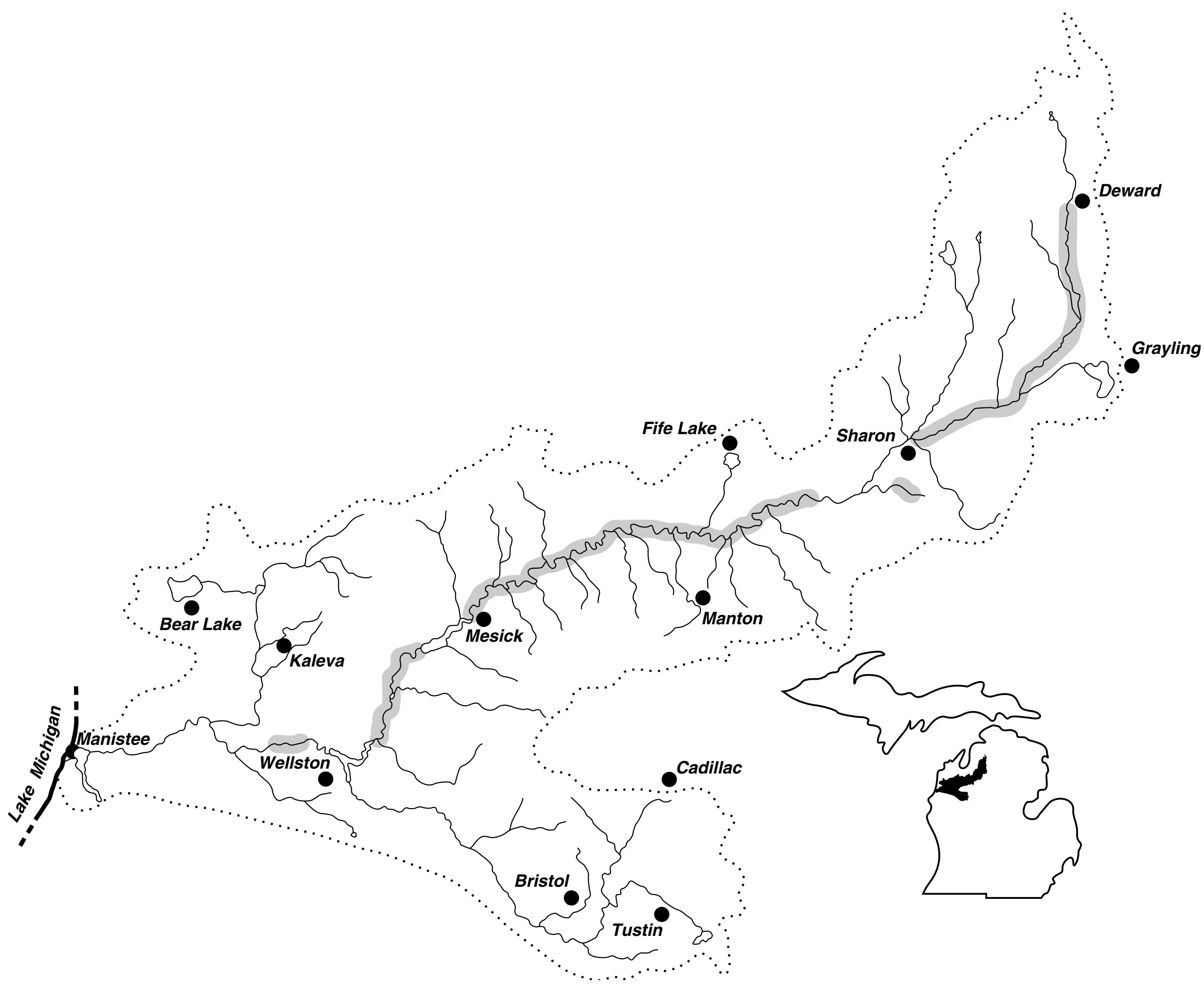
spawning - riffles or sandy in-shore shallows



Blackside darter (*Percina maculata*)

Habitat:

feeding	- small to medium streams
	- low to medium gradient
	- gravel and sand substrate
	- tolerate some turbidity
spawning	- gravel and sand substrate



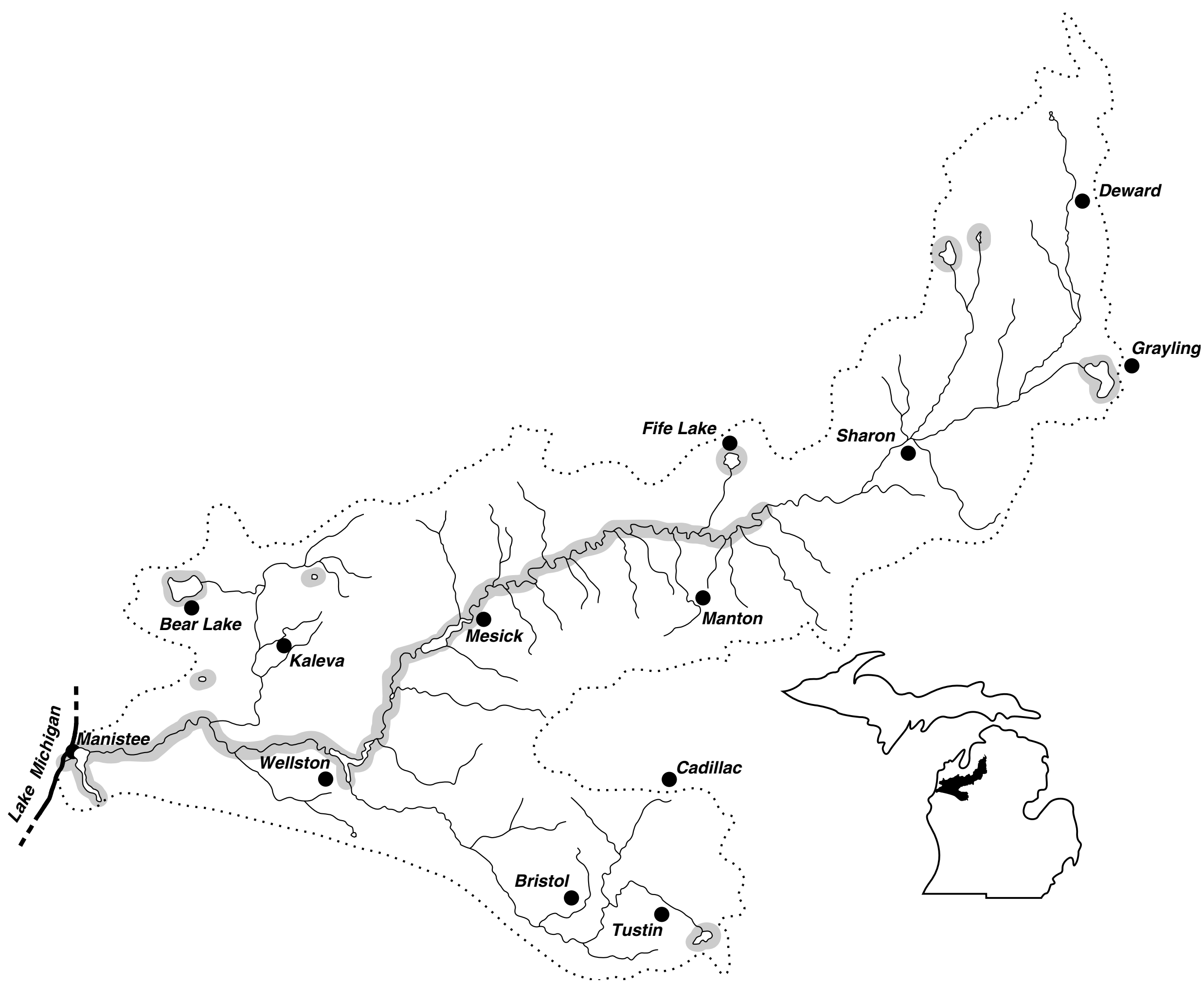
Walleye (*Stizostedion vitreum*)

Habitat:

feeding - larger, deeper streams and in large, shallow, turbid lakes and impoundments; also Lake Michigan
- gravel, bedrock, and firm substrates preferred
- does not tolerate a lot of turbidity or low oxygen

spawning - rocky substrates in high gradient water in rivers
- boulder to coarse gravel shoals in lakes

winter refuge - avoids strong currents

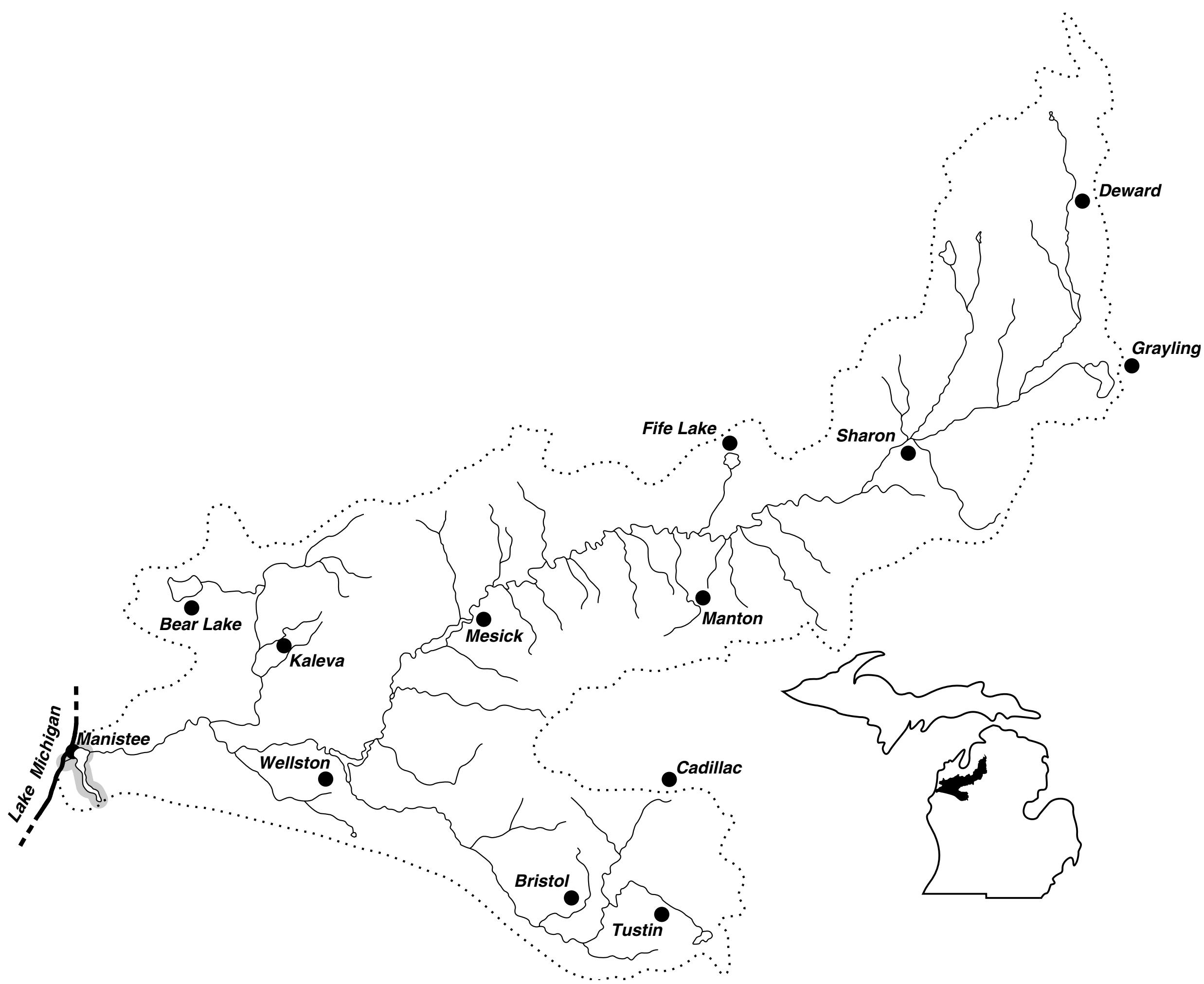


Freshwater drum (*Aplodinotus grunniens*)

Habitat:

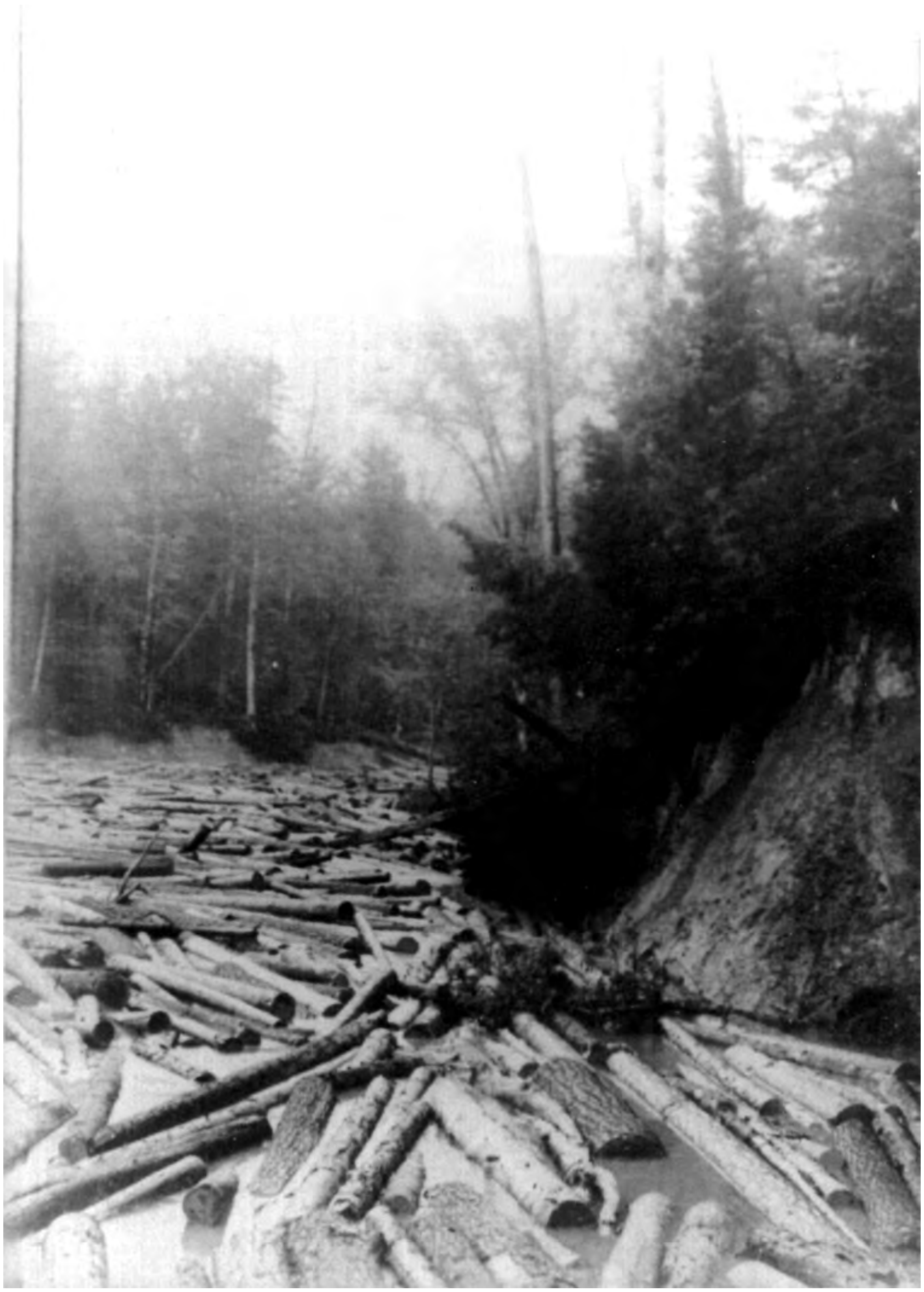
feeding - deeper pools of rivers and Lake Michigan
- in shallows
- prefers clear waters and clean substrates
- can adapt to high turbidity levels

spawning - pelagically, in open water, over sand or mud substrate
- occurs in bays or lower portions of marshes



Appendix II

The following laser copies of photographs were made from originals that are stored in the Manistee County Historical Museum, 425 River Street, Manistee, Michigan 49660. Steve Harold, Curator. 616-723-5531. Photographs 2, 3, and 5 were taken by Leonard Short, Druggist and Photographer of Manistee in 1903 or 1904 while on a canoe trip from the present day site of Tippy Dam to the City of Manistee. Photographs 1 and 4 were selected from hundreds in the archives at the museum by anonymous photographers.



Photograph #1

A large log-jam on the Manistee River. These were major causes of bank erosion.

Photograph #2

Ongoing bank erosion created by turn of the century logging practices. Note only second growth cove adjacent to the nearly vertical river bank.

Photograph #3

A log sluice located at Udell Hills Rollway in Manistee County, T22N, R15W, Section 36, that is at the mouth of Pine Creek. This method of delivering the logs to the river was more commonly used on the west coast. White rollways, as depicted on the cover photograph, were typical of Michigan's loggers.

Photograph #4

A "cut-off", areas where the river made a large U-shaped bend. The loggers, who systematically removed all the woody debris from the stream channel to facilitate floating logs to market, cut through these bends. This straightened the river and eliminated bends where log jams typically occurred. This photograph is thought to be at the present day site of the US Forest Service Peterson Bridge (M-37) campground on the Pine River, formerly the South Branch of the Manistee River.

Photograph #5

The "wannigans", or floating cook shacks. These followed the lumberjacks down the river during the log drives.

Appendix III

Federal Energy Regulatory Commission settlement agreement between Consumers Power Company, Michigan Department of Natural Resources, Michigan State Historic Preservation Officer, United States Department of Interior—Fish and Wildlife Service, United States Department of Interior—National Parks Service, and United States Department of Agriculture—Forest Service.

United States of America

Before The Federal Energy Regulatory Commission

Consumers Power Company)	Project No. 2451 (Rogers)
)	Project No. 2452 (Hardy)
)	Project No. 2468 (Croton)
)	Project No. 2448 (Mio)
)	Project No. 2447 (Alcona)
)	Project No. 2449 (Loud)
)	Project No. 2453 (Five Channels)
)	Project No. 2450 (Cooke)
)	Project No. 2436 (Foote)
)	Project No. 2599 (Hodenpyl)
)	Project No. 2580 (Tippy)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

OFFER OF SETTLEMENT

1.0 Jurisdiction

1.1 This OFFER OF SETTLEMENT ("SETTLEMENT") is entered into voluntarily by and between the "parties," Consumers Power Company ("CPCo"), the licensee applying for new licenses for 11 FERC-licensed hydroelectric projects and the United States Department of Agriculture Forest Service ("USFS"), the United States Department of Interior Fish and Wildlife Service ("USF&WS"), the Michigan Department of Natural Resources ("MDNR"), the United States Department of Interior National Park Service ("NPS"), and the Michigan State Historic Preservation Officer ("SHPO") pursuant to Federal Energy Regulatory Commission ("FERC") rule, 18 CFR Section 385.602. The "resource agencies" are defined as USFS, USF&WS and the MDNR. This Settlement concerns the resolution of project operation, fish passage, project boundaries, land management, water quality, downstream fish protection, historical and archeological resource management, soil erosion control, threatened, endangered and sensitive species management and establishment of retirement funds for the hydroelectric projects and other matters.

2.0 Effect of Offer of Settlement

2.1 This Settlement is made upon the express understanding that it constitutes a negotiated settlement of issues in the above-captioned proceedings, and no party to the Settlement shall be deemed to have approved, admitted, accepted, agreed to or otherwise consented to any operation, management, valuation or other principle underlying or

supposed to underlie any of the matters herein, except as expressly provided herein. Further, the parties agree that this Settlement shall not be used as a precedent or as an admission with regard to any issue dealt with in the Settlement.

2.2 For those issues addressed in this Settlement, parties other than the USFS agree not to propose, mandate, support or otherwise communicate to FERC any license condition other than those provided for herein, except as provided for in Paragraph 9.3. The USFS agrees not to propose, support or otherwise communicate to the FERC any license condition other than those provided for herein except to the extent that its analysis under the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 ("NEPA") results in mandatory license conditions pursuant to § 4(e) of the Federal Power Act. This section shall not be read to predetermine the outcome of the required NEPA analysis. However, if such NEPA analysis leads to the addition of any license conditions beyond those contained herein, the parties recognize that such an addition would trigger the rights of the parties to withdraw from this agreement pursuant to Paragraph 2.3.

2.3 This Settlement shall become effective upon issuance by FERC of "final" orders accepting this Settlement without modification or condition and issuing licenses in accordance with the Settlement for the 11 hydro electric projects dealt with herein. If FERC issues orders accepting the Settlement with modifications or conditions, this Settlement shall be considered modified to conform to the terms of those orders unless at least one party indicates to the other parties in writing within 30 days after the issuance of such orders its objection to the orders and its withdrawal from the Settlement. If any party so withdraws, this Settlement shall cease to have any force or effect except for Paragraph 2.1. If this Settlement is modified to conform to the terms of FERC orders, as discussed above, it shall become effective once those orders become "final" as of the date rehearing is denied, or if rehearing is not applied for, the date on which the right to seek rehearing expires. The terms of this Agreement shall continue in effect, subject to the FERC's reserved authority under the licenses to require modifications, until the earlier of the expiration of a new license (plus the term of any annual license) issued by the FERC or the effective date of any FERC order approving surrender of a project under Section 6 of the Federal Power Act.

2.4 It is a fundamental assumption of CPCo that the amounts to be expended, as a result of this Settlement, balance economics and environmental stewardship and that rate-recovery of those amounts will not be denied by the Michigan Public Service Commission ("MPSC") or, where appropriate, by FERC. All parties concur that the Settlement fairly and appropriately addresses the environmental and natural resource issues covered by this Settlement and associated with the relicensing of CPCo's 11 hydroelectric projects by FERC. The resource agencies will, if requested, support this Settlement before the MPSC and FERC as fairly and appropriately addressing environmental and natural resource issues.

2.5 CPCo shall prepare a draft schedule for implementing the studies, plans and actions called for in this Settlement. The schedule shall specify dates for initiation, progress reporting and completion

for each study, plan, or action and shall include milestones for major activities. A draft schedule shall be submitted to the resource agencies for review in accordance with Section 13 not later than 90 days after execution of this Settlement by the parties.

3.0 <u>Parties Bound</u>

3.1 This Settlement shall apply to, and be binding on, the parties and their successors and assigns. However, no party shall be bound by any part of this Settlement except with regard to the above-captioned licensing proceedings and then only if the Settlement is approved and made effective as provided for in Paragraph 2.3. No change in corporate status of CPCo shall in any way alter CPCo's responsibilities under this Settlement. Each signatory to this Settlement certifies that he or she is authorized to execute this Settlement and legally bind the party he or she represents.

3.2 If the Michigan Water Resources Commission (WRC) fails to issue for each project, within 90 days from the signing of this Settlement, a water quality certificate that is in conformance with the water quality terms [Sections 6, 8, 15 (as it pertains to Sections 6, 8, 16 and Appendix C), 16 and Appendix C] and the operation conditions (Sections 17 through 36 inclusive) of this Settlement, any party may withdraw from this Settlement and need not comply with its terms. The parties shall have up to 30 days from the date of certificate issuance (or up to 30 days after the end of the 90-day period if fewer than 11 certificates are issued) to withdraw from this Settlement. If the WRC issues water quality certificates in conformance with the above listed sections of this Settlement, for all projects, CPCo agrees not to contest the issuance of the certificates for those projects.

3.3 Funds allocated by CPCo for capital costs (costs for study, planning, design, construction and preoperational testing), except for downstream fish protection, can be utilized by CPCo for other capital costs covered by this Settlement after consulting with the resource agencies (and with the SHPO regarding funds provided for in Paragraph 7.1) and approval from FERC. Unexpended funds not needed for the implementation of this Settlement may be retained by CPCo after consulting with the resource agencies and approval from FERC.

4.0 Land Management

4.1 CPCo shall, in consultation with the resource agencies, develop and implement Land Management Plans for its hydroelectric projects on the AuSable, Manistee and Muskegon River systems.

4.2 Each Land Management Plan (Plan), one for each river system, shall include the following sections: recreation; Federal and State threatened, endangered, candidate and sensitive species; wildlife and their habitat; and forestry. The Plans shall also include a CPCo staffing section providing for a minimum of four (4) full time natural resource employees to implement the Plans. The Plans, including implementation schedules, shall be submitted to and reviewed by the resource agencies prior to submittal for approval by FERC, as provided for in Section 13. Upon FERC approval of a Land Management Plan, CPCo shall implement that Plan.

4.3 The Recreation Management Sections of the Plans will be developed by CPCo in consultation with the resource agencies and local communities, and shall address future recreation needs over the term of the new licenses including lease management, use administration, facility development, resource protection, operation and maintenance of recreational facilities, recreation signing and site plans.

4.4 CPCo shall fund capital costs in the amount of $2.5 million in 1992 dollars (adjusted for the Consumers Price Index (CPI)) for study, planning, design and construction of additional recreational facilities or facility improvements in accordance with the Plans. Operation and maintenance (O&M) costs related to the Land Management Plans are not included in the $2.5 million. The O&M costs of $132,000 for MDNR and $183,000 for USFS managed facilities identified in Appendix A shall be remitted to the respective resource agencies by October 1 annually, upon license issuance, for use in the ensuing fiscal year. The resource agencies O&M costs are in 1992 dollars to be adjusted annually based on the CPI. No later than December 1 of each year after issuance of the new licenses pursuant to this Settlement, the MDNR and USFS will provide CPCo with a written statement of the prior year's O&M costs for the MDNR and USFS managed facilities identified in Appendix A and the next year's payment by CPCo shall be adjusted to reflect any unexpended amounts from a previous year.

4.5 Candidate new recreational facilities and proposed improvements to existing recreational facilities, are listed in Appendix A. The final list of recreational facility improvement and construction will be developed in the recreation section of the Land Management Plans based on: Appendix A; compatibility with other aspects of the Land Management Plans listed in Paragraph 4.2; consultation with the resource agencies, the NPS, and the public; and the ongoing CPCo recreation use study being conducted in response to the FERC additional information requests dated May 21, 1992.

4.6 Prior to issuance by CPCo of any new leases (in this Settlement "leases" shall include licenses CPCo may grant for the use of project lands) or renewals of existing leases of hydroelectric project lands as defined by Section 10, CPCo shall consult with the resource agencies.

4.7 CPCo shall develop a revised lease instrument(s), in consultation with the resource agencies, to provide for management control of each lease. CPCo shall develop the instrument(s) in accordance with applicable government standards, USFS special use permits and applicable Appendix B requirements. CPCo shall obtain resource agencies review of the lease instrument(s) prior to use.

4.8 CPCo shall develop a lease inspection form based on the revised lease instrument provided for in Paragraph 4.7. CPCo shall subsequently inspect each leased recreational facility for compliance with the revised lease instrument provided for in Paragraph 4.7. These comprehensive inspections shall be completed within 18 months of each project's license issuance.

4.9 CPCo shall upgrade existing lease instruments to requirements specified in Paragraph 4.7 and shall require each lessee to upgrade

facilities to meet the revised lease conditions as soon as practicable, but for leases that expire prior to January 1, 1994, not later than 10 years after each project's license issuance.

5.0 Downstream Fish Protection

5.1 CPCo shall study, plan, design, construct, operate and maintain fish entrainment protection devices or measures in accordance with this Section. For these 11 hydroelectric projects, the parties agree that fish protection, where practicable, is preferred to the annual contributions called for in Paragraph 5.3. CPCo shall fund capital costs in the amount of $5 million in 1992 dollars (adjusted for the CPI) to study, plan, design and construct fish protection devices or measures in accordance with the provisions of Paragraph 5.2 at its projects on the AuSable, Manistee and Muskegon Rivers. The allocation of the $5 million among the projects will depend on the results of the evaluation in Paragraph 5.2. Operation and maintenance costs related to the fish protection devices and measures are not included in the $5 million. All submittals shall follow procedures in Section 13. If less than the $5 million is spent on studying, planning and constructing fish protection devices or measures as a result of the inability to obtain FERC approval, per Paragraph 5.2, CPCo shall retain the balance of the $5 million and utilize it for the contributions required by Paragraph 5.3.

5.2 CPCo shall contract with consulting firm(s) experienced in the design and installation of downstream fish protection devices at hydroelectric projects to evaluate designs, applicability, costs and effectiveness of fish protection devices or measures for installation at each hydroelectric project. CPCo shall provide the name and qualifications of its recommended consulting firm(s) for resource agencies review, in accordance with Section 13, 90 days after issuance of the FERC license for each of CPCo's hydroelectric projects. Within twelve (12) months of resource agencies review of the firm(s), CPCo shall complete an evaluation of potential measures and devices at each of the 11 hydroelectric projects. The evaluation results shall be provided to the resource agencies for review. When the resource agencies recommend fish protection device installation, CPCo shall (subject to Section 14) make application to FERC within 180 days of receipt of the resource agencies recommendation. When FERC approves the protective measures, CPCo shall within 90 days, begin contracting for design and installation. Upon FERC approval of the final design, CPCo shall apply for necessary permits and proceed with installation.

5.3 Beginning with the effective date of the FERC license for each hydroelectric project, CPCo shall annually contribute the following amounts in 1992 dollars (adjusted for the CPI) to the State of Michigan Habitat Improvement Account to be used for the following activities: fisheries habitat restoration or enhancement, preparing comprehensive river management plans, aquatic studies, fisheries recreation, water quality improvement and soil erosion control activities on the AuSable, Manistee and Muskegon Rivers.

Muskegon		Manistee		Au Sable	
Rogers	$ 9,000	Hodenpyl	$11,000	Mio	$ 55,000
Hardy	$ 6,000	Tippy	$34,000	Alcona	$ 30,000
Croton	$ 47,000			Loud	$ 43,000
				5 Channels	$105,000
				Foote	$177,000
				Cooke	$ 58,000

Contributions made in accordance with this paragraph shall be by check made payable to the State of Michigan by October 1st of each year for the previous 12-month period, or any portion thereof, and shall be forwarded to the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Environmental Protection Division for deposit to the State of Michigan Habitat Improvement Account. For any period of time in which this Settlement is in place and one or more of the units associated with the projects listed in Paragraph 5.3 are not operating due to maintenance, or other scheduled or unscheduled outages, the payments shall be adjusted downward accordingly.

5.4 Each year, MDNR will consult in advance with USF&WS, USFS and CPCo regarding the expenditure of contributions made pursuant to Paragraph 5.3 and liquidated damages assessed pursuant to Paragraph 6.9 prior to MDNR authorizing an activity. The MDNR need not obtain FERC approval of an activity, unless it would require modification of one of the 11 licenses, and will provide an annual accounting report to FERC, USFS, USFWS and CPCo of expenditures made from these funds by December 1 of each year.

5.5 If a fish protection measure(s) is implemented at any project, the annual contribution specified in Paragraph 5.3 for such project shall be reduced based upon the effectiveness of the fish protection. The effectiveness of the fish protection will be determined by comparing the results of the preapplication fish entrainment and mortality studies with a single, one-year study of similar scope performed after the fish protection measures are installed. CPCo shall provide all study plans, study results and recommended contribution changes to the resource agencies as provided for in Section 13. If CPCo subsequently modifies the fish protection, CPCo may conduct an additional study(ies) to re-establish the amount of future contributions.

6.0 <u>Water Quality</u>

6.1 CPCo shall study, plan, design, construct, operate and maintain water quality enhancements in accordance with this section. CPCo shall fund capital costs in the amount of $1.75 million in 1992 dollars (as adjusted for the CPI) for study, planning, design and construction of water quality enhancements, including dissolved oxygen (D.O.) enhancement measures and temperature enhancement measures as described herein. Operation and maintenance costs related to the enhancement measures are not included in the $1.75 million.

6.2 After installation of water quality monitoring instruments pursuant to Paragraphs 6.4 and 8.1, CPCo will evaluate the water temperature and D.O. data received from the monitoring devices and shall submit a water temperature and D.O. evaluation to the resource agencies. The evaluation shall be for the purpose of determining whether a project

will attain the water quality limits specified in Paragraphs 6.5 and 6.6. For those projects that have not attained the water quality limits, the evaluation will also analyze whether the limits can be attained by: 1) increasing the volume of cooler water passing through the plant turbines during the summer months; and/or 2) engineering or operational measures to increase downstream D.O. concentrations. The resource agencies will review the evaluation and provide comments to CPCo within 45 days of receipt. For any project whose compliance with the limits of Paragraphs 6.5 and 6.6 will improve from an increase in cooler water or D.O., CPCo shall provide the name(s) and qualification(s) of recommended consulting firm(s) experienced in the design and installation of measures for: 1) increasing the volume of cooler water to be passed through the project turbines during the summer months; and/or 2) increasing D.O. concentrations through engineering or operational measures, as appropriate, for resource agencies review. Within eighteen (18) months of the resource agencies review, CPCo shall contract with the consulting firm(s) and complete an evaluation of designs, applicability and costs of D.O. and/or water temperature enhancement measures at each hydroelectric project that has not met the applicable water quality limits specified in Paragraphs 6.5 and 6.6. The results of the evaluation shall be provided to the resource agencies for review and comment. If the resource agencies recommend a field test to evaluate a measure for increasing the volume of cooler water or D.O., or recommend installation of such a measure, CPCo shall (subject to the dispute resolution process in Section 14) make application to FERC within 180 days of receipt of the resource agencies recommendation. When FERC approves the field test or the measure, CPCo, within 90 days, shall apply for necessary permits and approvals and begin contracting for the field test or the installation.

6.3 CPCo shall develop and implement, in consultation with the resource agencies, a water quality, fish contaminant and sediment quality monitoring program as outlined in Appendix C.

6.4 CPCo shall contract with the United States Geological Survey (USGS) pursuant to Paragraph 8.1 for the installation of continuous recording instruments at locations reviewed by the resource agencies both upstream and below the discharge from each of its hydroelectric projects to monitor water temperatures and D.O. concentrations. Water temperature and D.O. data shall be recorded on the hour and be provided to the resource agencies on a quarterly basis.

6.5 The following water quality limits apply to the Rogers and Hardy Projects when flows are greater than or equal to monthly 95% exceedance flows:

A. Monthly average temperature downstream of either project shall not exceed the following temperatures (°F).

J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D
38	38	41	56	70	80	83	81	74	64	49	39

B. CPCo shall not warm the Muskegon River below either project greater than a monthly average of 5°F above the temperature measured upstream of the project.

C. Dissolved oxygen concentrations in the project tailwaters shall not be less than 5 milligrams per liter (mg/l) at any time unless CPCo demonstrates to the WRC that these D.O. limits are not attainable through further feasible and prudent measures or the variation between the daily average and daily minimum D.O. concentrations in the river exceeds 1 mg/l. If the WRC agrees with CPCo's demonstration, D.O. concentrations in project tailwaters shall not be less than 4 mg/l at any time or less than 5 mg/l as a daily average during the warm weather season (June through September) until such time as the WRC causes the preparation and implementation of a comprehensive plan to upgrade these waters to 5 mg/l at any time.

D. CPCo shall prepare operating procedures to address water quality conditions which deviate from the above limits.

6.6 The following water quality limits apply to the Croton, Mio, Alcona, Loud, Five Channels, Cooke, Foote, Hodenpyl and Tippy Projects when flows are greater than or equal to monthly 95% exceedance flows:

A. Monthly average temperature downstream of the projects shall not exceed the following temperatures (°F):

J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D
38	38	43	54	65	68	68	68	63	56	48	40

B. CPCo shall not warm the river below any project greater than a monthly average of 2°F above the temperature as measured upstream of the project.

C. Dissolved oxygen concentrations in the project tailwaters shall not be less than 7 mg/l at any time unless CPCo demonstrates to the WRC that these D.O. limits are not attainable through further feasible and prudent measures or the variations between the daily average and daily minimum D.O. concentrations in the river exceeds 1 mg/l. If the WRC agrees with CPCo's demonstration, D.O. concentrations in project tailwaters shall not be less than 6 mg/l at any time during the warm weather season (June through September) until such time as the WRC causes preparation and implementation of a comprehensive plan to upgrade these waters to 7 mg/l at any time.

D. CPCo shall prepare operating procedures to address water quality conditions which deviate from the above limits.

6.7 The numerical monthly average temperature limits set forth in this Settlement may be exceeded for short periods with approval from WRC when natural water temperatures measured upstream of the project exceed the ninetieth percentile occurrence of natural water temperatures (the monthly average temperatures in Paragraphs 6.5.A and 6.6.A are the ninetieth percentile values plus the temperature increases allowed in Paragraphs 6.5.B and 6.6.B). In all cases, temperature increases shall not be greater than the natural water temperature as measured upstream of the project plus the increase allowed, respectively, in Paragraphs 6.5.B and 6.6.B.

6.8 Any party to this Settlement may petition the WRC during every fifth year after the signing of this Settlement, to modify the D.O. or temperature limits contained herein and in the State Water Quality

Certification to ensure the protection of the public health, welfare, safety, and the natural resources of the State of Michigan, including the fishery resources.

6.9 If CPCo is not in compliance with any water quality limit in this Section, MDNR may assess the following liquidated damages for damages to the natural resources for non-compliances that occur more than two years after installation of the monitoring equipment required in Paragraphs 6.4 and 8.1 or more than three years from license issuance, whichever is earlier. The MDNR shall not assess liquidated damages for any non-compliance under both this Settlement and the Water Quality Certificate. Payment shall be made in the manner and be used for the purposes provided in Paragraph 5.3.

Liquidated damages shall accrue during the pendency of any dispute, but payment of such damages shall be stayed until the dispute is resolved or the WRC issues its final determination in accordance with Section 14, whichever is earlier.

A. For exceedances of temperature limits:

<u>Liquidated Damages Per</u>
<u>Temperature Exceedance(s)</u>
<u>Per Month/Per Project</u>

$1,500

(1) Damages may only be assessed at any project where temperature exceedance(s) under Paragraphs 6.5.A or 6.6.A have occurred in two or more months in any calendar year. In the event exceedances occur in two or more months, damages may be assessed for the first two months of exceedance and every month of exceedance thereafter.

(2) Damages may only be assessed at any project where temperature exceedance(s) under Paragraphs 6.5.B or 6.6.B have occurred in two or more months in any calendar year above the upstream water temperature. In the event exceedances occur in two or more months, damages may be assessed for the first two months of exceedance and every month of exceedance thereafter.

(3) The damages in any given month at any project shall not be greater than $3,000 for temperature exceedances.

B. For non-compliance of D.O. limits:

<u>Dissolved Oxygen</u> <u>Non-compliance(s)</u> <u>Per Month/Per Project</u>	<u>Liquidated Damages</u> <u>Per Day</u>
1 - 12	$ 100
13 or more	$ 200

(1) Damages may only be assessed in any month at any project where D.O. non-compliance has occurred on three or more days in that month. In the event non-compliance occurs on three or more days, damages may be assessed for the first three days and every day thereafter.

(2) Damages in any given month at any project shall not be greater than $3,000 for D.O. non-compliances.

7.0 <u>Historical & Archaeological Resources</u>

7.1 CPCo shall provide a total of $1 million in 1992 dollars (adjusted for the CPI) to provide for historical and archaeological (cultural) resource evaluation, mitigation and enhancement activities. All such activities will be conducted in accordance with the provisions of the "Programmatic Agreement Among The Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, The Advisory Council On Historic Preservation (Council), The USDA Forest Service Huron-Manistee National Forests And The Michigan State Historic Preservation Officer (SHPO) And Consumers Power Company For The Management Of Historic Properties Affected By Consumers Power Company Hydroelectric Projects" and "Programmatic Agreement Among The Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, The Advisory Council On Historic Preservation, The Michigan State Historic Preservation Office, And Consumers Power Company For The Management Of Historic Properties Affected By Consumers Power Company Hydroelectric Projects." Each Programmatic Agreement will provide for compliance with requirements of Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act, as amended, by outlining general provisions for the treatment of historic properties and requiring CPCo to prepare Cultural Resource Management Plans (CRMPs) for each project covered by this Settlement in consultation with the USFS, the SHPO and the Council.

7.2 Costs for development of the CRMPs and completion of remaining prelicense Phase I Archaeological Surveys are not included in the $1 million.

7.3 CPCo shall utilize the funds identified in Paragraph 7.1 to implement the CRMPs. Each CRMP will provide for: future identification needs, the proper management of any identified or unidentified cultural property, cultural resource activity reporting requirements, procedures for the treatment and disposition of cultural and human remains and cultural resource interpretive activities. Within twelve months of new license issuance for each project and prior to filing for FERC approval in accordance with the Programmatic Agreement, CPCo will submit each CRMP to the SHPO, USFS where applicable, and the Council for review.

8.0 <u>Stream Gauging and Water Quality Monitoring Facilities</u>

8.1 CPCo shall fund capital costs in the amount of $500,000 in 1992 dollars (adjusted for the CPI) to construct new or upgrade existing stream flow gauging and water quality monitoring facilities, including telemetry, to support run-of-river operations and monitor water quality at certain CPCo hydroelectric projects covered under this Settlement. Upon approval of the FERC, CPCo shall contract with the USGS for the installation, upgrading, maintenance and operation of the flow gauging and water quality monitoring stations required under this Settlement.

9.0 <u>Fish Passage Structures</u>

9.1 CPCo shall provide for the design, construction, operation and maintenance of fish passage structures (upstream and associated downstream) at each hydroelectric project subject to the following conditions:

A) For a given project, a comprehensive river management plan which demonstrates the appropriateness of fish passage has been developed by the MDNR with the USFS, USF&WS and public input, and approved by the Michigan Natural Resources Commission.

B) The USFS does not object to fish passage based on the provisions of the Huron-Manistee National Forest Land and Resource Management Plan, and the USF&WS, after consultation under the Section 7 authority of the Endangered Species Act of 1973, as amended, does not object to fish passage.

C) The FERC approves such structures.

9.2 Once conditions in Paragraphs 9.1 A and B have been met for a hydroelectric project, the resource agencies will provide to CPCo a list of fish species to be passed and all necessary biological design parameters for the fish passage facilities to be constructed at that hydroelectric project. CPCo shall, within 12 months thereafter, submit a design plan for resource agencies review prior to submittal for approval by FERC, as provided for in Section 13.

9.3 The USF&WS reserves the Secretary of Interior's authority under Section 18 of the Federal Power Act, 16 USC Section 811, to prescribe fishways after the issuance of new licenses, and will not invoke this authority, or make recommendations pursuant to the Fish and Wildlife Coordination Act for implementing fish passage, until conditions of Paragraphs 9.1 A and B, and 9.2 are met.

9.4 CPCo shall complete installation of the fish passage structures no later than 24 months after the FERC approves a design plan. Prior to completing construction of a structure, CPCo shall submit an operation and maintenance plan and a performance evaluation plan (OMPEP) for resource agencies review prior to submittal for approval by the FERC, as appropriate or required, as provided for in Section 13. CPCo shall implement the OMPEP upon FERC approval and completion of fish passage construction.

9.5 If more than one hydroelectric project meets the above conditions at the same time, within 12 months of FERC approval of the fish passage design plan for the first hydroelectric project, CPCo shall prepare and submit for the resource agencies review and FERC approval, an implementation schedule for the next project to be modified for fish passage. This process would be repeated until all hydroelectric projects meeting the above requirements are modified.

9.6 CPCo shall modify a fish passage structure and/or the project operation, if necessary, to meet the biological design parameters for the fish passage facility. Any structural modification of the fish

passage facility shall follow consultation with the resource agencies and shall be subject to FERC approval, as appropriate or required.

10.0 Project Boundaries

10.1 CPCo shall maintain within each hydroelectric project boundary all CPCo owned lands that were within the hydroelectric project boundary as of January 1, 1992. In addition, where National Forest system lands join the margin of the reservoir, CPCo shall include within the hydroelectric project boundary 200 ft of National Forest system land measured horizontally from the reservoir edge at normal maximum surface elevation (high water mark).

10.2 The USFS agrees that the inclusion of the additional National Forest land, above the high water mark within the project boundaries, shall have no effect on the existing Federal Power Act, Section 4(e), Conditioning Authority of the Secretary of Agriculture, with respect to the CPCo projects covered by this Settlement, and shall not create such authority where none presently exists.

10.3 CPCo shall not be responsible for injury to any person, property, flora or fauna on National Forest lands included in a CPCo project boundary, except in the case of gross negligence or willful misconduct by CPCo or CPCo employees. In no event will the liability of the USFS extend beyond that provided for in the Federal Tort Claims Act (28 USC Section 2671 through 2680).

10.4 CPCo shall not be responsible for any enforcement activities related to Federal laws or regulations on the National Forest land within the project boundary, except as required by the FERC under the provisions of the Federal Power Act.

10.5 Upon the National Forest System lands included within the hydroelectric project boundary as described above, the obligation of CPCo for management activities shall be limited to those activities specifically agreed to through the land management plan process outlined in Section 4 except as required pursuant to the Federal Power Act. Such responsibilities will be jointly agreed to by USFS and CPCo on an activity basis and shall generally include, but not be limited to: joint wildlife habitat enhancement activities, joint recreational facility improvements, and joint watershed improvement projects performed in cooperation with the USFS; the dissemination of information to recreation users regarding recreational opportunities and regulations; and providing information to USFS managers about recreation user statistics and observed violations of applicable regulations. CPCo shall not be responsible for injury to any person or persons within said project boundary that results solely from actions or inactions of USFS.

10.6 By entry into this Settlement, the MDNR, the SHPO, USF&WS, and the NPS shall not be considered to have approved any alteration of the legal liabilities of CPCo or the USFS under Paragraphs 10.3 through 10.5.

11.0 <u>Retirement Studies and Trust Fund</u>

11.1 It is the intent of the parties to seek the establishment of trust funds that would ensure that funds are available for proper future management of each project upon retirement from power production.

11.2 Ten years after license issuance, CPCo will begin consulting with the resource agencies on a plan for studying the costs of: 1) permanent non-power operation, 2) partial project removal, or 3) complete project removal at each of the 11 projects. Within six (6) months thereafter, CPCo will submit the study plans to the FERC for approval. Within twenty-four (24) months after approval of the plans by FERC, CPCo shall complete the studies called for by the plans, unless the FERC shall establish a different period for study completion. On completion of the studies, CPCo shall submit study reports to the FERC and resource agencies. In its first retail and wholesale general change of rate filings following completion of the studies, CPCo shall include costs related to the establishment of trust funds to collect from ratepayers the costs of: 1) permanent non-power operation, or 2) partial project removal, or 3) complete project removal at each of the 11 projects. If the MPSC or FERC does not approve CPCo's rates insofar as they reflect costs related to the trust funds, CPCo shall include such costs in each successive retail and wholesale general change of rate filing unless the Steering Committee believes making such a proposal would be unproductive. The State of Michigan on behalf of the CPCo ratepayers, shall be beneficiary of the trust funds unless otherwise directed by the MPSC or FERC.

11.3 Nothing herein shall be construed as creating any obligation on the part of CPCo to retire any project or not seek additional relicenses for any project.

12.0 Project Coordination

12.1 The coordination and implementation of this Settlement will be overseen by a two-level project coordination structure. These shall be known as the CPCo-Resource Agencies Steering Committee and the Manistee-Muskegon-AuSable Coordination Team.

12.2 CPCo and the resource agencies shall each designate a Project Leader (a total of 4) who will have overall responsibility for the coordination and implementation of the actions required by this Settlement and shall be collectively known as the CPCo-Resource Agencies Steering Committee (Steering Committee). The Steering Committee shall be responsible for the resolution of any disputes, in accordance with the procedures outlined in Section 14 of this Settlement, and shall also meet at least once annually to review the progress of overall implementation of this Settlement. The chair of the Steering Committee shall be the CPCo Project Leader. The Chair shall be responsible for setting the date, time and place of the annual meeting and such other meetings of the Steering Committee, as may be required, and shall notice the other Project Leaders at least 14 (fourteen) days in advance, provided, however, that the Chair shall set a meeting of the Steering Committee if requested, in writing, by any two of the Steering Committee members. The Chair shall also be responsible for all meeting arrangements, including the recording and dissemination of notes. A

quorum of the Steering Committee to conduct business shall be defined as any three of the four Project Leaders at a properly noticed meeting. If any party decides to change its designated Project Leader, the name, address, and telephone number of the successor shall be provided, in writing, to the other parties and the FERC seven (7) days prior to the date the change becomes effective or as soon after as practical. The date, time and location of the annual meeting of the Steering Committee to review the overall implementation of the Settlement shall also be noticed to the following individuals at least 14 (fourteen) days in advance: Director, FERC Division of Compliance and Administration (DCPA); Regional Director, NPS; and Chairman, Michigan Hydro Re-Licensing Coalition (MHC). These individuals, or their designee, may attend the annual meeting and participate in an ex-officio advisory capacity. These individuals shall each receive a copy of the notes from the annual meeting, regardless of whether they or their designee attended. Provision of notice and notes to the Chairman of the MHC is dependent on the MHC providing the Steering Committee with its Chairman's name and address in writing. The Steering Committee may, at its option, invite any individual or organizational representative to any of its meetings to serve in a similar advisory capacity.

12.3 A Manistee-Muskegon-AuSable Coordination (MMAC Team) shall be established to provide for the ongoing coordination and implementation of the actions required by this Settlement. The MMAC Team shall consist of one representative each from CPCo and the three resource agencies, who shall be appointed by the respective Project Leaders described in Paragraph 12.2 above. If any party decides to change its MMAC Team member, the name, address and telephone number of the successor shall be provided, in writing, to the other parties and the FERC Director, DCPA, seven (7) days prior to the date the change becomes effective or as soon after as practical. Communications between the parties and all documents, reports, submissions and correspondence concerning activities performed pursuant to the terms and conditions of this Settlement shall be directed through the MMAC Team members. The MMAC Team will meet as often as is necessary to provide for the swift and orderly implementation of the terms and conditions of this Settlement, providing, however, that the MMAC Team Chair shall set a meeting within 14 (fourteen) days of a request, in writing, by any two of the MMAC Team members. The Chair of the MMAC Team shall be the designated representative of CPCo. The Chair shall be responsible for setting the date, time and place for MMAC Team meetings and for providing other appropriate meeting arrangements. A quorum of the MMAC team necessary to conduct business shall be any three of the four members at a properly noticed meeting. The MMAC Team may, at its option, invite any individual or organizational representative to any of its meetings for advice and participation in an ex-officio advisory capacity. The MMAC Team may also form ad-hoc teams that include other employees, interested parties, contractors or consultants to pursue and/or monitor any actions required by or resulting from this Settlement. The MMAC shall also inform, on a periodic basis, all interested parties, including those defined in Paragraph 12.2 and such others as may be identified, regarding their progress and actions taken to implement this Settlement. This information may be provided in a written or meeting format. The frequency of these periodic reports will be determined at the annual Steering Committee meeting described in Paragraph 12.2 by the Project Leaders. Any disputes arising from the conduct of the MMAC Team mission

shall be referred to the Project Leaders for resolution in accordance with the provisions of Section 14 of this Settlement.

12.4 By December 1, of each year after the issuance of licenses pursuant to this Settlement, the MDNR will provide CPCo and the Director of the DCPA with a written statement of costs incurred by it in the previous fiscal year in overseeing the conduct of the activities required by this Settlement including, but not limited to, reviewing, developing, or commenting on submissions; overseeing and monitoring field activities; monitoring and documenting compliance with this Settlement; assessing the need for or planning resource enhancement measures; and participating on the MMAC Team established pursuant to Paragraph 12.2. Any such written cost statement of work performed on this Settlement will describe with reasonable specificity the nature of the costs incurred.

12.5 CPCo shall reimburse the MDNR for such costs up to an annual cap of $100,000, (adjusted for the CPI) within thirty (30) days of receipt of a written statement from the MDNR. All payments required pursuant to Paragraph 12.3 shall be by check made payable to the "State of Michigan" and forwarded to the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Environmental Protection Division for deposit in the State of Michigan Habitat Improvement Account.

13.0 <u>Resource Agencies Review, Consultation and Concurrence</u>

13.1 This section provides for communication procedures between the resource agencies and CPCo. Resource agencies reviews referred to in this section pertain to activities among the parties and would be, in many cases, preparatory to seeking FERC approvals. In all situations described herein, where the license requires FERC approval, CPCo shall use its best efforts to promptly seek and obtain authorizations from FERC before any changes to operations, facilities, project boundaries, or procedures are implemented.

13.2 All plans, studies, reports and submissions ("submissions") shall be delivered to the resource agencies for review in accordance with the schedules set forth in this Settlement.

13.3 Upon receipt of any "submission" or other item relating to the work that is required to be submitted for review pursuant to this Settlement, the resource agencies MMAC team members will, in writing within forty-five (45) days, signify:

(a) Concurrence with the "submission," or;

(b) Non-concurrence with the "submission", notifying CPCo of deficiencies. Upon receipt of a notice of concurrence and following FERC approval as necessary, CPCo shall proceed to take any action required by the "submission" or other item as concurred with or as modified. Approved "submissions" shall become enforceable under the terms of this Settlement and any new licenses issued.

13.4 Notice of non-concurrence arising from Paragraph 13.3 will specify the reason(s) for the non-concurrence. Unless a notice of non-concurrence specifies a longer time period, and upon receipt of a notice of non-concurrence from the resource agencies, CPCo shall within sixty (60) days thereafter; a) address the comments and submit the modified

plan, report, or other item to the resource agencies or to FERC for approval, if necessary, or b) refer the matter to dispute resolution pursuant to Section 14. CPCo shall proceed to take any action not directly related to the portion of the "submission" non-concurred with to the extent that any required FERC approval has been received.

13.5 Resource agencies concurrence means the "submission" is acceptable to meet the intent of the Settlement and does not mean that the resource agencies concur with all conclusions, methods, or statements in the "submissions".

14.0 <u>Disputes</u>

14.1 Any dispute that arises under this Settlement shall, in the first instance, be the subject of informal negotiations between CPCo and the resource agencies. The MMAC shall engage in a period of negotiations not to exceed seven (7) working days from the date of written notice by any team member that a dispute has arisen unless extended by agreement. If the MMAC is unable to resolve the dispute, CPCo shall, at the end of the period of negotiations, refer the matter to the Steering Committee for a period of negotiations not to exceed seven (7) working days from the date of the referral, unless extended by agreement. At the end of this negotiation period, the resource agencies shall provide to CPCo a written statement setting forth their proposed resolution of the dispute. Within seven (7) working days of receiving the resource agencies proposed resolution, CPCo shall indicate to the resource agencies in writing whether or not it accepts the proposed resolution. During this informal dispute resolution period, any

Steering Committee member may request the FERC Director of the Office of Hydropower Licensing (OHL) or the Director's designee, to participate in the negotiations to assist in resolving the dispute.

14.2 If CPCo rejects the resource agencies proposed resolution, any Steering Committee member may refer the dispute to FERC for expedited dispute resolution except as provided for in this Section. All disputes taken to FERC under this Section shall be governed by FERC's Rules of Practice and Procedures, 18 CFR Part 385. If CPCo rejects the proposed resolution of any dispute regarding water quality limits pursuant to Paragraphs 6.5 through 6.7, any Steering Committee member may refer the dispute to the WRC for expedited dispute resolution. All disputes taken to the WRC shall be governed by Michigan Administrative Code R 323.1025 or, if applicable, R323.1021.

15.0 Liquidated Damages

15.1 It is the intent of the parties to resolve all disputes either informally or through formal dispute resolution pursuant to Section 14 without the need for FERC resolution. However, the parties recognize that the environmental enhancements and protections provided in this Settlement may not be fully realized if CPCo's commitments are not carried out in a timely and appropriate manner. Except as provided by Paragraphs 6.9 and 15.2, for failure to comply with this Settlement or with the schedule developed under Paragraph 2.5, the resource agencies may assess CPCo liquidated damages in the following amounts for damages to the environmental resources.

Period	Damages Per Failure Per Day
1st through 30th day	$1,000
31st through 60th day	$2,000
Beyond 60 days	$4,000

The resource agencies may, individually or jointly, assess liquidated damages but not both. The resource agencies shall not assess liquidated damages for any given non-compliance under both this Settlement and the Water Quality Certificates. No more than one resource agency may assess individually for any given non-compliance. Liquidated damages may be waived by the resource agency or by unanimous agreement of the resource agencies that assessed them.

15.2 Liquidated damages shall begin to accrue on the day performance was due, or other failure to comply occurred, and shall continue to accrue until the final day of correction of noncompliance unless:

A. CPCo invokes the dispute resolution procedures within seven (7) working days of written demand for payment of liquidated damages from USFS, USF&WS or MDNR and CPCo accepts the resource agencies proposed resolution of the dispute pursuant to Paragraph 14.2, in which case no liquidated damages shall be owed, and/or;

B. More than ninety (90) days have lapsed between the day performance was due, or other failure to comply occurred, and the date of a written demand, in which case, damages shall begin to accrue ninety (90) days prior to the written demand.

Liquidated damages owed to the resource agencies shall be paid no later than thirty (30) days after receiving a written demand from USFS, USF&WS or MDNR, unless CPCo invokes the dispute resolution provisions of Section 14. If CPCo invokes the dispute resolution provisions and rejects the resource agencies proposed resolution, the payment of liquidated damages shall be stayed and need not be paid until the dispute is resolved or FERC affirms, in whole or in part, the resource agencies demand, whichever is earlier.

15.3 Payment of liquidated damages shall be made to a cooperative account to be established by the resource agencies. The funds in this account shall be expended to further the environmental enhancements encompassed by this Settlement. The resource agencies shall consult with CPCo regarding the expenditure of contributions made pursuant to this Section prior to authorizing an environmental enhancement activity. The resource agencies need not obtain FERC approval of expenditures, but will provide a report of expenditures to FERC and the parties by December 1 if there were any expenditures from these funds in the preceding fiscal year.

15.4 Nothing in this Settlement shall be construed to preclude the FERC from exercising its authority under Section 31 of the Federal Power Act.

16.0 <u>Soil Erosion Control</u>

16.1 CPCo shall develop stream and reservoir bank stabilization and soil erosion control plans for sections of the AuSable, Manistee and

Muskegon Rivers influenced by CPCo's hydroelectric projects. CPCo shall provide $1 million, up to $200,000 in any given year within the first ten years after the execution of this Settlement, in 1992 dollars (adjusted for the CPI) for erosion control work at sites identified by the plans.

16.2 The plans shall include an erosion site inventory, prioritization schedule for erosion control and potential control alternatives and their associated costs. The plans and associated erosion control project implementation schedule shall be developed in consultation with the resource agencies and when, within a project boundary, with approval by FERC.

16.3 CPCo and the resource agencies shall jointly select sites, from the erosion site inventory, for final design and construction. CPCo shall implement the control activity at each identified site. The resource agencies may provide financial assistance and/or participate in construction activities at selected sites.

16.4 CPCo, in cooperation with the resource agencies, shall:

A) Muskegon River - Identify streambank and reservoir soil erosion sites on the Muskegon River from the Rogers Hydroelectric Project downstream;

B) Manistee River - Utilize the erosion survey performed by the <u>Northwest Michigan Resource Conservation and Development Council</u> in

1986 and other data provided by the resource agencies for soil erosion site identification from Hodenpyl Hydroelectric Project downstream, and;

C) AuSable River - Utilize the Soil Erosion Survey for the AuSable River prepared by Huron Pines Resource Conservation and Development Council in 1991 and other data provided by the resource agencies for soil erosion site identification from the Mio Hydroelectric Project downstream.

17.0 Rogers Project Operations

17.1 The parties agree that run-of-river operation, as defined below, is the appropriate operational mode at the Rogers Project to enhance and protect the environment at this project by maximizing the Rogers reservoir and downstream river habitat. CPCo shall contract with USGS to install and maintain a flow gauge with telemetry upstream of the Rogers reservoir at Big Rapids. CPCo shall request that USGS complete flow gauge installation and commence operation within twenty-four (24) months of FERC license issuance. Upon installation and commencement of operation of the flow gauge, CPCo agrees to operate the Rogers Project on a run-of-river basis. Run-of-river means the Muskegon River flow through the Rogers project shall approximately equal the Muskegon River flow upstream at Big Rapids corrected for time of passage and water accretion.

17.2 "Approximately equal" means flow through the project, determined from turbine rating curves developed by CPCo in conjunction with USGS, is within ± 5% of the flow gauge reading. When the flow

gauge is ice affected, the flow through the project shall be within ± 20% of the flow gauge reading. A definition of "ice affected" will be developed during the 3-year operation period described in Paragraph 17.4. Frequency of turbine rating curve calibration will be determined by CPCo and the resource agencies based upon USGS recommendations.

17.3 Flow fluctuations that deviate from run-of-river for special requests by official governmental entities will not exceed a period of four (4) hours without resource agencies notification or one business day without concurrence. Flow fluctuations for maintenance or special requests by official governmental entities that result in zero flow require prior resource agencies notification.

17.4 CPCo shall provide a manual operation testing plan 90 days after FERC license issuance for resource agencies review in accordance with Section 13. For the first three years that the flow gauge is in operation, CPCo shall implement the operation testing plan to evaluate how closely the Rogers Project can match flow through using manual operations.

17.5 Within six months after the end of the three-year test period CPCo shall submit to the resource agencies a written report on the operational testing program. The report shall assess how closely the Rogers Project can match flow through and describe its effect on reservoir surface water level fluctuations using manual operations.

17.6 The resource agencies will evaluate the report to determine whether manual operation of the project can meet run-of-river flows. If the resource agencies determine that manual operation of the project can meet run-of-river flows, CPCo will continue manual operation of the Rogers Project. If the resource agencies determine that manual operation of the project cannot adequately meet run-of-river flows, CPCo will within six months of such a written determination, provide plans, specifications and schedules for installation and operation of automatic operation controls to meet the run-of-river flows for resource agencies review according to the procedures specified in Section 13. Within 90 days of the necessary FERC approvals, CPCo shall commence with the design and procurement for the installation of automatic operation controls to meet run-of-river flows.

18.0 Rogers Project Reservoir Surface Water Elevation

18.1 During normal operations, CPCo will maintain the reservoir surface water elevation at a nominal operating elevation of 861.3 ft USGS datum. Compliance with run-of-river operation will be based on river flow in accordance with Paragraph 17.1.

18.2 During periods of maintenance, the reservoir may be drawn down below the nominal operating elevation of 861.3 ft USGS datum. The rates of drawdown and refill shall not exceed one (1) ft per twenty-four (24) hour period. For maintenance requiring a drawdown of greater than two (2) ft, CPCo will obtain any necessary MDNR permit(s). Copies of the permit application(s) shall be supplied to the resource agencies at the time of application.

19.0 Hardy Project Operation

19.1 The parties agree that the project operation, as defined below, is the appropriate operational mode at the Hardy Project to enhance and protect the environment at this project by: minimizing project river regulation impacts on Hardy reservoir habitat; minimizing impacts on reservoir habitat from peaking operation; and maximizing downstream river habitat by the appropriate use of storage. CPCo shall maintain Hardy Reservoir at 822.0 ft USGS datum with ± 0.5 ft fluctuation on a daily basis except during periods of reservoir drawdown, reservoir refill, emergency conditions and maintenance. During reservoir drawdown, the change in water surface elevation shall not exceed 1.0 ft in any 24-hour period. Headwater elevations shall be recorded every thirty minutes. CPCo shall provide to the resource agencies, a report summarizing all events during the quarter in which the elevation fluctuations exceeded ± 0.5 ft during normal operation or ± 1 ft in any 24-hour period during reservoir drawdown. CPCo will modify the Hardy Project operation in consultation with the resource agencies, and upon FERC approval based on the Croton re-regulation analysis to be performed for the downstream Croton hydroelectric project as provided for in Section 20.

19.2 Winter reservoir drawdown will occur from early January to approximately the end of April. The maximum permissible drawdown without prior resource agencies concurrence is twelve (12) ft below 822.5 ft USGS datum ± 0.5 ft.

19.3 CPCo shall develop target drawdown and refill rates and operating procedures for the drawdown and refill periods at the Hardy Project as part of the Croton re-regulation study required by Section 20. These target rates and procedures will be utilized by CPCo to establish drawdown and refill durations.

19.4 During periods of maintenance, the reservoir may be drawn down below the nominal operating elevation of 822 ft USGS datum. The normal rates of drawdown and refill shall not exceed one (1) ft per twenty-four (24) hour period. For maintenance requiring a drawdown of greater than two (2) ft, CPCo will obtain any necessary MDNR permit(s). Copies of the permit application(s) shall be supplied to the resource agencies at the time of application.

20.0 Croton Project Operation

20.1 The parties agree that the re-regulated operation, as defined below, is the appropriate operational mode at the Croton Project to enhance and protect the environment at this project by maximizing downstream river habitat and minimizing project impacts on the Croton reservoir habitat. CPCo shall operate the Croton Project to re-regulate the operation of the Hardy Project, but under no circumstance shall this result in a loss of the Hardy project as a peaking facility. When Hardy is at full pool, 822.0 ft USGS datum ± 0.5 ft or when Hardy is at minimum pool, 810.5 ft USGS datum ± 0.5 ft, the flows from the Croton Project shall approximately equal the inflows to the Rogers Project plus the inflow from the Little Muskegon River corrected for time of passage and water accretion. During Hardy reservoir drawdown or refill periods,

the Croton Project shall release the projected mean daily discharge from Hardy Reservoir plus the inflow from the Little Muskegon River.

20.2 During normal operations, CPCo will maintain the Croton Project reservoir surface water elevation at a nominal operating elevation of 722.0 ft USGS datum. The Croton Project reservoir operating range will be determined by the Croton Project reservoir re-regulation study as described in Paragraphs 20.3 and 20.4.

20.3 CPCo shall develop a Croton re-regulation plan to meet the standards outlined in Paragraphs 20.1 and 20.2.

20.4 The Croton re-regulation plan shall be developed according to the schedule provided in Paragraph 2.5. The plan shall be submitted to the resource agencies for review. Upon approval by the FERC, CPCo shall implement the Croton re-regulation plan. This plan shall include interim operation guidelines to be adhered to during the study period. The report shall identify the optimum operating procedures for the Croton Project to meet the operating standards outlined in Paragraphs 20.1 and 20.2 and indicate whether these standards can be met with manual operation of the project or whether automated controls are required. The report shall describe fluctuations in Croton Project reservoir surface elevation due to re-regulation operations.

20.5 The resource agencies will evaluate the report to determine whether manual operation of the project can meet the operations standards of Paragraphs 20.1 and 20.2 and indicate whether these standards can be met. If the resource agencies determine that manual operation of the project can meet operations standards, CPCo may continue manual operation of the Croton project. If the resource agencies determine that manual operation of the project cannot adequately meet operations standards, CPCo will, within six months of such a written determination, provide plans, specifications and schedules for installation and operation of automatic operation controls to meet operations standards for resource agencies review according to the procedures specified in Section 13. Within 90 days of the necessary FERC approvals, CPCo shall commence with the design and procurement for the installation of automatic operation controls to meet operations standards.

20.6 CPCo shall contract with USGS to install and maintain the necessary flow gauging with telemetry upstream of the Croton Project reservoir on the Little Muskegon River and immediately downstream of Croton Dam. CPCo shall request that USGS complete flow gauge installation and commence operation within twenty-four (24) months of FERC license issuance.

20.7 During periods of maintenance, the Croton Project reservoir may be drawn down below the nominal operating elevation of 722.0 ft USGS datum. The rates of draw down and refill shall not exceed one (1) ft per twenty-four (24) hour period. For maintenance requiring a draw down of greater than two (2) ft, CPCo will obtain any necessary MDNR permit(s). Copies of the permit application(s) shall be supplied to the resource agencies at the time of application.

21.0 <u>Mio Project Operations</u>

21.1 The parties agree that run-of-river operation, as defined below, is the appropriate operational mode at the Mio Project to enhance and protect the environment at this project by maximizing the Mio reservoir and downstream river habitat. CPCo shall contract with USGS to install and maintain a flow gauge with telemetry upstream of the Mio reservoir below Big Creek and a flow gauge with telemetry immediately downstream of Mio. CPCo shall request that USGS complete flow gauge installation and commence operation within twenty-four (24) months of FERC license issuance. Upon installation and commencement of operation of the flow gauges, CPCo agrees to operate the Mio Project on a run-of-river basis. Run-of-river means the Au Sable River flow through the Mio project shall approximately equal the Au Sable River flow upstream below Big Creek corrected for time of passage and water accretion.

21.2 "Approximately equal" means flow gauge readings below the project are within ± 5% of the upstream flow gauge readings. When the gauges are ice affected, the flow gauge reading below the project shall be within ± 20% of the upstream flow gauge reading. A definition of "ice affected" gauges will be developed during the three (3) year operation test period in accordance with Paragraph 21.4.

21.3 Flow fluctuations that deviate from run-of-river for special requests by official governmental entities will not exceed a period of four (4) hours without resource agencies notification or one business day without resource agencies concurrence. Flow fluctuations for maintenance or special requests by official governmental entities that result in zero flow require prior resource agencies notification.

21.4 CPCo shall provide a manual operation testing plan 90 days after FERC license issuance for resource agencies review in accordance with Section 13. For the first three years that the flow gauges are in operation, CPCo shall implement the operation testing plan to evaluate how closely the Mio Project can match outflow to inflow using manual operations.

21.5 Within six months after the end of the three-year test period CPCo shall submit to the resource agencies a written report on the operational testing program. The report shall assess how closely the Mio Project can match outflow to inflow and describe its effect on reservoir surface water level fluctuations using manual operations.

21.6 The resource agencies will evaluate the report to determine whether manual operation of the project can meet run-of-river flows. If the resource agencies determine that manual operation of the project can meet run-of-river flows, CPCo will continue manual operation of the Mio project. If the resource agencies determine that manual operation of the project cannot adequately meet run-of-river flows, CPCo will within six months of such a written determination, provide plans, specifications and schedules for installation and operation of automatic operation controls to meet the run-of-river flows for resource agencies review according to the procedures specified in Section 13. Within 90 days of the necessary FERC approvals, CPCo shall commence with the

design and procurement for the installation of automatic operation controls to meet run-of-river flows.

22.0 Mio Project Reservoir Surface Water Elevation

22.1 During normal operations, CPCo will maintain the reservoir surface water elevation at a nominal operating elevation of 962.6 ft USGS datum. Compliance with run-of-river operation will be based on river flow in accordance with Paragraph 21.1.

22.2 During periods of maintenance, the reservoir may be drawn down below the nominal operating elevation of 962.6 ft USGS datum. The rates of draw down and refill shall not exceed one (1) ft per twenty-four (24) hour period. For maintenance requiring a draw down of greater than two (2) ft, CPCo will obtain any necessary MDNR permit(s). Copies of the permit application(s) shall be supplied to the resource agencies at the time of application.

23.0 Alcona Project Operations

23.1 The parties agree that run-of-river operation, as defined below, is the appropriate operational mode at the Alcona Project to enhance and protect the environment at this project by maximizing the Alcona reservoir and downstream river habitat. CPCo shall contract with USGS to install and maintain a flow gauge with telemetry upstream of the Alcona reservoir at 4001 Bridge and a flow gauge with telemetry immediately downstream of Alcona at Bamfield Dam road. CPCo shall request that USGS complete flow gauge installation and commence operation within twenty-four (24) months of FERC license issuance. Upon installation and commencement of operation of the flow gauges, CPCo agrees to operate the Alcona Project on a run-of-river basis. Run-of-river means the Au Sable River flow through the Alcona project shall approximately equal the Au Sable River flow upstream at 4001 Bridge corrected for time of passage and water accretion.

23.2 "Approximately equal" means flow gauge readings below the project are within ± 5% of the upstream flow gauge readings. When the gauges are ice affected, the flow gauge reading below the project shall be within ± 20% of the upstream flow gauge reading. A definition of "ice affected" gauges will be developed during the three (3) year operation test period in accordance with Paragraph 23.4.

23.3 Flow fluctuations that deviate from run-of-river for special requests by official governmental entities will not exceed a period of four (4) hours without resource agencies notification or one business day without resource agencies concurrence. Flow fluctuations for maintenance or special requests by official governmental entities that result in zero flow require prior resource agencies notification.

23.4 CPCo shall provide a manual operation testing plan 90 days after FERC license issuance for resource agencies review in accordance with Section 13. For the first three years that the flow gauges are in operation, CPCo shall implement the operation testing plan to evaluate how closely the Alcona Project can match outflow to inflow using manual operations.

23.5 Within six months after the end of the three-year test period CPCo shall submit to the resource agencies a written report on the operational testing program. The report shall assess how closely the Alcona Project can match outflow to inflow and describe its effect on reservoir surface water level fluctuations using manual operations.

23.6 The resource agencies will evaluate the report to determine whether manual operation of the project can meet run-of-river flows. If the resource agencies determine that manual operation of the project can meet run-of-river flows, CPCo will continue manual operation of the Alcona project. If the resource agencies determine that manual operation of the project cannot adequately meet run-of-river flows, CPCo will within six months of such a written determination, provide plans, specifications and schedules for installation and operation of automatic operation controls to meet the run-of-river flows for resource agencies review according the procedures specified in Section 13. Within 90 days of the necessary FERC approvals, CPCo shall commence with the design and procurement for the installation of automatic operation controls to meet run-of-river flows.

24.0 <u>Alcona Project Reservoir Surface Water Elevation</u>

24.1 During normal operations, CPCo will maintain the reservoir surface water elevation at a nominal operating elevation of 829 ft USGS datum. Compliance with run of river operation will be based on river flow in accordance with Paragraph 23.1.

24.2 During periods of maintenance, the reservoir may be drawn down below the nominal operating elevation of 829 ft USGS datum. The rates of draw down and refill shall not exceed one (1) ft per twenty-four (24) hour period. For maintenance requiring a draw down of greater than two (2) ft, CPCo will obtain any necessary MDNR permit(s). Copies of the permit application(s) shall be supplied to the resource agencies at the time of application.

25.0 <u>Loud Project Operation</u>

25.1 The parties agree that the project operation, as defined below, is the appropriate operational mode at the Loud Project to enhance and protect the environment at this project by minimizing peaking impacts on Loud reservoir habitat. CPCo shall maintain Loud Reservoir at 741.8 ft USGS datum with ± 0.8 ft fluctuation on a daily basis except during periods of reservoir drawdown, reservoir refill, emergency conditions and maintenance. Headwater elevations shall be recorded every thirty minutes. CPCo shall provide to the resource agencies, a report summarizing all events during the quarter in which the elevation fluctuations exceeded ± 0.8 ft during normal operation. CPCo will modify the Loud Project operation after review by the resource agencies and with FERC approval based on the Foote re-regulation analysis to be performed for the downstream Foote hydroelectric project as provided for in Section 31.

26.0 <u>Loud Project Reservoir Surface Water Elevation</u>

26.1 During periods of maintenance, the reservoir may be drawn down below the nominal operating elevation of 741.8 ft USGS datum. The rates of draw down and refill shall not exceed two (2) ft in a twenty-four (24) hour period.

26.2 For maintenance requiring a draw down of greater than two (2) ft, CPCo will obtain any necessary MDNR permit(s). Copies of the permit application(s) shall be supplied to the resource agencies at the time of application.

27.0 <u>Five Channels Project Operation</u>

27.1 The parties agree that the project operation, as defined below, is the appropriate operational mode at the Five Channels Project to enhance and protect the environment at this project by minimizing peaking impacts on Five Channels reservoir habitat. CPCo shall maintain Five Channels Reservoir at 714.7 ft USGS datum with ± 0.3 ft fluctuation on a daily basis except during periods of reservoir drawdown, reservoir refill, emergency conditions and maintenance. Headwater elevations shall be recorded every thirty (30) minutes. CPCo shall provide to the resource agencies, a report summarizing all events during the quarter in which the elevation fluctuations exceeded ± 0.3 ft during normal operation. CPCo will modify the Five Channels Project operation after review by the resource agencies and with FERC approval based on the Foote re-regulation analysis to be performed for the downstream Foote hydroelectric project as provided for in Section 31.

28.0 Five Channels Project Reservoir Surface Water Elevation

28.1 During periods of maintenance, the reservoir may be drawn down below the nominal operating elevation of 714.7 ft USGS datum. The rates of draw down and refill shall not exceed two (2) ft in a twenty-four (24) hour period.

28.2 For FERC required annual maintenance or inspections requiring a reservoir drawdown of up to four (4) ft, MDNR permit(s) are not required. CPCo shall provide prior notification to the resource agencies of such annual maintenance or inspection(s).

28.3 For other maintenance requiring a draw down of greater than two (2) ft, CPCo will obtain any necessary MDNR permit(s). Copies of the permit application(s) shall be supplied to the resource agencies at the time of application.

29.0 Cooke Project Operation

29.1 The parties agree that the project operation, as defined below, is the appropriate operational mode at the Cooke Project to enhance and protect the environment at this project by minimizing peaking impacts on Cooke reservoir habitat. CPCo shall maintain Cooke Reservoir at 678.5 ft USGS datum with ± 0.5 ft fluctuation on a daily basis except during periods of reservoir drawdown, reservoir refill, emergency conditions and maintenance. Headwater elevations shall be recorded every thirty minutes. CPCo shall provide to the resource agencies, a report summarizing all events during the quarter in which

the elevation fluctuations exceeded ± 0.5 ft during normal operation. CPCo will modify the Cooke Project operation after review of the resource agencies and with FERC approval, based on the Foote re-regulation analysis to be performed for the downstream Foote hydroelectric project as provided for in Section 31.

30.0 Cooke Project Reservoir Surface Water Elevation

30.1 During periods of maintenance, the reservoir may be drawn down below the nominal operating elevation of 678.5 ft USGS datum. The rates of draw down and refill shall not exceed two (2) ft in a twenty-four (24) hour period.

30.2 For FERC required annual maintenance or inspections requiring a reservoir drawdown of up to four (4) ft, MDNR permit(s) are not required. CPCo shall provide prior notification to the resource agencies of such annual maintenance or inspection(s).

30.3 For other maintenance requiring a drawdown of greater than two (2) ft, CPCo will obtain any necessary MDNR permit(s). Copies of the permit application(s) shall be supplied to the resource agencies at the time of application.

31.0 Foote Project Operation

31.1 The parties agree that the re-regulated operation, as defined below, is the appropriate operational mode at the Foote Project to enhance and protect the environment at this project by maximizing downstream river habitat and minimizing project impacts on the Foote reservoir habitat. CPCo shall operate the Foote Project to re-regulate the operation of the Cooke Project, but under no circumstance shall this result in a loss at Loud, Five Channels and Cooke projects as peaking facilities. The flows from the Foote Project shall approximately equal the inflows to the Loud Project corrected for time of passage and water accretion.

31.2 During normal operations, CPCo will maintain the reservoir surface water elevation at a nominal operating elevation of 639.2 ft USGS datum. The Foote Pond operating range will be determined by the Foote Pond re-regulation study as described in Paragraphs 31.3 and 31.4.

31.3 CPCo shall develop a Foote re-regulation plan to meet the standards outlined in Paragraphs 31.1 and 31.2.

31.4 The Foote re-regulation plan shall be developed according to the schedule provided in Paragraph 2.5. The plan shall be submitted to the resource agencies for review. Upon approval by the FERC, CPCo shall implement the Foote re-regulation plan. This plan shall include interim operation guidelines to be adhered to during the study period. The report shall identify the optimum operating procedures for the Foote Project to meet the operating standards outlined in Paragraphs 31.1 and 31.2 and indicate whether these standards can be met with manual operation of the project or whether automated controls are required. The report shall describe fluctuations in Foote Pond surface elevation due to re-regulation operations.

31.5 The resource agencies will evaluate the report to determine whether manual operation of the project can meet the operations standards of Paragraphs 31.1 and 31.2. If the resource agencies determine that manual operation of the project can meet operations standards, CPCo may continue manual operation of the Foote project. If the resource agencies determine that manual operation of the project cannot adequately meet the operations standards, CPCo will, within six months of such a written determination, provide plans, specifications and schedules for installation and operation of automatic operation controls to meet operations standards for resource agencies review according to procedures specified in Section 13. Within 90 days of the necessary FERC approvals, CPCo shall commence with the design and procurement for the installation of automatic operation controls to meet operations standards.

31.6 CPCo shall contract with USGS to install and maintain the necessary flow gauging with telemetry upstream of the Loud Project reservoir below the South Branch River and immediately downstream of Foote Dam. CPCo shall request that USGS complete flow gauge installation and commence operation within twenty-four (24) months of FERC license issuance.

32.0 Foote Project Reservoir Surface Water Elevation

32.1 During periods of maintenance, the reservoir may be drawn down below the nominal operating elevation of 639.2 ft USGS datum. The rates of draw down and refill shall not exceed two (2) ft in a twenty-four (24) hour period.

32.2 For FERC required annual maintenance or inspections requiring a reservoir drawdown of up to five (5) ft, MDNR permit(s) are not required. CPCo shall provide prior notification to the resource agencies of such annual maintenance or inspection(s).

32.3 For other maintenance requiring a draw down of greater than 5 ft, CPCo will obtain any necessary MDNR permit(s). Copies of the permit application(s) shall be supplied to the resource agencies at the time of application.

33.0 <u>Hodenpyl Project Operations</u>

33.1 The parties agree that run-of-river operation, as defined below, is the appropriate operational mode at the Hodenpyl Project to enhance and protect the environment at this project by maximizing the Hodenpyl reservoir and downstream river habitat. CPCo shall contract with USGS to install and maintain a flow gauge with telemetry upstream of the Hodenpyl reservoir at Sherman and a flow gauge with telemetry immediately downstream of Hodenpyl. CPCo shall request that USGS complete flow gauge installation and commence operation within twenty-four (24) months of FERC license issuance. Upon installation and commencement of operation of the flow gauges, CPCo agrees to operate the Hodenpyl Project on a run-of-river basis. Run-of-river means the Manistee River flow through the Hodenpyl project shall approximately equal the Manistee River flow upstream at Sherman corrected for time of passage and water accretion.

33.2 "Approximately equal" means flow gauge readings below the project are within ± 5% of the upstream flow gauge readings. When the gauges are ice affected, the flow gauge reading below the project shall be within ± 20% of the upstream flow gauge reading. A definition of "ice affected" gauges will be developed during the three (3) year operation test period in accordance with Paragraph 33.4.

33.3 Flow fluctuations that deviate from run-of-river for special requests by official governmental entities will not exceed a period of four (4) hours without resource agencies notification or one business day without resource agencies concurrence. Flow fluctuations for maintenance or special requests by official governmental entities that result in zero flow require prior resource agencies notification.

33.4 CPCo shall provide a manual operation testing plan 90 days after FERC license issuance for resource agencies review in accordance with Section 13. For the first three years that the flow gauges are in operation, CPCo shall implement the operation testing plan to evaluate how closely the Hodenpyl Project can match outflow to inflow using manual operations.

33.5 Within six months after the end of the three-year test period CPCo shall submit to the resource agencies a written report on the operational testing program. The report shall assess how closely the Hodenpyl Project can match outflow to inflow and describe its effect on reservoir surface water level fluctuations using manual operations.

33.6 The resource agencies will evaluate the report to determine whether manual operation of the project can meet run-of-river flows. If the resource agencies determine that manual operation of the project can meet run-of-river flows, CPCo will continue manual operation of the Hodenpyl project. If the resource agencies determine that manual operation of the project cannot adequately meet run-of-river flows, CPCo will within six months of such a written determination, provide plans, specifications and schedules for installation and operation of automatic operation controls to meet the run-of-river flows for resource agencies review according to the procedures specified in Section 13. Within 90 days of the necessary FERC approvals, CPCo shall commence with the design and procurement for the installation of automatic operation controls to meet run-of-river flows.

34.0 Hodenpyl Project Reservoir Surface Water Elevation

34.1 During normal operations, CPCo will maintain the reservoir surface water elevation at a nominal operating elevation of 809.0 ft USGS datum. Compliance with run of river operation will be based on river flow in accordance with Paragraph 33.1.

34.2 During periods of maintenance, the reservoir may be drawn down below the nominal operating elevation of 809.0 ft USGS datum. The rates of draw down and refill shall not exceed one (1) ft per twenty-four (24) hour period. For maintenance requiring a draw down of greater than two (2) ft, CPCo will obtain any necessary MDNR permit(s). Copies of the permit application(s) shall be supplied to the resource agencies at the time of application.

35.0 Tippy Project Operations

35.1 The parties agree that run-of-river operation, as defined below, is the appropriate operational mode at the Tippy Project to enhance and protect the environment at this project by maximizing the Tippy reservoir and downstream river habitat. CPCo shall contract with USGS to install and maintain a flow gauge with telemetry upstream of the Tippy reservoir on the Pine River at High School Bridge and a flow gauge with telemetry downstream of Tippy. CPCo shall request that USGS complete flow gauge installation and commence operation within twenty-four (24) months of FERC license issuance. Upon installation and commencement of operation of the flow gauges, CPCo agrees to operate the Tippy Project on a run-of-river basis. Run-of-river means the Manistee River flow through the Tippy project shall approximately equal the Manistee River flow upstream at Hodenpyl plus the inflow from the Pine River corrected for time of passage and water accretion.

35.2 "Approximately equal" means flow gauge readings below the project are within ± 5% of the upstream flow gauge readings. When the gauges are "ice affected", the flow gauge reading below the project shall be within ± 20% of the upstream flow gauge reading. A definition of "ice affected" gauges will be developed during the three (3) year operation test period in accordance with Paragraph 35.4.

35.3 Flow fluctuations that deviate from run-of-river for special requests by official governmental entities will not exceed a period of four (4) hours without resource agencies notification or one business day without resource agencies concurrence. Flow fluctuations for maintenance or special requests by official governmental entities that result in zero flow require prior resource agencies notification.

35.4 CPCo shall provide a manual operation testing plan 90 days after FERC license issuance for resource agencies review in accordance with Section 13. For the first three years that the flow gauges are in operation, CPCo shall implement the operation testing plan to evaluate how closely the Tippy Project can match outflow to inflow using manual operations.

35.5 Within six months after the end of the three-year test period CPCo shall submit to the resource agencies a written report on the operational testing program. The report shall assess how closely the Tippy Project can match outflow to inflow and describe its effect on reservoir surface water level fluctuations using manual operations.

35.6 The resource agencies will evaluate the report to determine whether manual operation of the project can meet run-of-river flows. If the resource agencies determine that manual operation of the project can meet run-of-river flows, CPCo will continue manual operation of the Tippy project. If the resource agencies determine that manual operation of the project cannot adequately meet run-of-river flows, CPCo will within six months of such a written determination, provide plans, specifications and schedules for installation and operation of automatic operation controls to meet the run-of-river flows for resource agencies review according to the procedures specified in Section 13. Within 90 days of the necessary FERC approvals, CPCo shall commence with the

design and procurement for the installation of automatic operation controls to meet run-of-river flows.

36.0 <u>Tippy Project Reservoir Surface Water Elevation</u>

36.1 During normal operations, CPCo will maintain the reservoir surface water elevation at a nominal operating elevation of 687.4 ft USGS datum. Compliance with run of river operation will be based on river flow in accordance with Paragraph 35.1.

36.2 During periods of maintenance, the reservoir may be drawn down below the nominal operating elevation of 687.4 ft USGS datum. The rates of drawdown and refill shall not exceed one (1) ft per twenty-four (24) hour period. For maintenance requiring a drawdown of greater than two (2) ft, CPCo will obtain any necessary MDNR permit(s). Copies of the permit application(s) shall be supplied to the resource agencies at the time of application.

37.0 <u>Stronach Dam Management</u>

37.1 With respect to the Stronach Dam located on the Pine River and included in the Tippy Project License; the parties collectively agree that significant potential ecological, recreational, scenic, aesthetic and cultural benefits would be realized if the Stronach Dam was removed, including: 1) restoring approximately two miles of free flowing high gradient river habitat which is a rare habitat type in Michigan; 2) providing enhanced recreational canoeing and fishing opportunities; 3) contributing to the mitigation of habitat effects at the other peaking hydroelectric projects specified in this Settlement; and 4) will maintain the character of that portion of the Pine River designated as a National Scenic River whose boundary is just upstream of the Stronach impoundment. The parties also recognize that ongoing studies, which are scheduled for completion in December 1992, are being conducted to determine the environmental effects of breaching or removing the Dam to restore the natural Pine River channel. However, it is the desire of the parties not to delay the execution of this Settlement awaiting the results of the Stronach Dam studies.

37.2 Following the completion of the ongoing Stronach Dam studies, CPCo will, in consultation with the resource agencies, submit to the FERC by February 15, 1993, a preferred method for removal of the Stronach Dam. If the subsequent FERC environmental analysis results in a finding that net public benefits would be achieved by the proposed removal, CPCo agrees to remove the Stronach Dam and restore the Pine River channel subject to resource agencies review and FERC approval of the final removal plans. CPCo shall fund up to $750,000 in 1992 dollars (as adjusted to the CPI) for the removal and restoration. If less than $750,000 is spent on removal and restoration, the remainder can be utilized by agreement of the resource agencies for other purposes covered by this Settlement. The final removal plans shall include the removal/breaching methods, bank stabilization, site restoration, provisions for recreational user safety and the time table for the removal process. The final removal plan shall be submitted to the FERC for approval within 12 months of license issuance. Upon FERC approval, CPCo shall implement the Stronach Dam removal plan.

Respectfully submitted by:

FOR CONSUMERS POWER COMPANY

11-23-92
Robert J Nicholson Date
Vice President, Fossil and Hydro
Electric Operations
Consumers Power Company

FOR THE US DEPARTMENT OF
AGRICULTURE-FOREST SERVICE

for 11/23/92
Floyd J Marita, Jr Date
Regional Forester
US Department of Agriculture-
Forest Service

FOR THE US DEPARTMENT OF
INTERIOR-FISH AND WILDLIFE
SERVICE

for 11/23/92
Samuel Marler Date
Regional Director
US Department of Interior-
Fish and Wildlife Service

FOR THE US DEPARTMENT OF
INTERIOR-NATIONAL PARK SERVICE

for 11/23/92
Don H Castleberry Date
Regional Director
US Department of Interior-
National Park Service

FOR THE MICHIGAN DEPARTMENT OF
NATURAL RESOURCES and THE STATE
HISTORIC PRESERVATION OFFICER

11-23-92
Frank J Kelley Date
Attorney General
State of Michigan

FOR THE MICHIGAN DEPARTMENT OF
NATURAL RESOURCES

11/23/92
Roland Harmes Date
Director, Michigan Department of
Natural Resources

FOR THE STATE HISTORIC
PRESERVATION OFFICER

11/23/92
Kathryn B Eckert Date
State Historic Preservation
Officer

APPENDIX A
LIST OF CANDIDATE RECREATIONAL FACILITIES/ENHANCEMENTS

The following is a candidate list of new recreational facilities and proposed improvements to existing recreational facilities. The final list of recreational facility improvements or additions will be developed in the recreation section of the Land Management Plans based on: compatibility with other aspects of the Land Management Plans listed in Paragraph 4.2; consultation with the resource agencies, NPS, the local public; and the ongoing CPCo recreation use study being conducted in response to the FERC additional information requests dated May 21,1992. This listing identifies the site manager responsible for site operation and maintenance whether the site is existing or proposed and the tentative capital construction priority of each site.

	SITE MANAGER	STATUS	CONSTRUCTION PRIORITY
I. FACILITIES/ENHANCEMENTS MANISTEE RIVER			
A. Hodenpyl Hydroelectric Project			
1. Impoundment Boat Launch and Barrier-Free Fishing Pier Install parking lot, vault toilet, harden ramp and path, skid pier, signs and barrier-free fishing pier.	CPCo	PROPOSED	MEDIUM
2. Tailwater Access-North Side & Woodpecker Creek Upgrade canoe platform and stairway; Install canoe chute, rollers, signs, vault toilet and parking lot.	CPCo	EXISTING	HIGH
3. Tailwater Access-South Side Upgrade parking lot; Install chip trail, timber platform, signs, and vault toilet.	CPCo	EXISTING	HIGH
4. North Country Trail Foot Bridge Install suspended foot bridge over Manistee River (50% cost share with USFS).	USFS	PROPOSED	HIGH

APPENDIX A
LIST OF CANDIDATE RECREATIONAL FACILITIES/ENHANCEMENTS

	SITE MANAGER	STATUS	CONSTRUCTION PRIORITY
5. USFS Seaton Creek Campground Provide 50% share of maintenance cost.	USFS	EXISTING	NO CONSTRUCTION
B. Tippy Hydroelectric Project			
1. Red Bridge Public Access Upgrade parking lot; Install vault toilet, skid pier, and water well with hand pump.	USFS	EXISTING	MEDIUM
2. Norman Township Public Access Upgrade parking lot and road; Install vault toilet, picnic tables, and skid pier.	Norman Township	EXISTING	LOW
3. Tippy Dam Campground Upgrade toilets.	MDNR	EXISTING	MEDIUM
4. Impoundment Boat Launch & Barrier-Free Pier Upgrade access road, parking lot and boat ramp; Install vault toilets, signs, barrier-free fishing pier and skid pier.	MDNR	EXISTING	HIGH
5. Tailwater Access-North Side Upgrade access path; Install barrier-free fishing platforms with railings and covered platform.	MDNR	EXISTING	HIGH
6. Tailwater Access-South Side Install log stairs, boardwalk and vault toilet.	CPCo	EXISTING	HIGH

APPENDIX A
LIST OF CANDIDATE RECREATIONAL
FACILITIES/ENHANCEMENTS

	SITE MANAGER	STATUS	CONSTRUCTION PRIORITY
7. Red Bridge Scenic Overlook Upgrade parking; Install cantilever deck and signs.	USFS	EXISTING	LOW
8. Primitive Camping-Tippy Pond Provide permit system operation funds.	USFS	EXISTING	NO CONSTRUCTION
9. Low Bridge Canoe Pull-Out Provide 50% share of maintenance costs.	USFS	EXISTING	NO CONSTRUCTION
10. Stronach Dam Canoe Portage Upgrade canoe put-in, take-out and stairway.	CPCo	EXISTING	HIGH

TOTAL ESTIMATED CAPITAL EXPENDITURE FOR THE MANISTEE RIVER - $440,000

II. FACILITIES/ENHANCEMENTS
AU SABLE RIVER

A. Mio Hydroelectric Project

	SITE MANAGER	STATUS	CONSTRUCTION PRIORITY
1. Camp Ten Public Access Provide maintenance costs.	MDNR	EXISTING	NO CONSTRUCTION
2. Camp Ten Fishing Pier-North Upgrade parking lot; Install vault toilet.	CPCO	EXISTING	HIGH
3. Camp Ten Fishing Pier-South Provide maintenance costs.	USFS	EXISTING	NO CONSTRUCTION
4. MDNR Campground (Rustic) Upgrade picnic tables and landscape; Install vault toilet, fire rings and skid pier.	MDNR	EXISTING	HIGH

	SITE MANAGER	STATUS	CONSTRUCTION PRIORITY
5. MDNR Fishing Pier/Boat Launch Upgrade existing toilets, canoe landing and pier; Upgrade parking lot; Install skid pier, roof on barrier-free fishing pier and signs.	MDNR	EXISTING	HIGH
6. Canoe Portage Upgrade stairs with canoe slide; Install wood fence/rail and canoe put-in (rock crib).	CPCo	EXISTING	MEDIUM
7. Tailwater Access-South Upgrade driveway, parking lot and canoe put-in (rock crib); Install hardened path, signs, railings, vault toilet and barrier-free boardwalk.	CPCo	EXISTING	HIGH
8. Tailwater Access-North Install parking lot, vault toilet and signs.	CPCo	EXISTING	MEDIUM

B. Alcona Hydroelectric Project

	SITE MANAGER	STATUS	CONSTRUCTION PRIORITY
1. 4001 Canoe Take-Out Provide 50% share of maintenance costs.	USFS	EXISTING	NO CONSTRUCTION
2. Alcona County Park (West) Boat Launch Upgrade parking lot; Install vault toilet, skid pier, hardened path, boat ramp, and signs.	Alcona County Parks Commission	EXISTING	LOW

APPENDIX A
LIST OF CANDIDATE RECREATIONAL FACILITIES/ENHANCEMENTS

	SITE MANAGER	STATUS	CONSTRUCTION PRIORITY
3. Alcona County Park (East) Boat Launch Upgrade parking lot; Install skid pier, signs, hardened path and vault toilet.	Alcona County Parks Commission	EXISTING	LOW
4. Canoe Portage Upgrade canoe take-out steps; Install gravel trail.	CPCo	EXISTING	MEDIUM
5. Tailwater Access (West) Upgrade access road and parking; Install hardened path, vault toilet and signs for barrier-free fishing area.	CPCo	EXISTING	HIGH
6. Tailwater Access (East) Install canoe launch (rollers), parking lot and road; Install hand rail, vault toilet and signs for barrier-free fishing area.	CPCo	EXISTING	HIGH
7. Bamfield Road Canoe Access Close existing canoe access site.	USFS	EXISTING	HIGH
C. Loud Hydroelectric Project			
1. Hopps Creek Canoe Take-Out Upgrade roadway, parking; Install gravel path, signs, canoe landing, and vault toilet.	USFS	EXISTING	MEDIUM
2. Impoundment Boat Launch Upgrade access road and parking lot; Install hardened boat ramp, vault toilet, skid pier and signs.	CPCo	EXISTING	HIGH

APPENDIX A
LIST OF CANDIDATE RECREATIONAL FACILITIES/ENHANCEMENTS

	SITE MANAGER	STATUS	CONSTRUCTION PRIORITY
3. West Gate Scenic Overlook Install stairs and boardwalk.	USFS	EXISTING	LOW
4. Rollways Campground Provide 50% share of maintenance costs.	USFS	EXISTING	NO CONSTRUCTION
5. Rollways Picnic Site Provide 50% share of maintenance costs.	USFS	EXISTING	NO CONSTRUCTION
6. Close Existing Overlook Close and restore site.	CPCo	EXISTING	HIGH
7. Scenic By-Way Interpretive Display Provide 50% share of costs for interpretive displays.	USFS	EXISTING	LOW
8. Canoe Portage Upgrade canoe put-in and take-out platforms and stairway; Install canoe slide.	CPCo	EXISTING	MEDIUM
9. Tailwater Access-South Upgrade parking lot; Install vault toilet, signs and hardened path for barrier-free fishing area.	CPCo	EXISTING	HIGH
D. Five Channels Hydroelectric Project			
1. Impoundment Boat Ramp Upgrade boat ramp and parking lot; Install skid pier, vault toilet, barrier-free fishing pier, hardened path and signs.	CPCo	EXISTING	MEDIUM

APPENDIX A
LIST OF CANDIDATE RECREATIONAL
FACILITIES/ENHANCEMENTS

	SITE MANAGER	STATUS	CONSTRUCTION PRIORITY
2. Canoe Portage Upgrade canoe put-in and take-out platforms and stairway; Install canoe slide.	CPCo	EXISTING	MEDIUM
3. Tailwater Access-South Install vault toilet, parking lot, hardened path and signs for barrier-free fishing area.	CPCo	EXISTING	HIGH
4. Tailwater Access-North Upgrade access road and parking lot; Install vault toilet, stairway, handrail and signs for barrier-free fishing area.	CPCo	EXISTING	HIGH
E. Cooke Hydroelectric Project			
1. Impoundment Boat Launch Install parking lot, hardened boat ramp, vault toilet, skid pier, roadway, and signs.	CPCO	PROPOSED	HIGH
2. Largo Springs Provide 50% share of maintenance costs.	USFS	EXISTING	NO CONSTRUCTION
3. Lumberman's Monument Campground Provide 50% share of maintenance costs.	USFS	EXISTING	NO CONSTRUCTION
4. Lumberman's Monument Visitor Center (50% CPCo Cost Share) Upgrade displays; Install decks, boardwalk, picnic pavilion and restroom heaters.	USFS	EXISTING	MEDIUM

APPENDIX A
LIST OF CANDIDATE RECREATIONAL
FACILITIES/ENHANCEMENTS

	SITE MANAGER	STATUS	CONSTRUCTION PRIORITY
5. Sawmill Point Campground Upgrade roadway, boat ramp and harden sites; Install vault toilet and water well.	USFS	EXISTING	HIGH
6. Lower Impoundment Boat Launch & Barrier-Free Pier Upgrade boat ramp and parking lot; Install vault toilet, skid pier, barrier-free fishing pier, signs and hardened path.	CPCo	EXISTING	MEDIUM
7. Tailwater Access-South Upgrade parking lot; Install barrier-free fishing platform with roof, vault toilet, hardened ramp and skid pier.	CPCo	EXISTING	HIGH
8. Cooke Campground (50% CPCo Cost Share) Construct new campground on Cooke impoundment.	USFS	PROPOSED	LOW
F. Foote Hydroelectric Project			
1. Old Orchard County Park Fishing Pier Upgrade parking lot; Install barrier-free fishing pier, vault toilet, hardened path and signs.	Oscoda County Parks Commission	PROPOSED	LOW
2. Oscoda Township Park Boat Launch Upgrade boat ramp, parking lot, and vault toilets; Install skid pier, hardened path and signs.	Oscoda Township	EXISTING	HIGH

APPENDIX A
LIST OF CANDIDATE RECREATIONAL
FACILITIES/ENHANCEMENTS

	SITE MANAGER	STATUS	CONSTRUCTION PRIORITY
3. Oscoda Township Swimming Beach Upgrade vault toilets and parking lot; Install swimming buoys.	Oscoda Township	EXISTING	HIGH
4. Tailwater Access/Fishing Pier-South Install barrier-free fishing pier, hardened path and vault toilet, boardwalk and signs for barrier-free tailwater fishing area.	MDNR	EXISTING	HIGH
5. Rea Road Public Access Upgrade vault toilets, pier and boat ramp.	MDNR	EXISTING	LOW
6. Canoe Portage Upgrade stairs and canoe take out; Install canoe chute.	CPCo	EXISTING	MEDIUM

TOTAL ESTIMATED CAPITAL EXPENDITURE FOR THE AU SABLE RIVER - $1,400,000

III. **FACILITIES/ENHANCEMENTS MUSKEGON RIVER**

A. **Rogers Hydroelectric Project**

	SITE MANAGER	STATUS	CONSTRUCTION PRIORITY
1. Rogers Heights Boat Launch Upgrade parking lot and vault toilet; Install hardened path, picnic tables with grills and signs.	MDNR	EXISTING	LOW
2. Mecosta County Boat Launch Upgrade vault toilet and site; Close boat ramp.	MDNR	EXISTING	LOW

APPENDIX A
LIST OF CANDIDATE RECREATIONAL
FACILITIES/ENHANCEMENTS

	SITE MANAGER	STATUS	CONSTRUCTION PRIORITY
3. Ulrich Park and Picnic Area Upgrade parking lot, picnic tables and grills; Install barrier-free fishing pier, hardened path, vault toilet, and signs.	Stanwood Lions Club	EXISTING	LOW
4. Canoe Portage Upgrade canoe put-in, trail and stairs; Install canoe slide.	CPCo	EXISTING	LOW
5. Tailwater Fishing Access (East) Improve access road and harden path; Install barrier-free fishing pier, vault toilet, parking lot, concrete steps, fence and signs.	CPCo	EXISTING	HIGH

B. **Hardy Hydroelectric Project**

	SITE MANAGER	STATUS	CONSTRUCTION PRIORITY
1. US-131 Public Access Upgrade vault toilets; Install barrier-free fishing pier with roof and hardened path.	MDNR	EXISTING	LOW
2. Hess Bend Close access road and clean up site.	CPCo	EXISTING	MEDIUM
3. Newaygo State Park Upgrade vault toilets and picnic tables; Install hardened path and upgrade four (4) sites for barrier-free access.	MDNR	EXISTING	HIGH
4. Davis Bridge Closure Close access road and clean up site.	CPCo	EXISTING	MEDIUM

APPENDIX A
LIST OF CANDIDATE RECREATIONAL
FACILITIES/ENHANCEMENTS

	SITE MANAGER	STATUS	CONSTRUCTION PRIORITY
5. Hardy Dam Park Launch Upgrade boat ramp, vault toilets and parking lot; Remove boat docks; Install skid pier, hardened path and signs.	Newaygo County Parks Commission	EXISTING	MEDIUM
6. Canoe Portage-East Side Install crosswalk, canoe chute, log stairs, chip path and special put-in.	CPCo	FUTURE	LOW
7. Tailwater Access-East Side Upgrade parking and road; Install vault toilet, hand rail, benches, signs and preserve or remove well house.	CPCo	EXISTING	HIGH
8. Impoundment Fishing Pier and Picnic Area Install parking lot, hardened path, boardwalk, barrier-free fishing pier with roof, vault toilet, signs, swimming beach, access road, and picnic tables with grills.	CPCo	FUTURE	HIGH
9. Tailwater Access-West Upgrade parking lots, driveway and site grade; Install vault toilet, hardened path, signs fence/gate, and hand rail for barrier-free fishing area.	CPCo	FUTURE	HIGH

APPENDIX A
LIST OF CANDIDATE RECREATIONAL
FACILITIES/ENHANCEMENTS

	SITE MANAGER	STATUS	CONSTRUCTION PRIORITY
C. Croton Hydroelectric Project			
1. Portage, Pier, Boat Launch Upgrade parking lot, vault toilets and canoe put-in; Install gravel path, canoe chute, barrier-free fishing pier, hardened boat ramp, skid pier, signs and fence.	CPCo	EXISTING	MEDIUM
2. Tailwater Overlook and Access-East Side Upgrade stairs, guard rail, and parking lot; Install vault toilet, lower parking lot, steps and path, railing and boardwalk, and signs for fishing access.	CPCo	FUTURE	HIGH
3. Kimball Park Boat Launch & Fishing Access-West Upgrade boat ramp, parking lot, and vault toilets; install skid pier, hardened path, signs, barrier-free boardwalk and fishing platform, additional north side parking, gravel road, steps and chip path.	Newaygo County Parks Commission	EXISTING	HIGH

TOTAL ESTIMATED CAPITAL EXPENDITURE FOR THE MUSKEGON RIVER - $800,000

A. CAMPGROUNDS

1. Where necessary, upgrade toilet/restroom facilities to meet current public health and safety standards and the provisions of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1991 (ADA).

2. Develop plans for providing a target 100 ft greenbelt between the water's edge and campsite locations where practical.

3. Consolidate existing multiple dock sites in a central location(s). The numbers and locations of dockage sites will be determined in consultation with the resource agencies and park management.

4. Develop a plan to reduce the number of seasonal sites and conversion of these sites to provide for additional transient camping with a limited stay of up to three (3) weeks. The appropriate mix of seasonal/transient sites will be determined in consultation with the resource agencies and park management.

5. Develop and implement a sign plan for each campground facility. For recreational facilities listed in Appendix A, the plan should ensure public access.

6. Require that each campground be licensed in accordance with state requirements and that copies of license(s) be provided to CPCo annually.

B. BOATING ACCESS SITES

1. Where necessary, upgrade toilet/restroom facilities to meet current public health and safety standards and the provisions of the ADA of 1991.

2. Where necessary, provide concrete car/trailer boat launching ramp(s).

3. Where necessary, provide for a barrier-free skid pier adjacent to the concrete ramp.

4. Provide for adequate entrance road(s) and organized parking with gravel or paved surface.

5. Develop and implement a directional, informational and safety sign plan.

6. All existing and proposed boat dockage locations shall be reviewed by CPCo in consultation with the resource agencies and park management.

7. Public use fees for all such facilities shall be reviewed by CPCo in consultation with the resource agencies and park management.

C. SWIMMING BEACH/PICNIC AREAS

1. Where necessary, provide toilet/restroom/change house facilities that meet current public health and safety and the provisions of the ADA of 1991.

2. Provide for the annual placement and maintenance of adequate safety buoys to delineate the perimeter of the swimming area(s).

3. Provide for adequate entrance road(s) and organized parking with a gravel or paved surface.

4. Public use fees for all such facilities shall be reviewed by CPCo in consultation with the resource agencies and park management.

5. Develop and implement a directional, informational and safety sign plan.

D. MARINAS

1. Where necessary, upgrade toilet/restroom facilities to meet current public health and safety standards and the provisions of the ADA of 1991.

2. Where necessary, provide watercraft sewage pump-out and disposal facilities that meet health and safety standards.

3. Provide a plan for safe and adequate dockage facilities. Proposed dockage plans shall be submitted to the resource agencies for review.

4. Provide for adequate entrance road(s) and parking with a gravel or paved surface.

5. Require that each marina facility is licensed in accordance with state requirements and copies of license(s) are provided to CPCo annually.

6. Public use fees for all such facilities shall be reviewed by CPCo in consultation with the resource agencies and park management.

7. Develop and implement a directional, informational and safety sign plan.

APPENDIX C
WATER QUALITY, SEDIMENT QUALITY AND FISH CONTAMINANT
MONITORING PROGRAM

A. <u>Water Quality</u>

1. Proposed Locations in the Au Sable River
   a. Mio, Alcona and Loud above the project, in the impoundment and in the tailwater.
   b. Five Channels, Cooke and Foote, in the impoundment and in the tailwater.

2. Proposed Locations in the Manistee River
   a. Hodenpyl above the project, in the impoundment and in the tailwater.
   b. Tippy above the project (in the Manistee River and Pine River), in the impoundment (below the junction and in both arms), and in the tailwater; above Stronach and Stronach impoundment (*only if Stronach remains*).

3. Proposed Locations in the Muskegon River
   a. Rogers above the project, in the impoundment and in the tailwater.
   b. Hardy and Croton in the impoundment (in both arms at Croton) and in the tailwater.

4. Samples shall be collected as follows:
   a. Above impoundment in mid-channel locations.
   b. Impoundment profile in deepest location.
   c. Tailwater within 100 meters of outlet in mid-channel.

5. Frequency; samples shall be collected quarterly by seasons for one (1) year during the fifth, tenth, fifteenth, twentieth and twenty-fifth years of the license.

6. Parameters
   Alkalinity as $CaCO_3$, mg/l
   Chlorophyll a, ug/l (*only in the impoundment*)
   Color, PCU's
   Dissolved Sulfate (SO_4), mg/l
   Hardness as $CaCO_3$, mg/l
   Percent Oxygen Saturation
   pH
   Secchi Disk, Meters
   Specific Conductance, umho
   Total Ammonia, mg/l
   Total Dissolved Solids, mg/l
   Total Nitrate, mg/l
   Total Nitrite, mg/l
   Total Nitrogen (N), mg/l
   Total Organic Carbon, mg/l
   Total Phosphorus (P), mg/l
   Total Suspended Solids, mg/l

7. Reservoir temperature and D.O. profiles will be collected in the deepest location of each impoundment.

8. Temperature and D.O. Frequency
   a. Measurements shall be collected in February, June, July and August.
   b. Measurements shall be collected every 0.5 meters.

APPENDIX C
WATER QUALITY, SEDIMENT QUALITY AND FISH CONTAMINANT
MONITORING PROGRAM

B. <u>Impoundment Sediment Sampling</u>

1. Location
   a. Three (3) samples shall be collected in the deepest location of each impoundment.
   b. The samples shall be collected in each arm of the Tippy and Croton impoundments.

2. Frequency; samples shall be collected once in the fifteenth (15th) year of the license.

3. Parameters
   Oil and Grease, mg/kg
   Percent Volatile Solids
   Total Arsenic (As), mg/kg
   Total Barium (Ba), mg/kg
   Total Cadmium (Cd), mg/kg
   Total Chromium (Cr), mg/kg
   Total Copper (Cu), mg/kg
   Total Iron (Fe), mg/kg
   Total Lead (Pb), mg/kg
   Total Manganese (Mn), mg/kg
   Total Mercury (Hg), mg/kg
   Total Nickel (Ni), mg/kg
   Total Nitrogen (n), mg/kg
   Total Organic Carbon, mg/kg
   Total Phosphorus (P), mg/kg
   Total Selenium (Se), mg/kg
   Total Silver (Ag), mg/kg
   Total Zinc (Zn), mg/kg
   Particle Size Distribution
   Acid Volatile Sulfides, mg/kg
   PCB
   DDT
   DDE
   DDD
   Dieldrin
   Toxaphene
   Lindane
   Chlordane
   Mirex
   Hexachlorobenzene
   BHC

APPENDIX C
WATER QUALITY, SEDIMENT QUALITY AND FISH CONTAMINANT
MONITORING PROGRAM

C. Fish Contaminants

1. A fish contaminant monitoring program, similar in scope to the pre-application fish contaminant study, shall be conducted at five year intervals, on a schedule to be determined by the parties, for no more than five times during the license period.

2. Prior to conducting each monitoring effort, CPCo shall develop a study plan, for resource agencies review and concurrence, that includes the species, sizes and locations to be sampled.

3. For the purposes of water quality monitoring, the study plan shall include ten walleye from each of the following locations: 1) Manistee River - Hodenpyl Reservoir and below Tippy Dam; 2) AuSable River - Above Foote Dam in one of the impoundments and Below Foote Dam; and 3) Muskegon River - Croton Impoundment and Below Croton Dam. The walleye shall be in the 20-22 inch size range, unless another size is approved by the resource agencies. Other species and sampling locations shall be selected in consultation with the resource agencies. These fish shall be analyzed as whole fish using the MDNR standard analysis list as follows with other parameters determined in consultation with the resource agencies:

Standard Analyses	Analytical Detection Level
Hexachlorobenzene	0.001 mg/kg
gamma-BHC (Lindane)	0.005 mg/kg
Aldrin	0.005 mg/kg
Dieldrin	0.005 mg/kg
4,4'-DDE	0.003 mg/kg
4,4'-DDD	0.005 mg/kg
4,4'-DDT	0.005 mg/kh
Heptachlor epoxide	0.003 mg/kg
Mercury	0.010 mg/kg
Oxychlordane	0.003 mg/kg
gamma-Chlordane	0.003 mg/kg
trans-Nonachlor	0.003 mg/kg
alpha-Chlordane	0.003 mg/kg
cis-Nonachlor	0.003 mg/kg
Octachlorostyrene	0.001 mg/kg
Hexachlorostyrene	0.001 mg/kg
Heptachlorostyrene	0.001 mg/kg
Pentachlorostyrene	0.001 mg/kg
Heptachlor	0.005 mg/kg
Terphenyl	0.250 mg/kg
Toxaphene	0.050 mg/kg
Mirex	0.005 mg/kg
PBB (FF-1, BP-6)	0.005 mg/kg
PCBs (Aroclors 1242, 1248, 1254 and 1250)	0.025 mg/kg